



Application Layer Gateways Feature Guide for NFX Devices



Modified: 2018-07-05

Juniper Networks, Inc.
1133 Innovation Way
Sunnyvale, California 94089
USA
408-745-2000
www.juniper.net

Juniper Networks, the Juniper Networks logo, Juniper, and Junos are registered trademarks of Juniper Networks, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the United States and other countries. All other trademarks may be property of their respective owners.

Juniper Networks assumes no responsibility for any inaccuracies in this document. Juniper Networks reserves the right to change, modify, transfer, or otherwise revise this publication without notice.

Application Layer Gateways Feature Guide for NFX Devices
Copyright © 2018 Juniper Networks, Inc. All rights reserved.

The information in this document is current as of the date on the title page.

YEAR 2000 NOTICE

Juniper Networks hardware and software products are Year 2000 compliant. Junos OS has no known time-related limitations through the year 2038. However, the NTP application is known to have some difficulty in the year 2036.

END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

The Juniper Networks product that is the subject of this technical documentation consists of (or is intended for use with) Juniper Networks software. Use of such software is subject to the terms and conditions of the End User License Agreement ("EULA") posted at <https://www.juniper.net/support/eula/>. By downloading, installing or using such software, you agree to the terms and conditions of that EULA.

Table of Contents

	About the Documentation	xv
	Documentation and Release Notes	xv
	Using the Examples in This Manual	xv
	Merging a Full Example	xvi
	Merging a Snippet	xvi
	Documentation Conventions	xvii
	Documentation Feedback	xix
	Requesting Technical Support	xix
	Self-Help Online Tools and Resources	xix
	Opening a Case with JTAC	xx
Chapter 1	Overview	21
	ALG Overview	21
	ALG Overview	21
	Understanding Custom ALG Services	22
	Understanding the IPv6 DNS ALG for Routing, NAT, and NAT-PT	24
	IPv6 DNS ALG Traffic in NAT mode	24
	IPv6 DNS ALG Traffic in NAT-PT mode	24
	Understanding IPv6 Support in FTP ALG	25
	FTP ALG Support for IPv6	26
	EPRT mode	26
	EPSV mode	26
Chapter 2	Data ALGs	29
	Understanding Data ALG Types	29
	DNS ALG	31
	DNS ALG Overview	32
	Example: Configuring the DNS ALG	32
	Understanding DNS and DDNS Doctoring	36
	Disabling DNS and DDNS Doctoring	39
	FTP ALG	40
	FTP ALG Overview	40
	IPv6 FTP ALG for Routing	41
	Understanding FTP Commands	41
	PORT Command	41
	PASV Command	42
	Extended FTP Commands	42
	Example: Configuring the FTP ALG	43

IKE and ESP ALG	46
Understanding the IKE and ESP ALG	47
Understanding IKE and ESP ALG Operation	48
Example: Configuring the IKE and ESP ALG	48
Example: Enabling the IKE and ESP ALG and Setting Timeouts	55
PPTP ALG	57
Understanding the PPTP ALG	57
Understanding IPv6 Support for the PPTP ALG	57
Example: Configuring the PPTP ALG	58
RPC ALG	70
Understanding RPC ALGs	70
Understanding Sun RPC ALGs	71
Enabling Sun RPC ALGs	72
Customizing Sun RPC Applications (CLI Procedure)	72
Understanding Sun RPC Services	73
Understanding Microsoft RPC ALGs	75
Enabling Microsoft RPC ALGs	76
Configuring the Microsoft RPC ALG	76
Configuring the MS-RPC ALG with a Predefined Microsoft Application	76
Configuring the MS-RPC ALG with a Wildcard UUID	77
Configuring the MS-RPC ALG with a Specific UUID	77
Understanding Microsoft RPC Services	78
Customizing Microsoft RPC Applications (CLI Procedure)	80
RSH ALG	81
Understanding the RSH ALG	82
Example: Configuring the RSH ALG	82
RTSP ALG	95
Understanding the RTSP ALG	95
Overview	95
RTSP Modes	96
Understanding RTSP ALG Messages	97
RTSP Message Format	97
RTSP Methods	97
RTSP Status Code	98
RTSP Header	98
Understanding RTSP ALG Conversation and NAT	98
Example: Configuring the RTSP ALG	100
SQLNET ALG	108
Understanding the SQLNET ALG	108
Example: Configuring the SQLNET ALG	108
TALK ALG	121
Understanding the TALK ALG	121
Example: Configuring the TALK ALG	121
TFTP ALG	134
Understanding the TFTP ALG	134
Overview	134
TFTP Packets	135
TFTP Session	135

	Understanding TFTP ALG Conversation	136
	Understanding IPv6 Support for the TFTP ALG	136
	Example: Configuring the TFTP ALG	137
	Understanding IPv6 ALG Support for ICMP	140
	ICMP Error Messages	140
	ICMP ALG Functionality	141
	Understanding 464XLAT ALG Traffic Support	141
	Understanding 464XLAT ALG Functionality	142
	How the PPTP ALG Supports the Device Acting As PLAT	143
	How the RTSP ALG Supports the Device Acting As PLAT	145
	How the FTP ALG Supports the Device Acting As PLAT	146
Chapter 3	VoIP ALGs	149
	Understanding VoIP ALG Types	149
	VoIP DSCP Rewrite Rules	150
	Understanding VoIP DSCP Rewrite Rules	150
	Example: Configuring VoIP DSCP Rewrite Rules	151
	H.323 ALG	152
	Understanding H.323 ALG	152
	H.323 ALG Configuration Overview	154
	Understanding the Avaya H.323 ALG	154
	Avaya H.323 ALG-Specific Features	155
	Call Flow Details in the Avaya H.323 ALG	155
	Example: Passing H.323 ALG Traffic to a Gatekeeper in the Private Zone	156
	Example: Passing H.323 ALG Traffic to a Gatekeeper in the External Zone	161
	Example: Using NAT with the H.323 ALG to Enable Incoming Calls	167
	Example: Using NAT with the H.323 ALG to Enable Outgoing Calls	175
	Example: Setting H.323 ALG Endpoint Registration Timeouts	182
	Example: Setting H.323 ALG Media Source Port Ranges	183
	Example: Configuring H.323 ALG DoS Attack Protection	184
	Understanding H.323 ALG Known Message Types	185
	H.225 RAS Signaling: Gatekeepers and Gateways	186
	H.225 Call Signaling (Q.931)	189
	H.245 Media Control and Transport signaling	189
	Understanding H.323 ALG Unknown Message Types	190
	Example: Allowing Unknown H.323 ALG Message Types	190
	MGCP ALG	192
	Understanding the MGCP ALG	192
	MGCP Security	193
	Entities in MGCP	194
	MGCP Commands	195
	MGCP Response Codes	197
	MGCP ALG Configuration Overview	198
	Example: Configuring Media Gateways in Subscriber Homes Using MGCP ALGs	198
	Example: Configuring Three-Zone ISP-Hosted Service Using MGCP ALG and NAT	205
	Understanding MGCP ALG Call Duration and Timeouts	218

Example: Setting MGCP ALG Call Duration	218
Example: Setting MGCP ALG Inactive Media Timeout	220
Example: Setting MGCP ALG Transaction Timeout	221
Example: Configuring MGCP ALG DoS Attack Protection	222
Example: Allowing Unknown MGCP ALG Message Types	223
SCCP ALG	225
Understanding SCCP ALGs	225
SCCP Security	227
SCCP Components	227
SCCP Transactions	228
SCCP Version	229
SCCP Control Messages and RTP Flow	229
SCCP Messages	229
SCCP ALG Configuration Overview	231
Example: Setting SCCP ALG Inactive Media Timeouts	231
Example: Allowing Unknown SCCP ALG Message Types	232
Example: Configuring SCCP ALG DoS Attack Protection	234
Example: Configuring the SCCP ALG Call Manager or TFTP Server in the Private Zone	235
Verifying SCCP ALG Configurations	245
Verifying SCCP ALG	245
Verifying SCCP ALG Calls	246
Verifying SCCP ALG Call Details	246
Verifying SCCP ALG Counters	247
SIP ALG	248
Understanding the SIP ALG	248
SIP ALG Operation	249
SDP Session Descriptions	250
Pinhole Creation	251
Understanding SIP ALG Hold Resources	257
Retaining SIP ALG Hold Resources (CLI Procedure)	258
Understanding the SIP ALG and NAT	258
Outgoing Calls	259
Incoming Calls	259
Forwarded Calls	260
Call Termination	260
Call Re-INVITE Messages	260
Call Session Timers	260
Call Cancellation	261
Forking	261
SIP Messages	261
SIP Headers	261
SIP Body	263
SIP NAT Scenario	264
Classes of SIP Responses	265
NAT Mode in Pure IPv6 Mode (NAT66) for SIP IPv6 ALG	266
NAT-PT	266
NAT64	267

	STUN and SIP ALG	267
	Example: Setting SIP ALG Call Duration and Timeouts	269
	Example: Configuring SIP ALG DoS Attack Protection	270
	Example: Allowing Unknown SIP ALG Message Types	271
	Example: Configuring Interface Source NAT for Incoming SIP Calls	272
	Decreasing Network Complexity by Configuring a Source NAT Pool for Incoming SIP Calls	278
	Example: Configuring Static NAT for Incoming SIP Calls	287
	Example: Configuring the SIP Proxy in the Private Zone and NAT in the Public Zone	294
	Example: Configuring a Three-Zone SIP ALG and NAT Scenario	300
Chapter 4	Configuration Statements	309
	address (Security Destination NAT)	311
	alg	312
	alg (Applications)	317
	alg-manager	318
	allow-dns-reply	319
	application (Security Policies)	320
	application-protocol (Applications)	321
	application-screen (Security H323)	322
	application-screen (Security MGCP)	323
	application-screen (Security SCCP)	324
	application-screen (Security SIP)	325
	alg-support-lib	326
	banner (Access FTP HTTP Telnet Authentication)	327
	call-flood	328
	c-timeout	328
	deny (Security SIP)	329
	destination-address (Security Destination NAT)	330
	destination-address (Security Policies)	331
	destination-address (Security Source NAT)	332
	destination-address (Security Static NAT)	332
	destination-nat	333
	destination-port (Applications)	334
	dns	338
	dns (System Services)	339
	dscp-rewrite	340
	endpoint-registration-timeout	341
	family inet (Interfaces)	342
	ftp (Access)	345
	ftp (Security ALG)	346
	gatekeeper	347
	h323	348
	host-inbound-traffic	349
	ike-esp-nat	350
	ike (Security)	352
	inactive-media-timeout (Security MGCP)	354
	inactive-media-timeout (Security SCCP)	355

inactive-media-timeout (Security SIP)	355
map-entry-timeout	356
maximum-call-duration (Security)	357
maximum-message-length	357
media-source-port-any	358
message-flood (Security H323)	358
mgcp	359
msrpc	360
nat	361
nat-pat-address	365
oversize-message-drop	366
policy (Security Policies)	367
pptp	369
protect	370
protocols (Security Zones Interfaces)	371
retain-hold-resource	372
rsh	373
rtsp	374
sccp	375
security-zone	376
sip (Security)	378
source-address (Security Destination NAT)	379
source-address (Security Policies)	380
source-nat	381
sql	382
static-nat	383
sunrpc	384
system-services (Security Zones Host Inbound Traffic)	385
t1-interval	387
t4-interval	387
talk	388
term (Applications)	389
tftp (Security ALG)	390
traceoptions (Security ALG)	391
traceoptions (Security H323 ALG)	393
traceoptions (Security MGCP ALG)	394
traceoptions (Security SCCP ALG)	395
traceoptions (Security SIP ALG)	396
traceoptions (System Services DNS)	397
transaction-timeout	399
unknown-message (Security H323 ALG)	400
unknown-message (Security MGCP ALG)	401
unknown-message (Security SCCP ALG)	402
unknown-message (Security SIP ALG)	403
Chapter 5 Operational Commands	405
clear security alg h323 counters	406
clear security alg ike-esp-nat	407
clear security alg sccp calls	408

clear security alg sccp counters	409
clear security alg sip calls	410
clear security alg sip counters	411
clear security flow session application	412
show chassis cluster data-plane statistics	414
show chassis cluster statistics	416
show security alg h323 counters	420
show security alg ike-esp-nat summary	422
show security alg msrpc	423
show security alg sccp calls	425
show security alg sccp counters	427
show security alg sip calls	429
show security alg sip counters	431
show security alg sip rate	435
show security alg status	437
show security flow gate	441
show security flow session	445
show security flow session application	452
show security flow session resource-manager	456
show security idp policy-templates	460
show security resource-manager group active	461
show security resource-manager resource active	464
show security resource-manager summary	467
show security zones	468
show security zones type	471

List of Figures

Chapter 2	Data ALGs	29
	Figure 1: DNS Address Translation (Private to Public)	38
	Figure 2: DNS Address Translation (Public to Private)	39
	Figure 3: PPTP ALG Topology	59
	Figure 4: RSH ALG Topology	84
	Figure 5: RTSP ALG Standard Mode	96
	Figure 6: RTSP ALG Interleave Mode	96
	Figure 7: RTSP ALG Conversation	99
	Figure 8: SQLNET ALG Topology	110
	Figure 9: TALK ALG Topology	123
	Figure 10: 464XLAT Architecture	142
	Figure 11: 464XLAT ALG Functionality	143
	Figure 12: PPTP ALG XLAT Functionality	143
	Figure 13: RTSP ALG XLAT Functionality	145
	Figure 14: FTP Passive mode:	146
	Figure 15: FTP Port Mode	146
Chapter 3	VoIP ALGs	149
	Figure 16: H.323 ALG for VoIP Calls	153
	Figure 17: H.323 Gatekeeper in the Private Zone	157
	Figure 18: H.323 Gatekeeper in the External Zone	162
	Figure 19: NAT with the H.323 ALG—Incoming Calls	168
	Figure 20: NAT with the H.323 ALG—Outgoing Calls	176
	Figure 21: Media Gateway in Subscriber Homes	199
	Figure 22: Three-Zone ISP-Hosted Service	207
	Figure 23: Call Setup and Teardown	229
	Figure 24: Call Manager or TFTP Server in the Private Zone	237
	Figure 25: SIP ALG Call Setup	253
	Figure 26: SIP NAT Scenario 1	264
	Figure 27: SIP NAT Scenario 2	265
	Figure 28: Using the SIP Registrar	268
	Figure 29: Source NAT for Incoming SIP Calls	273
	Figure 30: Source NAT Pool for Incoming SIP Calls	280
	Figure 31: Static NAT for Incoming Calls	288
	Figure 32: Configuring SIP Proxy in the Private Zone and NAT in a Public Zone ..	295
	Figure 33: Three-Zone SIP Configuration with Proxy in the DMZ	301

List of Tables

	About the Documentation	xv
	Table 1: Notice Icons	xvii
	Table 2: Text and Syntax Conventions	xvii
Chapter 2	Data ALGs	29
	Table 3: Data ALG types	29
	Table 4: Predefined Sun RPC Services	75
	Table 5: Predefined MS-RPC services	80
	Table 6: RTSP Payload IP NAT	99
Chapter 3	VoIP ALGs	149
	Table 7: VoIP-ALG-Types	149
	Table 8: Gatekeeper Messages	186
	Table 9: Registration and Unregistration Messages	187
	Table 10: Call Admission Messages	187
	Table 11: Location Request Messages	187
	Table 12: Bandwidth Control Messages	188
	Table 13: Status Information Messages	188
	Table 14: Disengage Request Messages	189
	Table 15: MGCP Commands	195
	Table 16: Three-Zone ISP-Host Service	207
	Table 17: Station to Call Manager Messages	229
	Table 18: Call Manager to Station Messages	230
	Table 19: Call Manager 4.0 Messages and Post Sccp 6.2	230
	Table 20: Call Manager to Station	230
	Table 21: Requesting Messages with NAT Table	262
	Table 22: SIP Responses	266
Chapter 4	Configuration Statements	309
	Table 23: Port Supported by Services Interfaces	335
	Table 24: Category Names	398
Chapter 5	Operational Commands	405
	Table 25: show chassis cluster data-plane statistics Output Fields	414
	Table 26: show chassis cluster statistics Output Fields	416
	Table 27: show security alg h323 counters Output Fields	420
	Table 28: show security alg msrpc Output Fields	424
	Table 29: show security alg sccp calls Output Fields	426
	Table 30: show security alg sccp counters Output Fields	427
	Table 31: show security alg sip calls Output Fields	429
	Table 32: show security alg sip counters Output Fields	431
	Table 33: show security alg sip rate Output Fields	435

Table 34: show security flow gate Output Fields	441
Table 35: show security flow session Output Fields	447
Table 36: show security flow session application Output Fields	453
Table 37: show security flow session resource-manager Output Fields	456
Table 38: show security resource-manager group Output Fields	461
Table 39: show security resource-manager resource Output Fields	464
Table 40: show security resource-manager summary Output Fields	467
Table 41: show security zones Output Fields	468
Table 42: show security zones type Output Fields	471

About the Documentation

- Documentation and Release Notes on page xv
- Using the Examples in This Manual on page xv
- Documentation Conventions on page xvii
- Documentation Feedback on page xix
- Requesting Technical Support on page xix

Documentation and Release Notes

To obtain the most current version of all Juniper Networks® technical documentation, see the product documentation page on the Juniper Networks website at <https://www.juniper.net/documentation/>.

If the information in the latest release notes differs from the information in the documentation, follow the product Release Notes.

Juniper Networks Books publishes books by Juniper Networks engineers and subject matter experts. These books go beyond the technical documentation to explore the nuances of network architecture, deployment, and administration. The current list can be viewed at <https://www.juniper.net/books>.

Using the Examples in This Manual

If you want to use the examples in this manual, you can use the **load merge** or the **load merge relative** command. These commands cause the software to merge the incoming configuration into the current candidate configuration. The example does not become active until you commit the candidate configuration.

If the example configuration contains the top level of the hierarchy (or multiple hierarchies), the example is a *full example*. In this case, use the **load merge** command.

If the example configuration does not start at the top level of the hierarchy, the example is a *snippet*. In this case, use the **load merge relative** command. These procedures are described in the following sections.

Merging a Full Example

To merge a full example, follow these steps:

1. From the HTML or PDF version of the manual, copy a configuration example into a text file, save the file with a name, and copy the file to a directory on your routing platform.

For example, copy the following configuration to a file and name the file **ex-script.conf**. Copy the **ex-script.conf** file to the **/var/tmp** directory on your routing platform.

```
system {
  scripts {
    commit {
      file ex-script.xml;
    }
  }
}
interfaces {
  fxp0 {
    disable;
    unit 0 {
      family inet {
        address 10.0.0.1/24;
      }
    }
  }
}
```

2. Merge the contents of the file into your routing platform configuration by issuing the **load merge** configuration mode command:

```
[edit]
user@host# load merge /var/tmp/ex-script.conf
load complete
```

Merging a Snippet

To merge a snippet, follow these steps:

1. From the HTML or PDF version of the manual, copy a configuration snippet into a text file, save the file with a name, and copy the file to a directory on your routing platform.

For example, copy the following snippet to a file and name the file **ex-script-snippet.conf**. Copy the **ex-script-snippet.conf** file to the **/var/tmp** directory on your routing platform.

```
commit {
  file ex-script-snippet.xml; }
```

2. Move to the hierarchy level that is relevant for this snippet by issuing the following configuration mode command:

```
[edit]
```

```
user@host# edit system scripts
[edit system scripts]
```

3. Merge the contents of the file into your routing platform configuration by issuing the **load merge relative** configuration mode command:

```
[edit system scripts]
user@host# load merge relative /var/tmp/ex-script-snippet.conf
load complete
```

For more information about the **load** command, see [CLI Explorer](#).

Documentation Conventions

Table 1 on page xvii defines notice icons used in this guide.

Table 1: Notice Icons







Icon	Meaning	Description
	Informational note	Indicates important features or instructions.
	Caution	Indicates a situation that might result in loss of data or hardware damage.
	Warning	Alerts you to the risk of personal injury or death.
	Laser warning	Alerts you to the risk of personal injury from a laser.
	Tip	Indicates helpful information.
	Best practice	Alerts you to a recommended use or implementation.

Table 2 on page xvii defines the text and syntax conventions used in this guide.

Table 2: Text and Syntax Conventions

Convention	Description	Examples
Bold text like this	Represents text that you type.	To enter configuration mode, type the configure command: user@host> configure

Table 2: Text and Syntax Conventions (continued)

Convention	Description	Examples
Fixed-width text like this	Represents output that appears on the terminal screen.	<code>user@host> show chassis alarms</code> <code>No alarms currently active</code>
<i>Italic text like this</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Introduces or emphasizes important new terms. Identifies guide names. Identifies RFC and Internet draft titles. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> A policy <i>term</i> is a named structure that defines match conditions and actions. <i>Junos OS CLI User Guide</i> RFC 1997, <i>BGP Communities Attribute</i>
<i>Italic text like this</i>	Represents variables (options for which you substitute a value) in commands or configuration statements.	Configure the machine's domain name: [edit] root@# set system domain-name <i>domain-name</i>
Text like this	Represents names of configuration statements, commands, files, and directories; configuration hierarchy levels; or labels on routing platform components.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> To configure a stub area, include the stub statement at the [edit protocols ospf area area-id] hierarchy level. The console port is labeled CONSOLE.
< > (angle brackets)	Encloses optional keywords or variables.	<code>stub <default-metric metric>;</code>
(pipe symbol)	Indicates a choice between the mutually exclusive keywords or variables on either side of the symbol. The set of choices is often enclosed in parentheses for clarity.	<code>broadcast multicast</code> <code>(string1 string2 string3)</code>
# (pound sign)	Indicates a comment specified on the same line as the configuration statement to which it applies.	<code>rsvp { # Required for dynamic MPLS only</code>
[] (square brackets)	Encloses a variable for which you can substitute one or more values.	<code>community name members [community-ids]</code>
Indentation and braces ({ })	Identifies a level in the configuration hierarchy.	[edit] routing-options { static { route default { nexthop address; retain; } } }
;(semicolon)	Identifies a leaf statement at a configuration hierarchy level.	
GUI Conventions		
Bold text like this	Represents graphical user interface (GUI) items you click or select.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> In the Logical Interfaces box, select All Interfaces. To cancel the configuration, click Cancel.

Table 2: Text and Syntax Conventions (continued)

Convention	Description	Examples
> (bold right angle bracket)	Separates levels in a hierarchy of menu selections.	In the configuration editor hierarchy, select Protocols>Ospf .

Documentation Feedback

We encourage you to provide feedback, comments, and suggestions so that we can improve the documentation. You can provide feedback by using either of the following methods:

- Online feedback rating system—On any page of the Juniper Networks TechLibrary site at <https://www.juniper.net/documentation/index.html>, simply click the stars to rate the content, and use the pop-up form to provide us with information about your experience. Alternately, you can use the online feedback form at <https://www.juniper.net/documentation/feedback/>.
- E-mail—Send your comments to techpubs-comments@juniper.net. Include the document or topic name, URL or page number, and software version (if applicable).

Requesting Technical Support

Technical product support is available through the Juniper Networks Technical Assistance Center (JTAC). If you are a customer with an active J-Care or Partner Support Service support contract, or are covered under warranty, and need post-sales technical support, you can access our tools and resources online or open a case with JTAC.

- JTAC policies—For a complete understanding of our JTAC procedures and policies, review the *JTAC User Guide* located at <https://www.juniper.net/us/en/local/pdf/resource-guides/7100059-en.pdf>.
- Product warranties—For product warranty information, visit <https://www.juniper.net/support/warranty/>.
- JTAC hours of operation—The JTAC centers have resources available 24 hours a day, 7 days a week, 365 days a year.

Self-Help Online Tools and Resources

For quick and easy problem resolution, Juniper Networks has designed an online self-service portal called the Customer Support Center (CSC) that provides you with the following features:

- Find CSC offerings: <https://www.juniper.net/customers/support/>
- Search for known bugs: <https://prsearch.juniper.net/>
- Find product documentation: <https://www.juniper.net/documentation/>
- Find solutions and answer questions using our Knowledge Base: <https://kb.juniper.net/>

- Download the latest versions of software and review release notes:
<https://www.juniper.net/customers/csc/software/>
- Search technical bulletins for relevant hardware and software notifications:
<https://kb.juniper.net/InfoCenter/>
- Join and participate in the Juniper Networks Community Forum:
<https://www.juniper.net/company/communities/>
- Open a case online in the CSC Case Management tool: <https://www.juniper.net/cm/>

To verify service entitlement by product serial number, use our Serial Number Entitlement (SNE) Tool: <https://entitlementsearch.juniper.net/entitlementsearch/>

Opening a Case with JTAC

You can open a case with JTAC on the Web or by telephone.

- Use the Case Management tool in the CSC at <https://www.juniper.net/cm/>.
- Call 1-888-314-JTAC (1-888-314-5822 toll-free in the USA, Canada, and Mexico).

For international or direct-dial options in countries without toll-free numbers, see <https://www.juniper.net/support/requesting-support.html>.

CHAPTER 1

Overview

- [ALG Overview on page 21](#)

ALG Overview

An Application Layer Gateway (ALG) enables the gateway to parse application layer payloads and take decisions whether to allow or deny traffic to the application server. ALGs supports the applications such as Transfer Protocol (FTP) and various IP protocols that use the application layer payload to communicate the dynamic Transmission Control Protocol (TCP) or User Datagram Protocol (UDP) ports on which the applications open data connections. For more information, see the following topics:

- [ALG Overview on page 21](#)
- [Understanding Custom ALG Services on page 22](#)
- [Understanding the IPv6 DNS ALG for Routing, NAT, and NAT-PT on page 24](#)
- [Understanding IPv6 Support in FTP ALG on page 25](#)

ALG Overview

An Application Layer Gateway (ALG) is a software component that is designed to manage specific protocols such as Session Initiation Protocol (SIP) or FTP on Juniper Networks devices running Junos OS. The ALG module is responsible for Application-Layer aware packet processing.

ALG functionality can be triggered either by a service or application configured in the security policy:

- A service is an object that identifies an application protocol using Layer 4 information (such as standard and accepted TCP and UDP port numbers) for an application service (such as Telnet, FTP, SMTP, and HTTP).
- An application specifies the Layer 7 application that maps to a Layer 4 service.

A predefined service already has a mapping to a Layer 7 application. However, for custom services, you must link the service to an application explicitly, especially if you want the policy to apply an ALG.

ALGs for packets destined to well-known ports are triggered by service type. The ALG intercepts and analyzes the specified traffic, allocates resources, and defines dynamic policies to permit the traffic to pass securely through the device:

1. When a packet arrives at the device, the flow module forwards the packet according to the security rule set in the policy.
2. If a policy is found to permit the packet, the associated service type or application type is assigned and a session is created for this type of traffic.
3. If a session is found for the packet, no policy rule match is needed. The ALG module is triggered if that particular service or application type requires the supported ALG processing.

The ALG also inspects the packet for embedded IP address and port information in the packet payload, and performs Network Address Translation (NAT) processing if necessary. A message buffer is allocated only when the packet is ready to process. The buffer is freed after the packet completes ALG handling, including modifying the payload, performing NAT, opening a pinhole for a new connection between a client and a server, and transferring data between a client and a server located on opposite sides of a Juniper Networks device

The maximum size of the jbuf is 9 Kb. If the message buffer size is more than 9 Kb, the entire message cannot be transferred to the ALG packet handler. This causes subsequent packets in the session to bypass ALG handling, resulting in a transaction failure. The ALG message buffer optimization is enhanced to reduce high memory consumption.

The ALG also opens a gate for the IP address and port number to permit data exchange for the control and data sessions. The control session and data session can be coupled to have the same timeout value, or they can be independent.

ALGs are supported on chassis clusters.

- See Also**
- [Understanding H.323 ALG on page 152](#)
 - [Understanding the SIP ALG on page 248](#)
 - [Understanding SCCP ALGs on page 225](#)
 - [Understanding the MGCP ALG on page 192](#)

Understanding Custom ALG Services

By default, ALGs are bound to predefined services. For example, the FTP ALG is bound to `junos-ftp`, the RTSP ALG is bound to `junos-rtsp`, and so on.

A predefined service already has a mapping to a Layer 7 application. However, for custom services, you must link the service to an application explicitly, especially if you want the policy to apply an ALG.

When you apply predefined services to your policy, traffic matching the service will be sent to its corresponding ALG for further processing. However, under some circumstances, you might need to define custom services to achieve the following:

- Utilize the ALG handler to process special traffic, with customer-specified protocols, destination ports and so on.
- Permit traffic but bypass ALG processing, when traffic matches predefined services that bind with ALG.
- Add more applications to the current ALG's application set.

The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode* in the *CLI User Guide*.

The three usages of custom services are illustrated below, considering MS-RPC ALG as an example:

- **Utilize the ALG handler to process special traffic:**

```
[edit]
user@host# set applications application customer-msrpc application-protocol ms-rpc
user@host# set applications application customer-msrpc protocol tcp
user@host# set applications application customer-msrpc destination-port 6000
```

Traffic with TCP destination port 6000 will be sent to MS-RPC ALG for further processing.

- **Permit traffic but bypass ALG processing:**

```
[edit]
user@host# set applications application customer-ignore application-protocol ignore
user@host# set applications application customer-ignore protocol tcp
user@host# set applications application customer-ignore destination-port 135
```

All ALGs will be ignored by traffic with TCP destination port 135.

- **Add more applications to an ALG's application set**—To add applications such as MS-RPC or Sun RPC services, which are not predefined on SRX Series devices:

```
[edit]
user@host# set applications application customer-msrpc application-protocol ms-rpc
user@host# set applications application customer-msrpc term t1 protocol tcp
user@host# set applications application customer-msrpc term t1 uuid
e3514235-4b06-11d1-ab04-00c04fc2dcd2
```

MS-RPC data traffic with TCP, uuid e3514235-4b06-11d1-ab04-00c04fc2dcd2, will be permitted, when custom-msrpc is applied to the policy along with other predefined junos-ms-rpc** applications.

- See Also**
- [Understanding Microsoft RPC Services on page 78](#)
 - [Understanding RPC ALGs on page 70](#)

Understanding the IPv6 DNS ALG for Routing, NAT, and NAT-PT

Domain Name System (DNS) is the part of the ALG that handles DNS traffic, monitors DNS query and reply packets, and closes the session if the DNS flag indicates the packet is a reply message.

The DNS ALG supports IPv4 in route mode for Junos OS Release 10.0 and earlier releases. In Junos OS Release 10.4, this feature implements IPv6 support on the DNS ALG for routing, Network Address Translation (NAT), and Network Address Translation-Protocol Translation (NAT-PT).

When the DNS ALG receives a DNS query from the DNS client, a security check is done on the DNS packet. When the DNS ALG receives a DNS reply from the DNS server, a similar security check is done, and then the session for the DNS traffic closes.

IPv6 DNS ALG Traffic in NAT mode

IPv6 NAT provides address translation between IPv4 and IPv6 addressed network devices. It also provides address translation between IPv6 hosts. NAT between IPv6 hosts is done in a similar manner and for similar purposes as IPv4 NAT.

When the DNS traffic works in NAT mode, the DNS ALG translates the public address in a DNS reply to a private address when the DNS client is on private network, and similarly translates a private address to a public address when the DNS client is on a public network.

In Junos OS Release 10.4 IPv6 NAT supports:

- Source NAT translations
- Destination NAT mappings
- Static NAT mappings



NOTE: The IPv6 DNS ALG NAT supports only static NAT mapping.

IPv6 DNS ALG Traffic in NAT-PT mode

IPv6 NAT-PT provides address allocation and protocol translation between IPv4 and IPv6 addressed network devices. The translation process is based on the Stateless IP/ICMP Translation (SIIT) method; however, the state and the context of each communication is retained during the session lifetime. IPv6 NAT-PT supports Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP), Transmission Control Protocol (TCP), and User Datagram Protocol (UDP) packets.

IPv6 NAT-PT supports the following types of NAT-PT:

- Traditional NAT-PT
- Bidirectional NAT-PT

A DNS-based mechanism dynamically maps IPv6 addresses to IPv4-only servers. NAT-PT uses the DNS ALG to transparently do the translations.

For example, a company using an internal IPv6 network needs to be able to communicate with external IPv4 servers that do not have IPv6 addresses.

To support the dynamic address binding, a DNS should be used for name resolution. The IPv4 host looks up the name of the IPv6 node in its local configured IPv4 DNS server, which then passes the query to the IPv6 DNS server through an SRX Series device using NAT-PT.

When DNS traffic works in NAT-PT mode, the DNS ALG translates the IP address in a DNS reply packet between the IPv4 address and the IPv6 address when the DNS client is in an IPv6 network and the server is in an IPv4 network, and vice versa.



NOTE: In NAT-PT mode, only IPV4 to IPV6 addresses translation is supported in the DNS ALG. To support NAT-PT mode in a DNS ALG, the NAT module should support NAT-PT.

When the DNS ALG receives a DNS query from the DNS client, the DNS ALG performs the following security and sanity checks on the DNS packets:

- Enforces the maximum DNS message length (the default is 512 bytes and the maximum length is 8KB)
- Enforces a domain-name length of 255 bytes and a label length of 63 bytes
- Verifies the integrity of the domain-name referred to by the pointer if compression pointers are encountered in the DNS message
- Checks to see if a compression pointer loop exists

Similar sanity checks are done when the DNS ALG receives a DNS reply from the DNS Server, after which the session for this DNS traffic gets closed.

- See Also**
- [DNS ALG Overview on page 32](#)
 - *IPv6 NAT Overview*
 - *IPv6 NAT PT Overview*

Understanding IPv6 Support in FTP ALG

File Transfer Protocol (FTP) is the part of the ALG that handles FTP traffic. The PORT/PASV requests and corresponding 200/227 responses in FTP are used to announce the TCP port, which the host listens to for the FTP data connection.

EPRT/EPST/229 commands are used for these requests and responses. FTP ALG supports EPRT/EPST/229 already, but only for IPv4 addresses.

In Junos OS Release 10.4, EPRT/EPST/229 commands have been updated to support both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses.

FTP ALG uses preallocated objcache to store its session cookies. When both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses are supported on FTP ALG, the session cookie structure will enlarge by 256 bits (32 bytes) to store IPv6 address.

FTP ALG Support for IPv6

The FTP ALG monitors commands and responses on the FTP control channel for syntactical correctness and opens corresponding pinholes to permit data channel connections to be established. In Junos OS Release 10.4, the FTP ALG supported IPv4 routing, IPv6 routing, and NAT mode only. In Junos OS Release 11.2 and later releases, the FTP ALG also supports IPv6 NAT and NAT-PT modes.

EPRT mode

The EPRT command allows for the specification of an extended address for the data connection. The extended address must consist of the network protocol as well as the network and transport addresses.

The format of EPRT is:

```
EPRT<space><d><net-prt><d><net-addr><d><tcp-port><d>
```

- <net-prt>: An address family number defined by IANA
- <net-addr>: A protocol specific string of the network address
- <tcp-port>: A TCP port number

The following are sample EPRT commands for IPv6:

```
EPRT |2|1080::8:800:200C:417A|5282|
```

In this mode, FTP ALG focuses only on the EPRT command; it extracts the IPv6 address and port from the EPRT command and opens the pinhole.

EPSV mode

The EPSV command requests that a server be listening on a data port and waiting for a connection. The response to this command includes only the TCP port number of the listening connection.

An example response string is follows:

```
Entering Extended Passive Mode (||6446|)
```



NOTE: The response code for entering passive mode using an extended address must be 229. You should extract the TCP port in 229 payloads and use it to open the pinhole.

See Also • [FTP ALG Overview on page 40](#)

- Related Documentation**
- [Understanding Data ALG Types on page 29](#)
 - [Understanding VoIP ALG Types on page 149](#)

CHAPTER 2

Data ALGs

- [Understanding Data ALG Types on page 29](#)
- [DNS ALG on page 31](#)
- [FTP ALG on page 40](#)
- [IKE and ESP ALG on page 46](#)
- [PPTP ALG on page 57](#)
- [RPC ALG on page 70](#)
- [RSH ALG on page 81](#)
- [RTSP ALG on page 95](#)
- [SQLNET ALG on page 108](#)
- [TALK ALG on page 121](#)
- [TFTP ALG on page 134](#)
- [Understanding IPv6 ALG Support for ICMP on page 140](#)
- [Understanding 464XLAT ALG Traffic Support on page 141](#)

Understanding Data ALG Types

Junos OS supports the following data ALGs:

[Table 3 on page 29](#) lists the data ALG types.

Table 3: Data ALG types

Data ALG	Description
DNS	Provides an ALG for the Domain Name System. The DNS ALG monitors DNS query and reply packets and closes session if the DNS flag indicates the packet is a reply message.
DDNS	Dynamic DNS (DDNS) is an addition to the DNS standard. DDNS updates a DNS server with new or changed records for IP addresses without the need for human intervention. Unlike DNS that only works with static IP addresses, DDNS is also designed to support dynamic IP addresses, such as those assigned by a DHCP server. DDNS is a good option for home networks, which often receive dynamic public IP addresses from their Internet provider that occasionally changes.

Table 3: Data ALG types (continued)

Data ALG	Description
FTP	Provides an ALG for the File Transfer Protocol (FTP). The FTP ALG monitors PORT, PASV, and 227 commands. It performs NAT on the IP, port, or both in the message and gate opening on the device as necessary.
IKE and ESP ALG	<p>Monitors IKE traffic between the client and the server and permits only one IKE Phase 2 message exchange between any given client/server pair, not just one exchange between any client and any server.</p> <p>Internet Key Exchange (IKE) and Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) traffic is exchanged between the clients and the server. However, if the clients do not support NAT-Traversal (NAT-T) and if the device assigns the same NAT-generated IP address to two or more clients, the device will be unable to distinguish and route return traffic properly.</p> <p>NOTE: If the user wants to support both NAT-T-capable and non-NAT-T-capable clients, then some additional configurations are required. If there are NAT-T capable clients, the user must enable the source NAT address persistence.</p>
MS-RPC	Provides an ALG for the Microsoft Remote Procedure Call.
PPTP	Provides an ALG for the Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol (PPTP). The PPTP is a Layer 2 protocol that tunnels PPP data across TCP/IP networks. The PPTP client is freely available on Windows systems and it is also popularly applied on Linux systems, and is widely deployed for building Virtual Private Networks (VPNs).
RSH	Provides an ALG for the Remote Shell (RSH). The RSH ALG handles TCP packets destined for port 514 and processes the RSH port command. The RSH ALG performs NAT on the port in the port command and opens gates as necessary.
RTSP	Provides an ALG for the Real Time Streaming Protocol (RTSP). RTSP is a standard protocol for streaming media applications. It controls the delivery of data with real-time properties such as audio and video.
SQL	Provides an ALG for the Structured Query Language (SQL). The SQLNET ALG processes SQL TNS response frame from the server side. It parses the packet and looks for the (HOST=ipaddress), (PORT=port) pattern and performs NAT and gate opening on the client side for the TCP data channel.
SUNRPC	Provides an ALG for the SUN Remote Procedure Call.
TALK	Provides an ALG for the TALK Protocol. The TALK protocol uses UDP port 517 and port 518 for control channel connections. The talk program consists of a server and a client. The server handles client notifications and helps to establish talk sessions. There are two types of talk servers: ntalk and talkd. The TALK ALG processes packets of both ntalk and talkd formats. It also performs NAT and gate opening as necessary.
TFTP	Provides an ALG for the Trivial File Transfer Protocol (TFTP). The TFTP ALG processes TFTP packets that initiate the request and opens a gate to allow return packets from the reverse direction to the port that sends the request.
TWAMP	The Two-Way Active Measurement Protocol (TWAMP) is an open protocol for measuring network performance between any two devices in a network that supports the protocols in the TWAMP framework. The TWAMP consists of two interrelated protocols –TWAMP-Control and TWAMP-Test.

For information about enabling and configuring each of these ALGs through J-Web, select the **Configure>Security>ALG** page in the J-Web user interface and click **Help**.

Starting with Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D60 and Junos OS Release 17.3R1, SRX5400, SRX5600, and SRX5800 devices with the SRX5K-MPC (IOC2), SRX5K-MPC3-100G10G (IOC3), and SRX5K-MPC3-40G10G (IOC3) support Express Path (formerly known as services offloading) for ALG traffic.

The following ALG data traffic supports Express Path—FTP, H.323 (only RTP/RTCP sessions are offloaded), MGCP, MS RPC, RSH, RTSP, SCCP, SIP (only RTP/RTCP sessions are offloaded), Sun RPC, TALK (only TCP sessions are offloaded), and TFTP.

DNS, IKE and ESP, PPTP, and SQL-NET ALG data traffic do not support Express Path.

Once an Express Path session is set up, packets cannot be sent to the SPU again.

Release History Table

Release	Description
15.1X49-D60	Starting with Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D60 and Junos OS Release 17.3R1, SRX5400, SRX5600, and SRX5800 devices with the SRX5K-MPC (IOC2), SRX5K-MPC3-100G10G (IOC3), and SRX5K-MPC3-40G10G (IOC3) support Express Path (formerly known as services offloading) for ALG traffic.

Related Documentation

- [Understanding Custom ALG Services on page 22](#)

DNS ALG

The Domain Name System (DNS) Application Layer Gateway (ALG) service handles data associated with locating and translating domain names into IP addresses. The ALG typically runs on port 53. The ALG monitors DNS query and reply packets and supports only UDP traffic. For more information, see the following topics:

- [DNS ALG Overview on page 32](#)
- [Example: Configuring the DNS ALG on page 32](#)
- [Understanding DNS and DDNS Doctoring on page 36](#)

DNS ALG Overview

The DNS Application Layer Gateway (ALG) service provides an application-level gateway for use with DNS clients. The DNS ALG service allows a client to access multiple DNS servers in different networks and provides routing to and from those servers. It also supports flexible address translation of the DNS query and response packets. These functions allow the DNS client to query many different domains from a single DNS server instance on the client side of the network.

The DNS server listens through UDP port 53 for incoming queries from DNS resolvers. A resolver communicates with DNS servers by sending DNS queries and handling DNS responses.



NOTE: The default port for DNS ALG is port 53.

The DNS ALG performs the following functions:

- Monitors DNS query and reply packets and closes the session when the DNS reply is received
- Performs DNS doctoring
- Performs the IPv4 and IPv6 address transformations

The Domain Name System (DNS) was originally designed to support queries of a static configured database and the data was expected to change.

Dynamic DNS (DDNS) support is now available in addition to the DNS standard. The main difference between DNS and DDNS is in the message format of the header section and the update message.

DDNS messages are processed differently when compared to DNS messages. Message parsing is rewritten for DDNS. DDNS does NAT and NAT-PT in the query part of the message and DNS does NAT and NAT-PT in the response part of the message.

- See Also**
- [DNS Overview](#)
 - [DNSSEC Overview](#)

Example: Configuring the DNS ALG

This example shows how to configure the DNS ALG to pass through DNS traffic with a static NAT pool on Juniper Networks devices.

- [Requirements on page 33](#)
- [Overview on page 33](#)
- [Configuration on page 33](#)
- [Verification on page 35](#)

Requirements

Before you begin:

- Configure static NAT pool for all IP address.
- Understand the concepts behind ALG for DNS. See [“DNS ALG Overview” on page 32](#).

Overview

In this example, the ALG for DNS is configured to monitor and allow DNS traffic to be exchanged between the clients and the server located on opposite sides of a Juniper Networks device.

This example shows how to configure a static NAT pool and rule set, and associate the DNS ALG to a policy.

Configuration

- [Configuring a NAT Static Pool and Rule Set on page 33](#)
- [Configuring and Printing the DNS Trace on page 35](#)

Configuring a NAT Static Pool and Rule Set

CLI Quick Configuration To quickly configure this section of the example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set security nat static rule-set rs1 from zone untrust
set security nat static rule-set rs1 rule r1 match destination-address 1.1.1.1/32
set security nat static rule-set rs1 rule r1 then static-nat prefix 2.2.2.2/32
set security policies from-zone untrust to-zone trust policy u2t match source-address
any
set security policies from-zone untrust to-zone trust policy u2t match destination-address
any
set security policies from-zone untrust to-zone trust policy u2t match application
junos-dns-udp
set security policies from-zone untrust to-zone trust policy u2t then permit
```

Step-by-Step Procedure The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode* in the CLI User Guide.

To configure a static NAT pool:

1. Create a NAT static rule set.

```
[edit ]
user@host# set security nat static rule-set rs1 from zone untrust
user@host# set security nat static rule-set rs1 rule r1 match destination-address
1.1.1.1/32
user@host# set security nat static rule-set rs1 rule r1 then static-nat prefix 2.2.2.2/32
```

2. Associate the NAT Traversal (NAT-T) application using a policy.

```
[edit]
user@host# set security policies from-zone untrust to-zone trust policy u2t match
source-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone untrust to-zone trust policy u2t match
destination-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone untrust to-zone trust policy u2t match
application junos-dns-udp
user@host# set security policies from-zone untrust to-zone trust policy u2t then
permit
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show security nat** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
user@host# show security nat
static {
  rule-set rs1 {
    from zone untrust;
    rule r1 {
      match {
        destination-address 1.1.1.1/32;
      }
      then {
        static-nat {
          prefix {
            2.2.2.2/32;
          }
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

```
[edit]
user@host# show security policies
from-zone untrust to-zone trust {
  policy u2t {
    match {
      source-address any;
      destination-address any;
      application [ junos-dns-udp];
    }
    then {
      permit;
    }
  }
}
default-policy {
  permit-all;
}
```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Configuring and Printing the DNS Trace

Purpose Print the DNS trace file.

Action From configuration mode, enter the following command.

```
set security alg traceoptions file alglog
set security alg traceoptions file size 1g
set security alg traceoptions level verbose
set security alg dns traceoptions flag all
```

Verification

To confirm that the configuration is working properly, perform these tasks:

- [Verifying DNS ALG Custom Applications on page 35](#)
- [Verifying DNS ALG on page 35](#)

Verifying DNS ALG Custom Applications

Purpose Verify that the custom applications to support the DNS ALG are enabled.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security policies** command.

```
user@host> show security policies
```

```
Default policy: permit-all
From zone: untrust, To zone: trust
Policy: u2t, State: enabled, Index: 6, Scope Policy: 0, Sequence number: 1
Source addresses: any
Destination addresses: any
Applications: junos-dns-udp
Action: permit
```

Meaning The sample output shows that the custom applications to support the DNS ALG is enabled.

Verifying DNS ALG

Purpose Verify that DNS ALG is enabled.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security alg status** command.

```
user@host> show security alg status
```

```
DNS      : Enabled
FTP      : Enabled
H323     : Enabled
```

Meaning The output shows the DNS ALG status as follows:

- Enabled—Shows the DNS ALG is enabled.
- Disabled—Shows the DNS ALG is disabled.

See Also • [DNS ALG on page 31](#)

Understanding DNS and DDNS Doctoring

Junos OS for SRX Series devices provides Domain Name System (DNS) support. The DNS ALG monitors DNS query and reply packets and closes the session if the DNS flag indicates that the packet is a reply message. To configure the DNS ALG, use the **edit security alg dns** statement at the **[edit security alg]** hierarchy level.

DNS provides name-to-address mapping within a routing class, whereas Network Address Translation (NAT) attempts to provide transparent routing between hosts in disparate address realms of the same routing class. As a result, NAT can cause some DNS problems the DNG ALG must handle through a process called DNS doctoring.

The same doctoring feature applies to the dynamic domain name system (DDNS). For DDNS in NAT mode, you also can do the IP translation in the DDNS update.

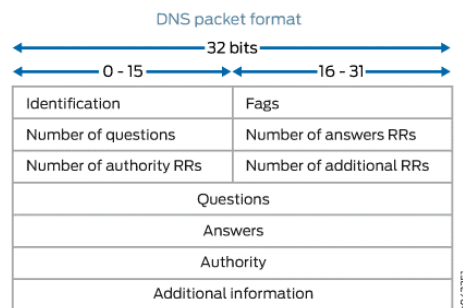
To resolve the problems introduced by NAT, DNS and DDNS ALG functionality has been extended to support static NAT, allowing the problems to be resolved through DNS doctoring.



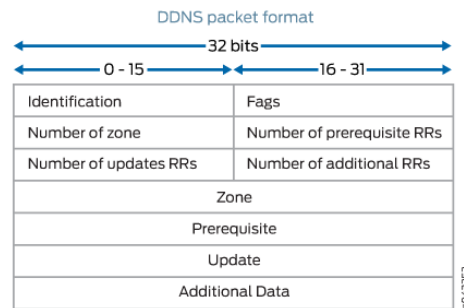
NOTE: The DNS ALG must be enabled on the devices to perform DNS doctoring. With the DNS ALG enabled on SRX3400, SRX3600, SRX4600, SRX5600 and SRX5800 devices, DNS doctoring is enabled by default. (Platform support depends on the Junos OS release in your installation.)

The restoring and doctoring process is performed in two parts:

- **Packet sanity check**



For the DNS packet, the DNS ALG check fields are questions, answers, authority, and additional information. The DNS ALG drops the packet if the number of questions is more than 1, the domain name is more than 255 bytes, or the label length is more than 63 bytes.



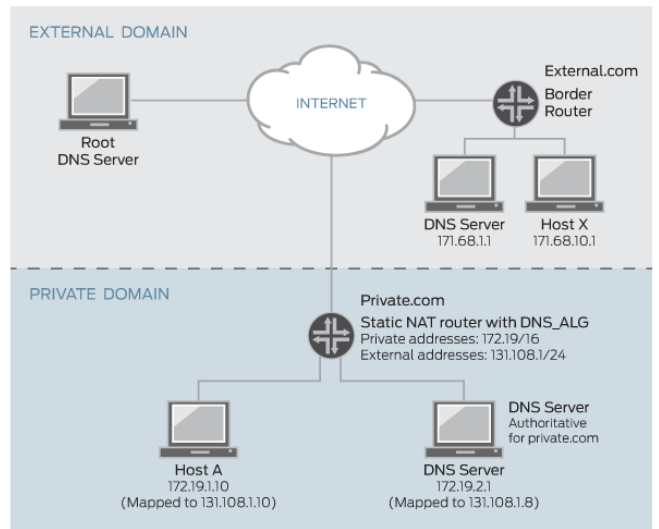
For the DDNS packet, the DNS ALG check fields are zone, prerequisite, update, and additional data. The DNS ALG drops the packet if the number of zones is more than 1, the domain name is more than 255 bytes, or the label length is more than 63 bytes.

For both DNS and DDNS, the DNS ALG drops the packet that does not comply with the standards.

- NAT

Figure 1 on page 38 shows how DNS translates a private address to a public address.

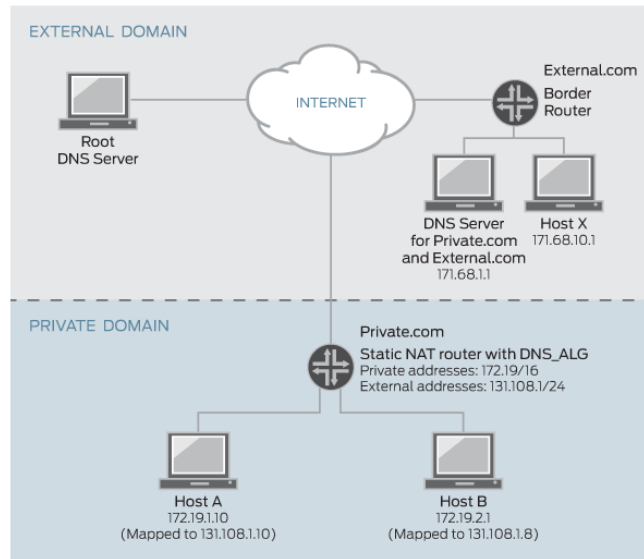
Figure 1: DNS Address Translation (Private to Public)



When host X in external.com wants to resolve host A's address through DNS and if the DNS ALG does not support NAT, it takes a private address such as 172.19.1.10, which is invalid to host X. The private address is translated to public address 131.108.1.10 through the DNS ALG.

Figure 2 on page 39 shows how DNS translates a public address to a private address.

Figure 2: DNS Address Translation (Public to Private)



When host A in private.com wants to resolve host B's address through DNS and if the DNS ALG does not support NAT, it takes a public address from the DNS server in external.com, such as 131.108.1.8. If Host A sends traffic to host B with public address 131.108.1.8, which is invalid to host B in the private domain. Hence, the public address in the DNS query A-record is translated to private address 172.19.2.1 through the DNS ALG.



NOTE: The DNS ALG can translate the first 32 A-records in a single DNS reply. A-records after the first 32 records are not handled. Also note that the DNS ALG supports IPv4 and IPv6 addresses and does not support VPN tunnels.

Disabling DNS and DDNS Doctoring

The DNS ALG must be enabled on the devices to perform DNS and DDNS doctoring. With the DNS ALG enabled on the device, the DNS and DDNS doctoring feature is enabled by default. You can disable DNS and DDNS doctoring with the CLI.

To disable DNS and DDNS doctoring:

1. Disable all the doctoring features by specifying the **none** configuration option.

This command disables all the doctoring features.

```
user@host# set security alg dns doctoring none
```

2. Disable the NAT feature and retain the sanity-check feature by specifying the **sanity-check** configuration option.

This option disables the NAT feature and retains the sanity-check feature.

```
user@host# set security alg dns doctoring sanity-check
```

3. If you are finished configuring the device, commit the configuration.
4. To verify the configuration, use the vty command **show usp algs dns stats**.

- See Also**
- [IPv6 NAT Overview](#)
 - [IPv6 NAT PT Overview](#)
 - [IPv6 NAT-PT Communication Overview](#)

- Related Documentation**
- [IKE and ESP ALG on page 46](#)
 - [PPTP ALG on page 57](#)
 - [RPC ALG on page 70](#)

FTP ALG

File Transfer Protocol is a widely and commonly used method of exchanging files over IP networks. The FTP ALG monitors PORT, PASV, and 227 commands. It performs NAT on the IP, port, or both in the message and gate opening on the device as necessary. For more information, see the following topics:

- [FTP ALG Overview on page 40](#)
- [Understanding FTP Commands on page 41](#)
- [Example: Configuring the FTP ALG on page 43](#)

FTP ALG Overview

The File Transfer Protocol (FTP) is a widely and commonly used method of exchanging files over IP networks. In addition to the main control connection, data connections are also made for any data transfer between the client and the server; and the host, port, and direction are negotiated through the control channel.

For active mode FTP, the Junos OS stateful firewall service scans the client-to-server application data for the PORT command, which provides the IP address and port number to which the server connects. For passive-mode FTP, the Junos OS stateful firewall service scans the client-to-server application data for the PASV command and then scans the server-to-client responses for the 227 response, which contains the IP address and port number to which the client connects.

FTP represents the addresses and port numbers in ASCII. As a result, when addresses and ports are rewritten, the TCP sequence number might be changed, and thereafter the NAT service needs to maintain this delta in SEQ and ACK numbers by performing sequence NAT on all subsequent packets.

The FTP ALG supports the following:

- Automatically allocates data ports and firewall permissions for dynamic data connection
- Monitors the control connection in both active and passive modes
- Rewrites the control packets with the appropriate NAT address and port information
- Network Address Translation, Protocol Translation (NAT-PT)
- Transport Layer Security (TLS) as the security mechanism
- [IPv6 FTP ALG for Routing on page 41](#)

IPv6 FTP ALG for Routing

The PORT/PASV requests and corresponding 200/227 responses in FTP are used to announce the TCP port, which the host listens to for the FTP data connection.

EPRT/EPSV/229 commands are used for these requests and responses. FTP ALG supports EPRT/EPSV/229 already, but only for IPv4 addresses.

In Junos OS Release 10.4, EPRT/EPSV/229 commands have been updated to support both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses.

FTP ALG uses preallocated objcache to store its session cookies. When both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses are supported on FTP ALG, the session cookie structure will enlarge by 256 bits (32 bytes) to store IPv6 address.

FTP ALG Support for IPv6

The FTP ALG monitors commands and responses on the FTP control channel for syntactical correctness and opens corresponding pinholes to permit data channel connections to be established. In Junos OS Release 10.4, the FTP ALG supported IPv4 routing, IPv6 routing, and NAT mode only. In Junos OS Release 11.2 and later releases, the FTP ALG also supports IPv6 NAT and NAT-PT modes..

Understanding FTP Commands

The FTP ALG monitors commands and responses on the FTP control channel for syntactical correctness and opens corresponding pinholes to permit data channel connections to be established. In Junos OS Release 10.4, the FTP ALG supported IPv4 routing and NAT mode, and IPv6 routing mode only. In Junos OS Release 11.2 and later releases, the FTP ALG also supports IPv6 NAT and NAT-PT modes.

PORT Command

The PORT command is used in active FTP mode. The PORT command specifies the address and the port number to which a server should connect. When you use this command, the argument is a concatenation of a 32-bit Internet host address and a 16-bit TCP port address. The address information is broken into 8-bit fields, and the value of each field is transmitted as a decimal number (in character string representation). The fields are separated by commas.

The following is a sample PORT command, where h1 is the highest order 8-bit of the Internet host address:

PORT h1,h2,h3,h4,p1,p2

PASV Command

The PASV command requests a server to listen on a data port that is not the default data port of the server and to wait for a connection, rather than initiating another connection. The response to the PASV command includes the host and port address the server is listening on.

Extended FTP Commands

Extended FTP commands provide a method by which FTP can communicate the data connection endpoint information for network protocols other than IPv4. Extended FTP commands are specified in RFC 2428. In RFC 2428, the extended FTP commands EPRT and EPSV, replace the FTP commands PORT and PASV, respectively.

EPRT Command

The EPRT command allows for the specification of an extended address for the data connection. The extended address must consist of the network protocol as well as the network and transport addresses.

The format of EPRT is:

EPRT<space><d><net-prt><d><net-addr><d><tcp-port><d>

Parameter	Description
net-prt	An address family number defined by IANA.
net-addr	A protocol-specific string of the network address.
tcp-port	A TCP port number on which the host is listening for data connection.
Delimiter	The delimiter character must be one of the ASCII characters in range 33 to 126 inclusive. The character " " (ASCII 124) is recommended.

The following command shows how to specify the server to use an IPv4 address to open a data connection to host 132.235.1.2 on TCP port 6275:

```
EPRT |1|132.235.1.2|6275|
```

The following command shows how to specify the server to use an IPv6 network protocol and a network address to open a TCP data connection on port 5282:

```
EPRT |2|1080::8:800:200C:417A|5282|
```

In this mode, FTP ALG focuses only on the EPRT command; it extracts the IPv6 address and port from the EPRT command and opens the pinhole.

EPSV mode

The EPSV command requests that a server listen on a data port and wait for a connection. The response to this command includes only the TCP port number of the listening connection.

An example response string is as follows:

Entering Extended Passive Mode (|||6446|)



NOTE: The response code for entering passive mode using an extended address must be 229. You should extract the TCP port in 229 payloads and use it to open the pinhole.

Example: Configuring the FTP ALG

This example shows how to configure the NAT-PT for FTP ALG.

- [Requirements on page 43](#)
- [Overview on page 43](#)
- [Configuration on page 43](#)
- [Verification on page 45](#)

Requirements

Before you begin:

- Configure proxy ARP for all IP addresses in the source NAT pool.
- Understand the concepts behind ALG for FTP. See [“FTP ALG Overview” on page 40](#).

Overview

In this example, the ALG for FTP is configured to monitor and allow FTP traffic to be exchanged between the clients and the server located on opposite sides of a Juniper Networks device.

This example shows how to configure the NAT-PT for FTP ALG.

Configuration

Configuring a NAT Source Pool, NAT Static Pool and Rule Set

CLI Quick Configuration

To quickly configure this section of the example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set security nat static rule-set rs1 from zone untrust
set security nat source rule-set rs-source to zone trust
```

```
set security nat source rule-set rs-source rule src-nat match source-address 3333::130/128
set security nat source rule-set rs-source rule src-nat match destination-address
  40.0.0.211/32
set security nat source rule-set rs-source rule src-nat then source-nat interface
set security nat static rule-set rs2 from zone untrust
set security nat static rule-set rs2 rule r2 match destination-address 4444::141/128
set security nat static rule-set rs2 rule r2 then static-nat prefix 40.0.0.211/32
```

Step-by-Step Procedure The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode* in the CLI User Guide.

To configure a source NAT pool:

1. Create a source NAT, static NAT, and interface NAT rule set.

```
[edit ]
user@host# set security nat source rule-set rs-source from zone untrust
user@host# set security nat source rule-set rs-source to zone trust
user@host# set security nat source rule-set rs-source rule src-nat match
  source-address 3333::130/128
user@host# set security nat source rule-set rs-source rule src-nat match
  destination-address 40.0.0.211/32
user@host# set security nat source rule-set rs-source rule src-nat then source-nat
  interface
user@host# set security nat static rule-set rs2 from zone untrust
user@host# set security nat static rule-set rs2 rule r2 match destination-address
  4444::141/128
user@host# set security nat static rule-set rs2 rule r2 then static-nat prefix
  40.0.0.211/32
```

2. Associate the NAT-PT application using a policy.

```
[edit]
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy ftp-basic
  match source-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy ftp-basic
  match destination-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy ftp-basic
  match application junos-ftp
user@host# set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy ftp-basic
  then permit
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show security nat** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
user@host# show security nat
static {
  rule-set rs2 {
    from zone untrust;
    rule r2 {
      match {
```

```

        destination-address 4444::141/128;
    }
    then {
        static-nat {
            prefix {
                40.0.0.211/32
            }
        }
    }
}
}
}
}

[edit]
user@host# show security policies
from-zone untrust to-zone trust {
    policy ftp-basic {
        match {
            source-address any;
            destination-address any;
            application [ junos-ping junos-mgcp junos-ftp junos-rsh junos-h323 ];
        }
        then {
            permit;
        }
    }
}
default-policy {
    permit-all;
}

```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Configuring FTP ALG Security Extension

Purpose Set the security alg ftp extension

Action From configuration mode, enter the following command.

```
set security alg ftp ftps-extension
```

Verification

To confirm that the configuration is working properly, perform these tasks:

- [Verifying the NAT Source Pool, NAT Static Pool Rule Set on page 45](#)
- [Verifying FTP ALGs on page 46](#)

Verifying the NAT Source Pool, NAT Static Pool Rule Set

Purpose Verify that the NAT source pool and rule set used to support the FTP ALG are working properly.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show configuration security nat** command.

Verifying FTP ALGs

Purpose Verify that FTP ALG is enabled.

Action From the operational mode, enter the **show security alg status** command.

```
user@host> show security alg status
FTP      : Enabled
```

Meaning The output shows the FTP ALG status as follows:

- Enabled—Shows the FTP ALG is enabled.
- Disabled—Shows the FTP ALG is disabled.



NOTE: The FTP ALG is enabled by default.

Release History Table

Release	Description
11.2	In Junos OS Release 11.2 and later releases, the FTP ALG also supports IPv6 NAT and NAT-PT modes.
10.4	In Junos OS Release 10.4, EPRT/EPST/229 commands have been updated to support both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses.
10.4	In Junos OS Release 10.4, the FTP ALG supported IPv4 routing, IPv6 routing, and NAT mode only.

Related Documentation

- [PPTP ALG on page 57](#)
- [RPC ALG on page 70](#)

IKE and ESP ALG

Internet Key Exchange (IKE) and Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) are a part of the IP Security (IPsec) protocol. IKE and ESP traffic is exchanged between the clients and the server. The IKE and ESP ALG helps in resolving the IPsec VPNs issues when the IPsec

VPN passes through the SRX Series device with NAT enabled on the device. For more information, see the following topics:

- [Understanding the IKE and ESP ALG on page 47](#)
- [Example: Configuring the IKE and ESP ALG on page 48](#)
- [Example: Enabling the IKE and ESP ALG and Setting Timeouts on page 55](#)

Understanding the IKE and ESP ALG

An SRX Series device can be used solely as a Network Address Translation (NAT) device when placed between VPN clients on the private side of the NAT gateway and the virtual private network (VPN) gateways on the public side.

Internet Key Exchange (IKE) and Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) traffic is exchanged between the clients and the server. However, if the clients do not support NAT-Traversal (NAT-T) and if the device assigns the same NAT-generated IP address to two or more clients, the device will be unable to distinguish and route return traffic properly.



NOTE: If the user wants to support both NAT-T-capable and non-NAT-T-capable clients, then some additional configurations are required. If there are NAT-T capable clients, the user must enable the source NAT address persistence.

The ALG for IKE and ESP monitors IKE traffic between the client and the server and permits only one IKE Phase 2 message exchange between any given client/server pair, not just one exchange between any client and any server.

ALG for IKE and ESP traffic has been created and NAT has been enhanced to implement the following:

- To enable the SRX Series devices to pass IKE and ESP traffic with a source NAT pool
- To allow the device to be configured to return the same NAT-generated IP address for the same IP address without NAT ("address-persistent NAT"). As a result, the device is able to associate a client's outgoing IKE traffic with its return traffic from the server, especially when the IKE session times out and needs to be reestablished.
- The resulting ESP traffic between the client and the server is also allowed, especially in the direction from the server to the client.
- The return ESP traffic matches the following:
 - The server IP address as source IP
 - The client IP address as destination IP



NOTE: In SRX1400, SRX1500, SRX3400, SRX3600, SRX5600, or SRX5800 devices, IKE negotiations involving NAT traversal do not work if the IKE peer is behind a NAT device that will change the source IP address of the IKE packets during the negotiation. For example, if the NAT device is configured with DIP, it changes the source IP because the IKE protocol switches the UDP port from 500 to 4500. (Platform support depends on the Junos OS release in your installation.)

Understanding IKE and ESP ALG Operation

Application Layer Gateway (ALG) for Internet Key Exchange (IKE) and Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) traffic has the following behavior:

- An IKE and ESP ALG monitors IKE traffic between the client and the server, and it permits only one IKE Phase 2 message exchange between the client and the server at any given time.
- For a Phase 2 message:
 - If a Phase 2 message exchange between the client and server does not happen, the IKE ALG gates are opened for the relevant ESP traffic from the client to the server and from the server to the client.
 - If both IKE ALG gates are not opened successfully, or if the Phase 2 message exchange already took place, then the Phase 2 message is dropped.
- When ESP traffic hits the IKE ALG gates, sessions are created to capture subsequent ESP traffic, and to perform the proper NATing (that is, the source IP address translation from the client to the server traffic and the destination IP address translation from the server to the client traffic).
- When the ESP traffic does not hit either one or both of the gates, then the gates naturally time out.
- Once the IKE ALG gates are collapsed or timed out, another IKE Phase 2 message exchange is permitted.
- IKE NAT-T traffic on floating port 4500 is not processed in an IKE ALG. To support a mixture of NAT-T-capable and non-capable clients, you need to enable source NAT address persistent.

Example: Configuring the IKE and ESP ALG

This example shows how to configure the IKE and ESP ALG to pass through IKE and ESP traffic with a source NAT pool on Juniper Networks devices.

- [Requirements on page 49](#)
- [Overview on page 49](#)
- [Configuration on page 49](#)
- [Verification on page 53](#)

Requirements

Before you begin:

- Configure proxy ARP for all IP addresses in the source NAT pool.
- Understand the concepts behind IKE and ESP ALG. See *Understanding IKE and ESP ALG Operation*.

Overview

In this example, the ALG for IKE and ESP is configured to monitor and allow IKE and ESP traffic to be exchanged between the clients and the server located on opposite sides of a Juniper Networks device.

This example shows how to configure a source NAT pool and rule set, configure a custom application to support the IKE and ESP ALG, and associate this ALG to a policy.

If you want to support a mixture of NAT-traversal (NAT-T) capable clients and noncapable clients, you must enable persistent source NAT translation (so that once a particular source NAT is associated with a given IP address, subsequent source NAT translations use the same IP address). You also must configure a custom IKE NAT traversal application to support the encapsulation of IKE and ESP in UDP port 4500. This configuration enables IKE and ESP to pass through the NAT-enabled device.

Configuration

- [Configuring a NAT Source Pool and Rule Set on page 49](#)
- [Configuring a Custom Application and Associating it to a Policy on page 51](#)
- [Configuring IKE and ESP ALG Support for Both NAT-T Capable and Noncapable Clients on page 52](#)

Configuring a NAT Source Pool and Rule Set

CLI Quick Configuration

To quickly configure this section of the example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set security nat source pool pool1 address 10.10.10.1/32 to 10.10.10.10/32
set security zones security-zone green address-book address sa1 1.1.1.0/24
set security zones security-zone red address-book address da1 2.2.2.0/24
set security nat source rule-set rs1 from zone green
set security nat source rule-set rs1 to zone red
set security nat source rule-set rs1 rule r1 match source-address 1.1.1.0/24
set security nat source rule-set rs1 rule r1 match destination-address 2.2.2.0/24
set security nat source rule-set rs1 rule r1 then source-nat pool pool1
```

Step-by-Step Procedure The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode* in the CLI User Guide.

To configure a source NAT pool:

1. Create a NAT source pool.

```
[edit ]
user@host# set security nat source pool pool1 address 10.10.10.1/32 to 10.10.10.10/32
```

2. Configure security zone address book entries.

```
[edit]
user@host# set security zones security-zone green address-book address sa1
1.1.1.0/24
user@host# set security zones security-zone red address-book address da1 2.2.2.0/24
```

3. Create a NAT source rule set.

```
[edit security nat source rule-set rs1]
user@host# set from zone green
user@host# set to zone red
user@host# set rule r1 match source-address 1.1.1.0/24
user@host# set rule r1 match destination-address 2.2.2.0/24
user@host# set rule r1 then source-nat pool pool1
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show security nat** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
user@host# show security nat
source {
  pool pool1 {
    address {
      10.10.10.1/32 to 10.10.10.10/32;
    }
  }
}
rule-set rs1 {
  from zone green;
  to zone red;
  rule r1 {
    match {
      source-address 1.1.1.0/24;
      destination-address 2.2.2.0/24;
    }
    then {
      source-nat {
        pool {
          pool1;
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

```
    }
}
```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Configuring a Custom Application and Associating it to a Policy

CLI Quick Configuration

To quickly configure this section of the example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set applications application custom-ike-alg source-port 500 destination-port 500 protocol
udp application-protocol ike-esp-nat
set security policies from-zone green to-zone red policy pol1 match destination-address
da1
set security policies from-zone green to-zone red policy pol1 match application
custom-ike-alg
set security policies from-zone green to-zone red policy pol1 then permit
```

Step-by-Step Procedure

The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode* in the CLI User Guide.

To configure a custom application and associate it to a policy:

1. Configure a custom application.

```
[edit]
user@host# set applications application custom-ike-alg source-port 500
destination-port 500 protocol udp application-protocol ike-esp-nat
```

2. Associate the custom application to a policy.

```
[edit security policies from-zone green to-zone red policy pol1]
user@host# set match source-address sa1
user@host# set match destination-address da1
user@host# set match application custom-ike-alg
user@host# set then permit
```

Results

From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show applications** and **show security zones** commands. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
[edit]
user@host# show applications
application custom-ike-alg {
  application-protocol ike-esp-nat;
  protocol udp;
  source-port 500;
  destination-port 500;
}
```

```
[edit]
user@host# show security zones
security-zone Trust {
  host-inbound-traffic {
    system-services {
      all;
    }
    protocols {
      all;
    }
  }
  interfaces {
    ge-0/0/1.0;
  }
}
security-zone green {
  address-book {
    address sa1 1.1.1.0/24;
  }
}
security-zone red {
  address-book {
    address da1 2.2.2.0/24;
  }
}
```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Configuring IKE and ESP ALG Support for Both NAT-T Capable and Noncapable Clients

CLI Quick Configuration

To quickly configure this section of the example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set security nat source address-persistent
set applications application custom-ike-natt protocol udp source-port 4500
  destination-port 4500
set security policies from-zone green to-zone red policy pol1 match source-address sa1
set security policies from-zone green to-zone red policy pol1 match destination-address
  da1
set security policies from-zone green to-zone red policy pol1 match application
  custom-ike-natt
set security policies from-zone green to-zone red policy pol1 then permit
```

Step-by-Step Procedure

The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode* in the CLI User Guide.

To configure IKE and ESP ALG support for both NAT-T capable and noncapable clients:

1. Globally enable persistent source NAT translation.

```
[edit]
user@host# set security nat source address-persistent
```

2. Configure the IKE NAT-T application.

```
[edit]
user@host# set applications application custom-ike-natt protocol udp source-port
4500 destination-port 4500
```

3. Associate the NAT-T application using a policy.

```
[edit security policies from-zone green to-zone red policy pol1]
user@host# set match source-address sa1
user@host# set match destination-address da1
user@host# set match application custom-ike-natt
user@host# set then permit
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show security nat** and **show security policies** commands. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
[edit]
user@host# show security nat
source {
  address-persistent;
}

[edit]
user@host# show security policies
from-zone green to-zone red {
  policy pol1 {
    match {
      source-address sa1;
      destination-address da1;
      application [ custom-ike-alg custom-ike-natt ];
    }
    then {
      permit;
    }
  }
}
default-policy {
  permit-all;
}
```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Verification

To confirm that the configuration is working properly, perform these tasks:

- [Verifying IKE and ESP ALG Custom Applications on page 53](#)
- [Verifying the Security Policies of ALG on page 54](#)

Verifying IKE and ESP ALG Custom Applications

Purpose Verify that the custom applications to support the IKE and ESP ALG are enabled.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security alg status** command.

```
user@host> show security alg status
```

```
ALG Status :
DNS       : Enabled
FTP       : Enabled
H323      : Enabled
MGCP      : Enabled
MSRPC     : Enabled
PPTP      : Enabled
RSH       : Disabled
RTSP      : Enabled
SCCP      : Enabled
SIP       : Enabled
SQL       : Enabled
SUNRPC    : Enabled
TALK      : Enabled
TFTP      : Enabled
IKE-ESP   : Enabled
```

Meaning The output shows the ALG status as follows:

- Enabled—Shows the ALG is enabled.
- Disabled—Shows the ALG is disabled.

Verifying the Security Policies of ALG

Purpose Verify that the application custom IKE ALG and application custom IKE NATT are set.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security policies** command.

```
user@host> show security policies
```

```
Default policy: permit-all
From zone: green, To zone: red
Policy: pol1, State: enabled, Index: 7, Scope Policy: 0, Sequence number: 1
Source addresses: sa1
Destination addresses: da1
Applications: custom-ike-alg, custom-ike-natt
Action: permit
```

Meaning The sample output shows that custom IKE ALG and custom IKE NATT applications are set.

Example: Enabling the IKE and ESP ALG and Setting Timeouts

This example shows how to enable the IKE and ESP ALG and set the timeout values to allow time for the ALG to process ALG state information, ESP gates, and ESP sessions.

- [Requirements on page 55](#)
- [Overview on page 55](#)
- [Configuration on page 55](#)
- [Verification on page 56](#)

Requirements

Understand the concepts behind ALG for IKE and ESP. See *Understanding IKE and ESP ALG Operation*.

Overview

The IKE and ESP ALG processes all traffic specified in any policy to which the ALG is attached. In this example, you configure the **set security alg ike-esp-nat enable** statement so the current default IPsec pass-through behavior is disabled for all IPsec pass-through traffic, regardless of policy.

You then set the timeout values to allow time for the IKE and ESP ALG to process ALG state information, ESP gates, and ESP sessions. In this example, you set the timeout of ALG state information. The timeout range is 180 through 86400 seconds. The default timeout is 14400 seconds. You then set the timeout of the ESP gates created after an IKE Phase 2 exchange has completed. The timeout range is 2 through 30 seconds. The default timeout is 5 seconds. Finally, you set the idle timeout of the ESP sessions created from the IPsec gates. If no traffic hits the session, it is aged out after this period of time. The timeout range is 60 through 2400 seconds. The default timeout is 1800 seconds.

Configuration

CLI Quick Configuration To quickly configure this section of the example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set security alg ike-esp-nat enable
set security alg ike-esp-nat esp-gate-timeout 20
set security alg ike-esp-nat esp-session-timeout 2400
set security alg ike-esp-nat state-timeout 360
```

Step-by-Step Procedure The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode* in the CLI User Guide.

To enable the IKE and ESP ALG and set the timeout values:

1. Enable the IKE and ESP ALG.

```
[edit]
user@host# set security alg ike-esp-nat enable
```

2. Set the timeout for the ALG state information.

```
[edit security alg ike-esp-nat]
user@host# set state-timeout 360
```

3. Set the timeout for the ESP gates created after an IKE Phase 2 exchange has completed.

```
[edit security alg ike-esp-nat]
user@host# set esp-gate-timeout 20
```

4. Set the idle timeout for the ESP sessions created from the IPsec gates.

```
[edit security alg ike-esp-nat]
user@host# set esp-session-timeout 2400
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show security alg** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
[edit]
user@host# show security alg
ike-esp-nat {
  enable;
  state-timeout 360;
  esp-gate-timeout 20;
  esp-session-timeout 2400;
}
```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Verification

To confirm that the configuration is working properly, perform these tasks:

Verifying the ALG for IKE and ESP and Timeout Settings

Purpose Verify that the ALG for IKE and ESP is enabled and the timeout settings for this feature are correct.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security alg ike-esp-nat** command.

See Also • *Introduction to NAT*

Related Documentation • [RPC ALG on page 70](#)

- [RSH ALG on page 81](#)

PPTP ALG

The Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol (PPTP) ALG is a TCP-based ALG. PPTP allows the Point-to-Point Protocol (PPP) to be tunneled through an IP network. PPTP defines a client-server architecture, a PPTP Network Server, and a PPTP Access Concentrator. The PPTP ALG requires a control connection and a data tunnel. The control connection uses TCP to establish and disconnect PPP sessions, and runs on port 1723. The data tunnel carries PPP traffic in generic routing encapsulated (GRE) packets that are carried over IP. For more information, see the following topics:

- [Understanding the PPTP ALG on page 57](#)
- [Example: Configuring the PPTP ALG on page 58](#)

Understanding the PPTP ALG

The Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol (PPTP) ALG is used for tunneling Point-to-Point Protocol (PPP) packets over an IP network. The PPTP ALG is often used to implement a client/server architecture, a PPTP network server, and a PPTP access concentrator.

The PPTP ALG processes PPTP packets, performs Network Address Translation (NAT), open pinholes for new data connections between a client and a server, and transfers data between a client and a server located on opposite sides of a Juniper Networks device.

Understanding IPv6 Support for the PPTP ALG

The PPTP ALG uses TCP port 1723 to connect and disconnect a client and a server. The PPTP ALG supports IPv6 data packets.

The PPTP ALG with IPv6 support, parses both IPv4 and IPv6 PPTP packets, performs NAT, and then opens a pinhole for the data tunnel.

The PPTP ALG with IPv6 support does not support NAT-PT and NAT64, because PPP packets are compressed with Microsoft Point-to-Point Encryption (MPPE) protocol after the tunnel is set up; therefore translation of the IP header in the PPP package cannot be handled.

- The PPTP ALG with IPv6 support has the following limitation:
 - Because PPP packets are compressed with Microsoft Point-to-Point Encryption (MPPE) protocol after the tunnel is set up, translation of the IP header in the PPP package cannot be handled; therefore, to make sure PPTP connection works well, the PPTP client must be able to work in dual stack mode. So that an IPv6 PPTP client can accept an IPv4 address for PPP tunnel interface, by which it can communicate with the IPv4 PPTP server without IP address translation for PPP packets.

The flow module supports IPv6 to parse the GRE packet and use the GRE call ID as fake port information to search the session table and gate table.



NOTE: The PPTP ALG can support NAT64 in a specific scenario in which translation of the IP header in the PPP package is not required—that is, if the PPTP client works in dual-stack mode in the IPv6 network and server in the IPv4 network.

Example: Configuring the PPTP ALG

The PPTP ALG processes PPTP packets, performs NAT, and open pinholes for new data connections between a client and a server.

This example shows how to configure the PPTP ALG in route or NAT mode. The configuration allows PPTP traffic to pass through a device, transferring data between a client and a server located on opposite sides of a Juniper Networks device.

- [Requirements on page 58](#)
- [Overview on page 58](#)
- [Configuration on page 59](#)
- [Verification on page 67](#)

Requirements

This example uses the following hardware and software components:

- An SRX Series device
- Two PCs (client and server)

Before you begin:

- Understand the concepts behind ALGs. See [“ALG Overview” on page 21](#).
- Understand the basics of PPTP ALG. See [“Understanding the PPTP ALG” on page 57](#).

Overview

In this example, first you configure network interfaces on the device, create security zones and assign interfaces to the zones, and configure a policy to allow PPTP traffic to go through an SRX Series device.

Then you create a static NAT rule set `rs1` with a rule `r1` to match with the destination address `30.5.2.120/32`, and you create a static NAT prefix with address `10.5.1.120/32`.

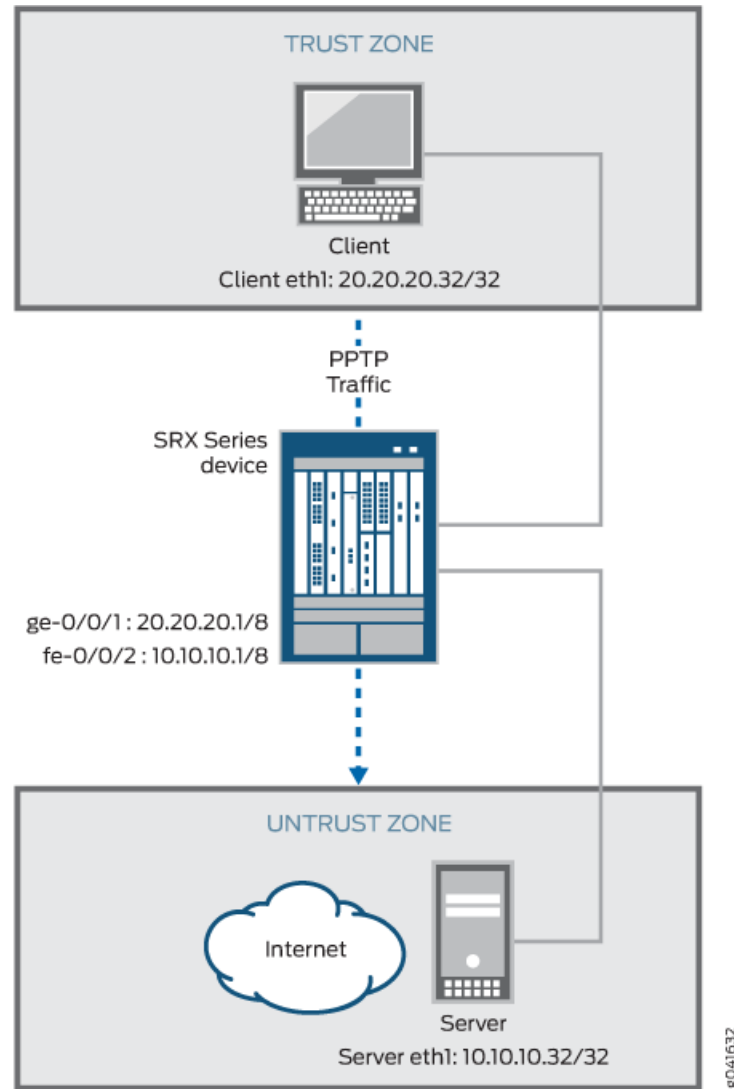
Next you create a source NAT pool `src-p1` with a source rule set `src-rs1` to translate packets from zone `trust` to zone `untrust`. For matching packets, the source address is translated to an IP address in the `src-p1` pool.

Then you create a destination NAT pool `des-p1` with a destination rule set `des-rs1` to translate packets from zone `trust` to destination address `30.5.1.120/32`. For matching packets, the destination address is translated to an IP address in the `des-p1` pool. Finally, you configure PPTP ALG trace options.

Topology

Figure 3 on page 59 shows the PPTP ALG topology.

Figure 3: PPTP ALG Topology



Configuration

To configure the PPTP ALG, perform these tasks:

- [Configuring a Route Mode on page 60](#)
- [Configuring a Static NAT Rule Set on page 62](#)
- [Configuring a Source NAT Pool and Rule Set on page 63](#)
- [Configuring a Destination NAT Pool and Rule Set on page 65](#)
- [Configuring PPTP ALG trace options on page 66](#)

Configuring a Route Mode

CLI Quick Configuration To quickly configure this example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set interfaces ge-0/0/1 unit 0 family inet address 20.20.20.1/8
set interfaces fe-0/0/2 unit 0 family inet address 10.10.10.1/8
set security zones security-zone trust interfaces ge-0/0/1 host-inbound-traffic system-services
all
set security zones security-zone trust interfaces ge-0/0/1 host-inbound-traffic protocols all
set security zones security-zone untrust interfaces fe-0/0/2 host-inbound-traffic system-services
all
set security zones security-zone untrust interfaces fe-0/0/2 host-inbound-traffic protocols all
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy ptp match source-address any
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy ptp match destination-address any
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy ptp match application junos-ptp
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy ptp then permit
```

Step-by-Step Procedure The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode* in the CLI User Guide.

To configure route mode:

1. Configure interfaces.

```
[edit interfaces]
user@host#set ge-0/0/1 unit 0 family inet address 20.20.20.1/8
user@host#set fe-0/0/2 unit 0 family inet address 10.10.10.1/8
```

2. Configure zones and assign interfaces to the zones.

```
[edit security zones security-zone trust]
user@host#set interfaces ge-0/0/1 host-inbound-traffic system-services all
user@host#set interfaces ge-0/0/1 host-inbound-traffic protocols all
[edit security zones security-zone untrust]
user@host#set interfaces fe-0/0/2 host-inbound-traffic system-services all
user@host#set interfaces fe-0/0/2 host-inbound-traffic protocols all
```

3. Configure a PPTP policy that allows PPTP traffic from the trust zone to the untrust zone.

```
[edit security policies from-zone untrust to-zone trust]
user@host#set policy ptp match source-address any
user@host#set policy ptp match destination-address any
user@host#set policy ptp match application junos-ptp
user@host#set policy ptp then permit
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show interfaces**, **show security zones**, and **show security policies** commands. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

For brevity, this **show** output includes only the configuration that is relevant to this example. Any other configuration on the system has been replaced with ellipses (...).

```
[edit]
user@host# show interfaces
...
  ge-0/0/1 {
    unit 0 {
      family inet {
        address 20.20.20.1/8;
      }
    }
  }
  fe-0/0/2 {
    unit 0 {
      family inet {
        address 10.10.10.1/8;
      }
    }
  }
...

[edit]
user@host# show security zones
security-zone trust {
  ....
  interfaces {
    ge-0/0/1 {
      host-inbound-traffic {
        system-services {
          all;
        }
        protocols {
          all;
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
...
security-zone untrust {
  interfaces {
    fe-0/0/2 {
      host-inbound-traffic {
        system-services {
          all;
        }
        protocols {
          all;
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

```
    }  
  }  
}  
  
[edit]  
user@host# show security policies  
from-zone trust to-zone untrust {  
  policy pptp {  
    match {  
      source-address any;  
      destination-address any;  
      application junos-pptp;  
    }  
    then {  
      permit;  
    }  
  }  
}
```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Configuring a Static NAT Rule Set

CLI Quick Configuration To quickly configure this example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set security nat static rule-set rs1 from zone trust  
set security nat static rule-set rs1 rule r1 match destination-address 30.5.2.120/32  
set security nat static rule-set rs1 rule r1 then static-nat prefix 10.5.1.120/32
```

Step-by-Step Procedure The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode* in the CLI User Guide.

To configure a static NAT rule set:

1. Create a static NAT rule set.

```
[edit security nat static rule-set rs1]  
user@host# set from zone trust
```

2. Define the rule to match with the destination address.

```
[edit security nat static rule-set rs1]  
user@host# set rule r1 match destination-address 30.5.2.120/32
```

3. Define the static NAT prefix for the device.

```
[edit security nat static rule-set rs1]  
user@host# set rule r1 then static-nat prefix 10.5.1.120/32
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show security nat** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
[edit]
user@host# show security nat
static {
  rule-set rs1 {
    from zone trust;
    rule r1 {
      match {
        destination-address 30.5.2.120/32;
      }
      then {
        static-nat {
          prefix {
            10.5.1.120/32;
          }
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Configuring a Source NAT Pool and Rule Set

CLI Quick Configuration To quickly configure this example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set security nat source pool src-p1 address 30.5.1.120/32
set security nat source rule-set src-rs1 from zone trust
set security nat source rule-set src-rs1 to zone untrust
set security nat source rule-set src-rs1 rule src-r1 match source-address 20.5.1.120/32
set security nat source rule-set src-rs1 rule src-r1 match destination-address 10.5.2.120/32
set security nat source rule-set src-rs1 rule src-r1 then source-nat pool src-p1
```

Step-by-Step Procedure The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode* in the CLI User Guide.

To configure a source NAT pool and rule set:

1. Create a source NAT pool.

```
[edit security nat source]
user@host#set pool src-p1 address 30.5.1.120/32
```

2. Create a source NAT rule set.

```
[edit security nat source ]
```

```
user@host# set rule-set src-rs1 from zone trust
user@host# set rule-set src-rs1 to zone untrust
```

3. Configure a rule that matches packets and translates the source address to an address in the source pool.

```
[edit security nat source]
user@host# set rule-set src-rs1 rule src-r1 match source-address 20.5.1.120/32
```

4. Configure a rule that matches packets and translates the destination address to an address in the source pool.

```
[edit security nat source]
user@host# set rule-set src-rs1 rule src-r1 match destination-address 10.5.2.120/32
```

5. Configure a source NAT pool in the rule.

```
[edit security nat source]
user@host# set rule-set src-rs1 rule src-r1 then source-nat pool src-p1
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show security nat** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
[edit]
user@host# show security nat
source {
  pool src-p1 {
    address {
      30.5.1.120/32;
    }
  }
}
rule-set src-rs1 {
  from zone trust;
  to zone untrust;
  rule src-r1 {
    match {
      source-address 20.5.1.120/32;
      destination-address 10.5.2.120/32;
    }
    then {
      source-nat {
        pool {
          src-p1;
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Configuring a Destination NAT Pool and Rule Set

CLI Quick Configuration To quickly configure this example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set security nat destination pool des-p1 address 10.5.1.120/32
set security nat destination rule-set des-rs1 from zone trust
set security nat destination rule-set des-rs1 rule des-r1 match source-address 20.5.1.120/32
set security nat destination rule-set des-rs1 rule des-r1 match destination-address 30.5.1.120/32
set security nat destination rule-set des-rs1 rule des-r1 then destination-nat pool des-p1
```

Step-by-Step Procedure The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode in the CLI User Guide.

To configure a destination NAT pool and rule set:

1. Create a destination NAT pool.

```
[edit security nat destination]
user@host# set pool des-p1 address 10.5.1.120/32
```

2. Create a destination NAT rule set.

```
[edit security nat destination]
user@host# set rule-set des-rs1 from zone trust
```

3. Configure a rule that matches packets and translates the source address to the address in the pool.

```
[edit security nat destination]
user@host# set rule-set des-rs1 rule des-r1 match source-address 20.5.1.120/32
```

4. Configure a rule that matches packets and translates the destination address to the address in the pool.

```
[edit security nat destination]
user@host# set rule-set des-rs1 rule des-r1 match destination-address 30.5.1.120/32
```

5. Configure a source NAT pool in the rule.

```
[edit security nat destination]
user@host# set rule-set des-rs1 rule des-r1 then destination-nat pool des-p1
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show security nat** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
[edit]
user@host# show security nat
destination {
  pool des-p1 {
    address {
      10.5.1.120/32;
    }
  }
  rule-set des-rs1 {
    from zone trust;
    rule des-r1 {
      match {
        source-address 20.5.1.120/32;
        destination-address 30.5.1.120/32;
      }
      then {
        destination-nat {
          pool {
            des-p1;
          }
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Configuring PPTP ALG trace options

CLI Quick Configuration

To quickly configure this example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set security alg pptp traceoptions flag all
set security alg traceoptions file trace
set security alg traceoptions file size 1g
set security alg traceoptions level verbose
```

Step-by-Step Procedure

The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode* in the CLI User Guide.

To configure PPTP ALG trace options:

1. Enable PPTP ALG trace options.

```
[edit security alg]
user@host# set pptp traceoptions flag all
```

2. Configure a filename to receive output from the tracing operation.

```
[edit security alg]
```

```
user@host#set traceoptions file trace
```

3. Specify the maximum trace file size.

```
[edit security alg]  
user@host#set traceoptions file size 1g
```

4. Specify the level of tracing output.

```
[edit security alg]  
user@host#set traceoptions level verbose
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show security alg** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
[edit]  
user@host# show security alg  
traceoptions {  
  file trace size 1g;  
  level verbose;  
}  
pptp traceoptions flag all;
```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Verification

Confirm that the configuration is working properly.

- [Verifying the PPTP ALG Control Session on page 68](#)
- [Verifying the PPTP ALG Flow Gate Information on page 68](#)
- [Verifying PPTP ALG on page 69](#)
- [Verifying the PPTP Resource Manager Group on page 69](#)
- [Verifying the PPTP Resource Information on page 70](#)

Verifying the PPTP ALG Control Session

Purpose Verify that the PPTP control session is created and all the PPTP control and data sessions are created.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security flow session** command.

```
user@host>show security flow session
  SSession ID: 57, Policy name: pptp, Timeout: 1787
Resource information : PPTP ALG, 1, 0
In: 20.20.20.32/3905 --> 10.10.10.32/1723;tcp, If: ge-0/0/1.0 Pkts: 6, Bytes: 584
Out: 10.10.10.32/1723 --> 20.20.20.32/3905;tcp, If: fe-0/0/2.0 Pkts: 4, Bytes:
352

Session ID: 58, Policy name: pptp, Timeout: 1799
In: 20.20.20.32/0 --> 10.10.10.32/256;gre, If: ge-0/0/1.0
Out: 10.10.10.32/256 --> 20.20.20.32/65001;gre, If: fe-0/0/2.0

Session ID: 59, Policy name: pptp, Timeout: 1787
In: .10.10.10.32/0 --> 20.20.20.32/260;gre, If: ge-0/0/1.0
Out: 20.20.20.32/260 --> 10.10.10.32/65000;gre, If: fe-0/0/2.0
```

- Meaning**
- **Session ID**—Number that identifies the session. Use this ID to get more information about the session such as policy name or number of packets in and out.
 - **Policy name**—Policy name that permitted the traffic.
 - **In**—Incoming flow (source and destination IP addresses with their respective source and destination port numbers, session is TCP, and the source interface for this session is ge-0/0/1.0).
 - **Out**—Reverse flow (source and destination IP addresses with their respective source and destination port numbers, session is TCP, and destination interface for this session is fe-0/0/2.0).

Verifying the PPTP ALG Flow Gate Information

Purpose Verify that the flow gate is opened for TCP data channel connection.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security flow gate** command.

```
user@host>show security flow gate

Hole: 20.0.172.24-20.0.172.24/0-0->21.0.172.38-21.0.172.38/25750-25750
Translated: 2015::172:24/65000->2005::172:108/360
Protocol: gre
Application: PPTP ALG/69
Age: 118 seconds
Flags: 0x0080
Zone: trust
Reference count: 1
Resource: 12-1-1
```

```

Hole: 2005::172:108-0-0->2015::172:24-2432-2432
Translated: 21.0.172.38/65001->20.0.172.24/2432
Protocol: gre
Application: PPTP ALG/69
Age: 120 seconds
Flags: 0x8080
Zone: untrust
Reference count: 1
Resource: 12-1-2

```

```

Valid gates: 2
Pending gates: 0
Invalidated gates: 0
Gates in other states: 0
Total gates: 2

```

Verifying PPTP ALG

Purpose Verify that the PPTP ALG is enabled.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security alg status** command.

```

user@host>show security alg status
ALG Status :
  PPTP      : Enabled
  RSH       : Disabled
  RTSP      : Enabled
  SCCP      : Enabled
  SIP       : Enabled
  TALK      : Enabled
  TFTP      : Enabled
  IKE-ESP   : Disabled

```

Meaning The output shows the PPTP ALG status as follows:

- Enabled—Shows the PPTP ALG is enabled.
- Disabled—Shows the PPTP ALG is disabled.

Verifying the PPTP Resource Manager Group

Purpose Verify the total number of resource manager groups and active groups that are used by the PPTP ALG.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security resource-manager group active** command.

```

user@host>show security resource-manager group active
Group ID 1: Application - PPTP ALG
      Total groups 19763, active groups 1

```

Verifying the PPTP Resource Information

Purpose Verify the total number of resources and active resources that are used by the PPTP ALG.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security resource-manager resource active** command.

```
user@host>show security resource-manager resource active
Resource ID 2: Group ID - 1, Application - PPTP ALG

Resource ID 1: Group ID - 1, Application - PPTP ALG
Total Resources 93286, active resources 2
```

Related Documentation

- [RSH ALG on page 81](#)
- [RTSP ALG on page 95](#)

RPC ALG

The Remote Procedure Call (RPC) ALG uses well-known ports TCP 111 and UDP 111 for port mapping, which dynamically assigns and opens ports for RPC services. The RPC Portmap ALG keeps track of port requests and dynamically opens the firewall for these requested ports. The RPC ALG can further restrict the RPC protocol by specifying the allowed program numbers. For more information, see the following topics:

- [Understanding RPC ALGs on page 70](#)
- [Understanding Sun RPC ALGs on page 71](#)
- [Enabling Sun RPC ALGs on page 72](#)
- [Customizing Sun RPC Applications \(CLI Procedure\) on page 72](#)
- [Understanding Sun RPC Services on page 73](#)
- [Understanding Microsoft RPC ALGs on page 75](#)
- [Enabling Microsoft RPC ALGs on page 76](#)
- [Configuring the Microsoft RPC ALG on page 76](#)
- [Understanding Microsoft RPC Services on page 78](#)
- [Customizing Microsoft RPC Applications \(CLI Procedure\) on page 80](#)

Understanding RPC ALGs

Junos OS supports basic Remote Procedure Call Application Layer Gateway (RPC ALG) services. RPC is a protocol that allows an application running in one address space to access the resources of applications running in another address space as if the resources were local to the first address space. The RPC ALG is responsible for RPC packet processing.

The RPC ALG in Junos OS supports the following services and features:

- Sun Microsystems RPC Open Network Computing (ONC)
- Microsoft RPC Distributed Computing Environment (DCE)
- Dynamic port negotiation
- Ability to allow and deny specific RPC services
- Static Network Address Translation (NAT) and source NAT (with no port translation)
- RPC applications in security policies

Use the RPC ALG if you need to run RPC-based applications such as NFS or Microsoft Outlook. The RPC ALG functionality is enabled by default.

Understanding Sun RPC ALGs

Sun Microsystems Remote Procedure Call (Sun RPC)—also known as Open Network Computing Remote Procedure Call (ONC RPC)—provides a way for a program running on one host to call procedures in a program running on another host. Because of the large number of RPC services and the need to broadcast, the transport address of an RPC service is dynamically negotiated based on the service's program number and version number. Several binding protocols are defined for mapping the RPC program number and version number to a transport address.

Junos OS supports the Sun RPC as a predefined service and allows and denies traffic based on a security policy you configure. The Application Layer Gateway (ALG) provides the functionality for Juniper Networks devices to handle the dynamic transport address negotiation mechanism of the Sun RPC and to ensure program number-based security policy enforcement. You can define a security policy to permit or deny all RPC requests, or to permit or deny by specific program number. The ALG also supports route mode and Network Address Translation (NAT) mode for incoming and outgoing requests.

When an application or a PC client calls a remote service, it needs to find the transport address of the service. In the case of TCP/UDP, the address is a port number. A typical procedure for this case is as follows:

1. The client sends the GETPORT message to the RPCBIND service on the remote machine. The GETPORT message contains the program number, and version and procedure number of the remote service it is attempting to call.
2. The RPCBIND service replies with a port number.
3. The client calls the remote service using the port number returned.
4. The remote service replies to the client.

A client also can use the CALLIT message to call the remote service directly, without determining the port number of the service. In this case, the procedure is as follows:

1. The client sends a CALLIT message to the RPCBIND service on the remote machine. The CALLIT message contains the program number and the version and procedure number of the remote service it attempting to call.

2. RPCBIND calls the service for the client.
3. RPCBIND replies to the client if the call has been successful. The reply contains the call result and the service's port number.

The Sun RPC ALG dynamically allocates new mapping entries instead of using a default size (512 entries). It also offers a flexible time-based RPC mapping entry that removes the mapping entry (auto-clean) without affecting the associated active RPC sessions, including both control session and data session.

Starting in Junos OS 15.1X49-D10 and Junos OS Release 17.3R1, you can define the Sun RPC mapping entry ageout value. Use the **set security alg sunrpc map-entry-timeout value** command. The ageout value ranges from 1 hour to 72 hours, and the default value is 32 hours. If the Sun RPC ALG service does not trigger the control negotiation even after 72 hours, the maximum RPC ALG mapping entry value times out and the new data connection to the service fails.

Enabling Sun RPC ALGs

The Sun RPC ALG is enabled by default and requires no configuration.

Enabling Sun RPC ALGs (CLI Procedure)

To disable the Sun RPC ALG, enter the following command:

```
user@host# set security alg sunrpc disable
```

To re-enable the Sun RPC ALG, enter the following command:

```
user@host# delete security alg sunrpc
```

Customizing Sun RPC Applications (CLI Procedure)

All Sun RPC applications can be customized by using a predefined application set.

For example, an application can be customized to open the control session only and not allow any data sessions:

```
application-set junos-sun-rpc {  
  application junos-sun-rpc-tcp;  
  application junos-sun-rpc-udp;  
}
```

In the following example, the predefined application set allows data sessions only. It will not work without the control session:

```
application-set junos-sun-rpc-portmap {  
  application junos-sun-rpc-portmap-tcp;  
  application junos-sun-rpc-portmap-udp;  
}
```

To customize all Sun RPC applications with predefined application sets, use both application sets in the policy:

```
application-set [junos-sun-rpc junos-sun-rpc-portmap]
```



NOTE: MS RPC applications are customized in the same way as Sun RPC applications.

Understanding Sun RPC Services

Sun RPC, also known as Open Network computing remote procedure call (ONC RPC), provides a way for a program running on one host to call procedures in a program running on another host. Sun RPC services are defined by a program identifier. The program identifier is independent of any transport address, and most of the Sun RPC sessions are initiated through TCP or UDP port 111. Each host links the required RPC service to a dynamic TCP or UDP port that is negotiated over the port 111 control channel, allowing the client to connect to either TCP or UDP port 111.

Predefined Sun Microsystems remote procedure call (Sun RPC) services include:

- `junos-sun-rpc-tcp`
- `junos-sun-rpc-udp`

The Sun RPC ALG can be applied by using the following methods:

- ALG default application—Use one of the following predefined applications for control and data connections in your policy:
 - `junos-sun-rpc-any-tcp`
 - `junos-sun-rpc-any-udp`
 - `junos-sun-rpc-mountd-tcp`
 - `junos-sun-rpc-mountd-udp`
 - `junos-sun-rpc-nfs-tcp`
 - `junos-sun-rpc-nfs-udp`
 - `junos-sun-rpc-nlockmgr-tcp`
 - `junos-sun-rpc-nlockmgr-udp`
 - `junos-sun-rpc-portmap-tcp`
 - `junos-sun-rpc-portmap-udp`
 - `junos-sun-rpc-rquotad-tcp`
 - `junos-sun-rpc-rquotad-udp`
 - `junos-sun-rpc-ruserd-tcp`
 - `junos-sun-rpc-ruserd-udp`
 - `junos-sun-rpc-sadmind-tcp`
 - `junos-sun-rpc-sadmind-udp`
 - `junos-sun-rpc-sprayd-tcp`

- `junos-sun-rpc-sprayd-udp`
- `junos-sun-rpc-status-tcp`
- `junos-sun-rpc-status-udp`
- `junos-sun-rpc-walld-tcp`
- `junos-sun-rpc-walld-udp`
- `junos-sun-rpc-ypbind-tcp`
- `junos-sun-rpc-ypbind-udp`
- `junos-sun-rpc-ypserv-tcp`
- `junos-sun-rpc-ypserv-udp`
- Default control application—Use the predefined control through `junos-sun-rpc`:
 - Create an application for data (`USER_DEFINED_DATA`). You can make a set of your own data (for example, `my_rpc_application_set`) and use it in the policy.
 - ALG default application set—Use the predefined application set for control and customized data application in the policy:
 - `junos-sun-rpc` (for control sessions)
 - `junos-sun-rpc-any`
 - `junos-sun-rpc-mountd`
 - `junos-sun-rpc-nfs`
 - `junos-sun-rpc-nfs-access`
 - `junos-sun-rpc-nlockmgr`
 - `junos-sun-rpc-portmap` (for data sessions)
 - `junos-sun-rpc-rquotad`
 - `junos-sun-rpc-ruserd`
 - `junos-sun-rpc-sadmind`
 - `junos-sun-rpc-sprayd`
 - `junos-sun-rpc-status`
 - `junos-sun-rpc-walld`
 - `junos-sun-rpc-ypbind`
 - `junos-sun-rpc-ypserv`
- Custom control and custom data application—Use a customized application:
 - Create an application for control (`USER_DEFINED_CONTROL`) and data (`USER_DEFINED_DATA`).

- In the policy, use the user-defined application set for a control and customized data application:
- **USER_DEFINED_CONTROL**
- **USER_DEFINED_DATA**

Table 4 on page 75 lists predefined Sun RPC services, a program identifier associated with each service, and a description of each service.

Table 4: Predefined Sun RPC Services

Service	Program ID	Description
PORTMAP	100000	Sun RPC Portmapper protocol is a TCP or UDP port-based service that includes TCP or UDP port 111.
NFS	100003	Sun RPC Network File System.
MOUNT	100005	Sun RPC mount process.
YPBIND	100007	Sun RPC Yellow Page Bind service.
STATUS	100024	Sun RPC status.

Understanding Microsoft RPC ALGs

Microsoft Remote Procedure Call (MS-RPC) is the Microsoft implementation of the Distributed Computing Environment (DCE) RPC. Like the Sun RPC, MS-RPC provides a way for a program running on one host to call procedures in a program running on another host. Because of the large number of RPC services and the need to broadcast, the transport address of an RPC service is dynamically negotiated based on the service program's universal unique identifier (UUID). The specific UUID is mapped to a transport address.

Junos OS devices running Junos OS support MS-RPC as a predefined service and allow and deny traffic based on a policy you configure. The Application Layer Gateway (ALG) provides the functionality for Juniper Networks devices to handle the dynamic transport address negotiation mechanism of the MS-RPC, and to ensure UUID-based security policy enforcement. You can define a security policy to permit or deny all RPC requests, or to permit or deny by specific UUID number. The ALG also supports route mode and Network Address Translation (NAT) mode for incoming and outgoing requests.

When both the MS-RPC client and MS-RPC server are 64 bit capable (such as MS Exchange 2008), they negotiate to use NDR64 transfer syntax during the network communication. when you use NDR64, the interface parameters should be encoded according to NDR64 syntax, because the packet format for NDR64 is different from the packet format for NDR20 (32 bit version).

In MS-RPC, there is a remote activation interface of the DCOM Remote Protocol called ISystemActivator (also known as IRemoteSCMAActivator). It is used by the Windows

Management Instrumentation Command-line (WMIC), Internet Information Services (IIS), and many other applications that are used extensively.

The MS-RPC ALG dynamically allocates new mapping entries instead of using a default size (512 entries). It also offers a flexible time-based RPC mapping entry that removes the mapping entry (auto-clean) without affecting the associated active RPC sessions, including both control session and data session.

Starting in Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 and Junos OS Release 17.3R1, you can define the MS-RPC mapping entry ageout value. Use the **set security alg msrpc map-entry-timeout value** command. The ageout value ranges from 1 hour to 72 hours, and the default value is 32 hours. If the MS-RPC ALG service does not trigger the control negotiation even after 72 hours, the maximum MS-RPC ALG mapping entry value times out and the new data connection to the service fails.

Enabling Microsoft RPC ALGs

The MS-RPC ALG is enabled by default and requires no configuration.

Enabling Microsoft RPC ALGs (CLI Procedure)

To disable the Microsoft RPC ALG, enter the following command:

```
user@host# set security alg msrpc disable
```

To reenabling the Microsoft RPC ALG, enter the following command:

```
user@host# delete security alg msrpc
```

Configuring the Microsoft RPC ALG

You can configure the Microsoft RPC ALG using the following three methods:

- [Configuring the MS-RPC ALG with a Predefined Microsoft Application on page 76](#)
- [Configuring the MS-RPC ALG with a Wildcard UUID on page 77](#)
- [Configuring the MS-RPC ALG with a Specific UUID on page 77](#)

Configuring the MS-RPC ALG with a Predefined Microsoft Application

There are several predefined MS applications. To view the predefined Microsoft applications from the CLI, enter the **show configuration groups junos-defaults** command.

```
user@host> show security policies
from-zone trust to-zone untrust {
  policy p1 {
    match {
      source-address any;
      destination-address any;
      application junos-ms-rpc-msexchange;
    }
    then {
      permit;
    }
  }
}
```

After you commit the configuration, from the CLI, enter the **show security alg msrpc object-id-map** command to view the output.

```
user@host> show security alg msrpc object-id-map
UUID                                OID
1544f5e0-613c-11d1-93df-00c04fd7bd09 0x80000001
a4f1db00-ca47-1067-b31f-00dd010662da 0x80000002
f5cc5a18-4264-101a-8c59-08002b2f8426 0x80000003
```

The output shows that the UUID has been applied for the policy.

Configuring the MS-RPC ALG with a Wildcard UUID

To permit the configuration for any MS RPC application, add the **application junos-ms-rpc-any** statement to the Permit configuration.

```
user@host> show security policies
  from-zone trust to-zone untrust {
  policy p1 {
    match {
      source-address any;
      destination-address any;
      application junos-ms-rpc-any;
    }
    then {
      permit;
    }
  }
}
```

After you commit the configuration, from the CLI, enter the **show security alg msrpc object-id-map** command to view the output.

```
user@host> show security alg msrpc object-id-map
UUID                                OID
ffffffff-ffff-ffff-ffff-ffffffffffff 0x80000004
```

Configuring the MS-RPC ALG with a Specific UUID

For applications that have not been predefined, you need to manually configure a specific UUID. For example, to permit a NETLOGON application that has not been predefined, you add the **application msrpc-netlogon** statement to the Permit configuration.

In Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D90 and earlier, on all SRX Series devices, the custom application universal unique identifier (UUID) of Microsoft remote procedure call (MS-RPC) with leading zeros and the nil UUID (00000000-0000-0000-0000-000000000000) might match all TCP traffic and referenced policies allowing all TCP traffic instead of entering MS-RPC ALG check.

Starting with Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D100 and Junos OS Release 17.3R1, the custom application UUID with leading zeros does not match all TCP traffic and referenced policies, which will enter MS-RPC ALG check. This new application does not allow the nil UUID.

```
user@host> show applications
  application msrpc-netlogon {
```

```

term t1 protocol tcp uuid 12345678-1234-abcd-ef00-01234567cffb;
term t2 protocol udp uuid 12345678-1234-abcd-ef00-01234567cffb;
term t3 protocol tcp uuid 12345778-1234-abcd-ef00-0123456789ab;
}
user@host> show security policies
  from-zone trust to-zone untrust {
  match {
    source-address any;
    destination-address any;
    application msrpc-netlogon;
  }
  then {
    permit;
  }
}
}

```

After you commit the configuration, from the CLI, enter the **show security alg msrpc object-id-map** command to verify the Microsoft universal unique identifier to Object ID (UUID-to-OID) mapping table. The Microsoft RPC ALG monitors packets on TCP port 135.

```

user@host> show security alg msrpc object-id-map
UUID                                OID
12345778-1234-abcd-ef00-0123456789ab 0x80000006
12345678-1234-abcd-ef00-01234567cffb 0x80000005
be617c0-31a5-11cf-a7d8-00805f48a135 0x80000020
e3514235-4b06-11d1-ab04-00c04fc2dcd2 0x80000002
67df7c70-0f04-11ce-b13f-00aa003bac6c 0x80000014

```



NOTE: The **show security alg msrpc object-id-map** CLI command has a chassis cluster node option to permit the output to be restricted to a particular node or to query the entire cluster. The **show security alg msrpc object-id-map node** CLI command options are **<node-id | all | local | primary>**.

Understanding Microsoft RPC Services

MS-RPC is the Microsoft implementation of the Distributed Computing Environment (DCE) RPC. Like the Sun RPC, the MS-RPC provides a way for a program running on one host to call procedures in a program running on another host. The MS-RPC is dynamically negotiated based on the service program's universal unique identifier (UUID). The specific UUID is mapped to a transport address.

In Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D90 and earlier, on all SRX Series devices, the custom application universal unique identifier (UUID) of Microsoft remote procedure call (MS-RPC) with leading zeros and the nil UUID (00000000-0000-0000-0000-000000000000) might match all TCP traffic and referenced policies allowing all TCP traffic instead of entering MS-RPC ALG check.

Starting with Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D100 and Junos OS Release 17.3R1, the custom application UUID with leading zeros does not match all TCP traffic and referenced policies, which will enter MS-RPC ALG check. This new application does not allow the nil UUID.

Predefined Microsoft remote procedure call (MS-RPC) services include:

- `junos-ms-rpc-epm`
- `junos-ms-rpc-tcp`
- `junos-ms-rpc-udp`

MS-RPC application defaults include:

- `junos-ms-rpc-iis-com-1`
- `junos-ms-rpc-iis-com-adminbase`
- `junos-ms-rpc-msexchange-directory-nsp`
- `junos-ms-rpc-msexchange-directory-rfr`
- `junos-ms-rpc-msexchange-info-store`
- `junos-ms-rpc-uuid-any-tcp`
- `junos-ms-rpc-uuid-any-udp`
- `junos-ms-rpc-wmic-admin`
- `junos-ms-rpc-wmic-admin2`
- `junos-ms-rpc-wmic-mgmt`
- `junos-ms-rpc-wmic-webm-callresult`
- `junos-ms-rpc-wmic-webm-classobject`
- `junos-ms-rpc-wmic-webm-level1login`
- `junos-ms-rpc-wmic-webm-login-clientid`
- `junos-ms-rpc-wmic-webm-login-helper`
- `junos-ms-rpc-wmic-webm-objectsink`
- `junos-ms-rpc-wmic-webm-refreshing-services`
- `junos-ms-rpc-wmic-webm-remote-refresher`
- `junos-ms-rpc-wmic-webm-services`
- `junos-ms-rpc-wmic-webm-shutdown`

MS-RPC application-set defaults include:

- `junos-ms-rpc`
- `junos-ms-rpc-any`
- `junos-ms-rpc-iis-com`

- `junos-ms-rpc-msexchange`
- `junos-ms-rpc-wmic`

Table 5 on page 80 lists predefined MS-RPC services, UUID values associated with each service, and a description of each service.

Table 5: Predefined MS-RPC services

Service	UUID	Description
EPM	e1af8308-5d1f-11c9-91a4-08002b14a0fa	MS-RPC Endpoint Mapper (EPM) protocol is a TCP/UDP port-based service that includes TCP/UDP port 135.
EXCHANGE-DATABASE	1a190310-bb9c-11cd-90f8-00aa00466520	Microsoft Exchange Database service.
EXCHANGE-DIRECTORY	f5cc5a18-4264-101a-8c59-08002b2f8426 f5cc5a7c-4264-101a-8c59-08002b2f8426 f5cc59b4-4264-101a-8c59-08002b2f8426	Microsoft Exchange Directory service.
WIN-DNS	50abc2a4-574d-40b3-9d66-ee4fd5fba076	Microsoft Windows DNS server.
WINS	5f52c28-7f9f-101a-b52b-08002b2efabe 811109bf-a4e1-11d1-ab54-00a0c91e9b45	Microsoft WINS service.
WMIC-Webm-Level1Login	f309ad18-d86a-11d0-a075-00c04fb68820	This service allows users to connect to the management services interface in a particular namespace.

Customizing Microsoft RPC Applications (CLI Procedure)

MS-RPC applications are customized in the same way as SUN RPC applications.

MS-RPC services in security policies are:

- `0e4a0156-dd5d-11d2-8c2f-00c04fb6bcde`
- `1453c42c-0fa6-11d2-a910-00c04f990f3b`
- `10f24e8e-0fa6-11d2-a910-00c04f990f3b`
- `1544f5e0-613c-11d1-93df-00c04fd7bd09`

The corresponding TCP/UDP ports are dynamic. To permit them, you use the following statement for each number:

```
set applications application-name term term-name uuid hex-number
```

The ALG maps the program numbers into dynamically negotiated TCP/UDP ports based on these four UUIDs and permits or denies the service based on a policy you configure.

Release History Table

Release	Description
15.1X49-D90	In Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D90 and earlier, on all SRX Series devices, the custom application universal unique identifier (UUID) of Microsoft remote procedure call (MS-RPC) with leading zeros and the nil UUID (00000000-0000-0000-0000-000000000000) might match all TCP traffic and referenced policies allowing all TCP traffic instead of entering MS-RPC ALG check.
15.1X49-D90	In Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D90 and earlier, on all SRX Series devices, the custom application universal unique identifier (UUID) of Microsoft remote procedure call (MS-RPC) with leading zeros and the nil UUID (00000000-0000-0000-0000-000000000000) might match all TCP traffic and referenced policies allowing all TCP traffic instead of entering MS-RPC ALG check.
15.1X49-D100	Starting with Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D100 and Junos OS Release 17.3R1, the custom application UUID with leading zeros does not match all TCP traffic and referenced policies, which will enter MS-RPC ALG check. This new application does not allow the nil UUID.
15.1X49-D100	Starting with Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D100 and Junos OS Release 17.3R1, the custom application UUID with leading zeros does not match all TCP traffic and referenced policies, which will enter MS-RPC ALG check. This new application does not allow the nil UUID.
15.1X49-D10	Starting in Junos OS 15.1X49-D10 and Junos OS Release 17.3R1, you can define the Sun RPC mapping entry ageout value.
15.1X49-D10	Starting in Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 and Junos OS Release 17.3R1, you can define the MS-RPC mapping entry ageout value.

- Related Documentation**
- [RTSP ALG on page 95](#)
 - [SQLNET ALG on page 108](#)
 - [TALK ALG on page 121](#)

RSH ALG

The Remote Shell (RSH) provides a conduit to execute commands on a remote host. Unlike Telnet or SSH, which create a terminal shell session on the remote system, RSH passes the command and authentication data. The protocol uses the 514 TCP port to pass the authentication data and the command. The server returns the stdout of the command to the client's source port. RSH requires an ALG to pass a second client port

to the server for transmission of the stderr stream. For more information, see the following topics:

- [Understanding the RSH ALG on page 82](#)
- [Example: Configuring the RSH ALG on page 82](#)

Understanding the RSH ALG

The Remote Shell (RSH) Application Layer Gateway (ALG) processes RSH packets that initiate requests and open two gates to allow return packets from the reverse direction to the client. One gate is used for an identification (ident) session to apply authorization and the other gate is used for a standard error (stderr) session to transfer an error message.



NOTE: The RSH ALG does not work if Port Address Translation (PAT) is configured. The RSH requires the port range to be between 512 to 1024. The source NAT module cannot match this port range.

See Also • [Understanding Data ALG Types on page 29](#)

Example: Configuring the RSH ALG

This example shows how to configure the RSH ALG in route or NAT mode. The configuration allows RSH traffic to pass through a device, and it transfers remote commands and results between a client and a server located on opposite sides of a Juniper Networks device.

- [Requirements on page 82](#)
- [Overview on page 83](#)
- [Configuration on page 84](#)
- [Verification on page 92](#)

Requirements

This example uses the following hardware and software components:

- An SRX Series device
- Two PCs (server and client)

Before you begin:

- Understand the concepts behind ALGs. See [“ALG Overview” on page 21](#)
- Understand the basics of RSH ALG. See the [“Understanding the RSH ALG” on page 82](#)

Overview

In this example, first you configure network interfaces on the device. Create security zones and assign interfaces to the zones, and configure a policy to allow RSH traffic to go through an SRX Series device.

Then you create a static NAT rule set `rs1` with a rule `r1` to match with the destination address `40.0.172.10/32`, and you create a static NAT prefix with address `40.0.172.45/32`.

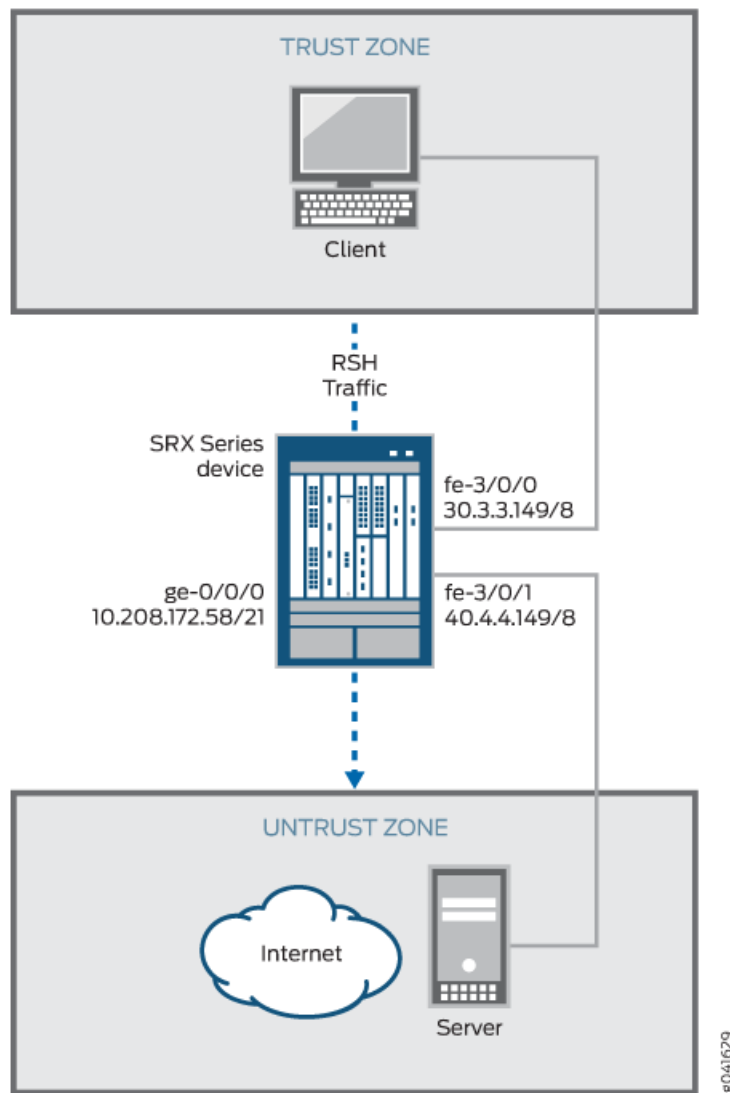
Next you create a source NAT pool `src-p1` with a source rule set `src-rs1` to translate packets from interface `fe-3/0/0.0` to interface `fe-3/0/1.0`. For matching packets, the source address is translated to an IP address in the `src-p1` pool.

Then you create a destination NAT pool `des-p1` with a destination rule set `des-rs1` to translate packets from zone `trust` to destination address `40.0.172.10/32`. For matching packets, the destination address is translated to an IP address in the `des-p1` pool. Finally, you enable RSH ALG trace options.

Topology

Figure 4 on page 84 shows the RSH ALG topology.

Figure 4: RSH ALG Topology



Configuration

To configure the RSH ALG, perform these tasks:

- [Configuring a Route Mode on page 85](#)
- [Configuring a Static NAT Rule Set on page 87](#)
- [Configuring a Source NAT Pool and Rule Set without PAT on page 88](#)
- [Configuring a Destination NAT Pool and Rule Set on page 90](#)
- [Enabling RSH ALG Trace Options on page 91](#)

Configuring a Route Mode

CLI Quick Configuration To quickly configure this example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set interfaces ge-0/0/0 unit 0 family inet address 10.208.172.58/21
set interfaces fe-3/0/0 unit 0 family inet address 30.3.3.149/8
set interfaces fe-3/0/1 unit 0 family inet address 40.4.4.149/8
set security zones security-zone trust host-inbound-traffic system-services all
set security zones security-zone trust host-inbound-traffic protocols all
set security zones security-zone trust interfaces fe-3/0/0.0
set security zones security-zone untrust host-inbound-traffic system-services all
set security zones security-zone untrust host-inbound-traffic protocols all
set security zones security-zone untrust interfaces fe-3/0/1.0
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy rsh match source-address any
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy rsh match destination-address any
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy rsh match application junos-rsh
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy rsh then permit
```

Step-by-Step Procedure The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode in the CLI User Guide.

To configure route mode:

1. Configure interfaces.

```
[edit interfaces]
user@host#set ge-0/0/0 unit 0 family inet address 10.208.172.58/21
user@host#set fe-3/0/0 unit 0 family inet address 30.3.3.149/8
user@host#set fe-3/0/1 unit 0 family inet address 40.4.4.149/8
```

2. Configure zones and assign interfaces to the zones.

```
[edit security zones security-zone]
user@host#set trust host-inbound-traffic system-services all
user@host#set trust host-inbound-traffic protocols all
user@host#set trust interfaces fe-3/0/0.0
user@host#set untrust host-inbound-traffic system-services all
user@host#set untrust host-inbound-traffic protocols all
user@host#set untrust interfaces fe-3/0/0.1
```

3. Configure an RSH policy that allows RSH traffic from the trust zone to the untrust zone.

```
[edit security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust]
user@host#set policy rsh match source-address any
user@host#set policy rsh match destination-address any
user@host#set policy rsh match application junos-rsh
user@host#set policy rsh then permit
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show interfaces**, **show security zones**, and **show security policies** commands. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example for correction.

For brevity, this **show** output includes only the configuration that is relevant to this example. Any other configuration on the system has been replaced with ellipses (...).

```
[edit]
user@host# show interfaces
ge-0/0/0 {
  unit 0 {
    family inet {
      address 10.208.172.58/21;
    }
  }
}
fe-3/0/0 {
  unit 0 {
    family inet {
      address 30.3.3.149/8;
    }
  }
}
fe-3/0/1 {
  unit 0 {
    family inet {
      address 40.4.4.149/8;
    }
  }
}

[edit]
user@host# show security zones
..
security-zone trust {
  host-inbound-traffic {
    system-services {
      all;
    }
    protocols {
      all;
    }
  }
  interfaces {
    fe-3/0/0.0;
  }
}
security-zone untrust {
  host-inbound-traffic {
    system-services {
      all;
    }
    protocols {
      all;
    }
  }
}
```

```

    }
    interfaces {
        fe-3/0/1.0;
    }
}
...

[edit]
user@host# show security policies
from-zone trust to-zone untrust {
    policy rsh {
        match {
            source-address any;
            destination-address any;
            application junos-rsh;
        }
        then {
            permit;
        }
    }
}
}

```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Configuring a Static NAT Rule Set

CLI Quick Configuration To quickly configure this example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```

set security nat static rule-set rs1 from zone trust
set security nat static rule-set rs1 rule r1 match destination-address 40.0.172.10/32
set security nat static rule-set rs1 rule r1 then static-nat prefix 40.0.172.45/32

```

Step-by-Step Procedure The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode* in the CLI User Guide.

To configure a static NAT rule set:

1. Create a static NAT rule set.


```

[edit security nat static rule-set rs1]
user@host# set from zone trust

```
2. Define the rule to match with the destination address.


```

[edit security nat static rule-set rs1]
user@host# set rule r1 match destination-address 40.0.172.10/32

```
3. Define the static NAT prefix for the device.


```

[edit security nat static rule-set rs1]
user@host# set rule r1 then static-nat prefix 40.0.172.45/32

```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show security nat** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
[edit]
user@host# show security nat
static {
  rule-set rs1 {
    from zone trust;
    rule r1 {
      match {
        destination-address 40.0.172.10/32;
      }
      then {
        static-nat {
          prefix {
            40.0.172.45/32;
          }
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Configuring a Source NAT Pool and Rule Set without PAT

CLI Quick Configuration



NOTE: The RSH ALG does not support PAT configuration. The RSH ALG requires the stderr port range to be between 512 to 1024. The source NAT module cannot match this port range.

To quickly configure this example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set security nat source pool src-p1 address 40.0.172.100/32 to 40.0.172.101/32
set security nat source pool src-p1 port no-translation
set security nat source rule-set src-rs1 from interface fe-3/0/0.0
set security nat source rule-set src-rs1 to interface fe-3/0/1.0
set security nat source rule-set src-rs1 rule r1 match source-address 30.0.0.0/8
set security nat source rule-set src-rs1 rule r1 match destination-address 40.0.0.0/8
set security nat source rule-set src-rs1 rule r1 then source-nat pool src-p1
```

Step-by-Step Procedure The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode in the CLI User Guide.

To configure a source NAT pool and rule set:

1. Create a source NAT pool.

```
[edit security nat source]
user@host# set pool src-p1 address 40.0.172.100/32 to 40.0.172.101/32
```

2. Create a source NAT pool with no port translation.

```
[edit security nat source ]
set pool src-p1 port no-translation
```

3. Create a source NAT rule set.

```
[edit security nat source]
user@host# set rule-set src-rs1 from interface fe-3/0/0.0
user@host# set rule-set src-rs1 to interface fe-3/0/1.0
```

4. Configure a rule that matches packets and translates the source address to an address in the source pool.

```
[edit security nat source]
user@host# set rule-set src-rs1 rule r1 match source-address 30.0.0.0/8
```

5. Configure a rule that matches packets and translates the destination address to an address in the source pool.

```
[edit security nat source]
user@host# set rule-set src-rs1 rule r1 match destination-address 40.0.0.0/8
```

6. Configure a source NAT pool in the rule.

```
[edit security nat source]
user@host# set rule-set src-rs1 rule r1 then source-nat pool src-p1
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show security nat** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
[edit]
user@host# show security nat
source {
  pool src-p1 {
    address {
      40.0.172.100/32 to 40.0.172.101/32;
    }
    port no-translation;
  }
  rule-set src-rs1 {
```

```
from interface fe-3/0/0.0;
to interface fe-3/0/1.0;
rule r1 {
  match {
    source-address 30.0.0.0/8;
    destination-address 40.0.0.0/8;
  }
  then {
    source-nat {
      pool {
        src-p1;
      }
    }
  }
}
```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Configuring a Destination NAT Pool and Rule Set

CLI Quick Configuration To quickly configure this example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set security nat destination pool des-p1 address 40.0.172.45/32
set security nat destination rule-set des-rs1 from zone trust
set security nat destination rule-set des-rs1 rule des-r1 match source-address 30.0.172.12/32
set security nat destination rule-set des-rs1 rule des-r1 match destination-address 40.0.172.10/32
set security nat destination rule-set des-rs1 rule des-r1 then destination-nat pool des-p1
```

Step-by-Step Procedure The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode* in the CLI User Guide.

To configure a destination NAT pool and rule set:

1. Create a destination NAT pool.

```
[edit security nat destination]
user@host# set pool des-p1 address 40.0.172.45/32
```
2. Create a destination NAT rule set.

```
[edit security nat destination]
user@host# set rule-set des-rs1 from zone trust
```
3. Configure a rule that matches packets and translates the source address to the address in the pool.

```
[edit security nat destination]
```

```
user@host# set rule-set des-rs1 rule des-r1 match source-address 30.0.172.12/32
```

4. Configure a rule that matches packets and translates the destination address to the address in the pool.

```
[edit security nat destination]
```

```
user@host# set rule-set des-rs1 rule des-r1 match destination-address 40.0.172.10/32
```

5. Configure a source NAT pool in the rule.

```
[edit security nat destination]
```

```
user@host# set rule-set des-rs1 rule des-r1 then destination-nat pool des-p1
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show security nat** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
[edit]
user@host# show security nat
destination {
  pool des-p1 {
    address {
      40.0.172.45/32;
    }
  }
}
rule-set des-rs1 {
  from zone trust;
  rule des-r1 {
    match {
      source-address 30.0.172.12/32;
      destination-address 40.0.172.10/32;
    }
    then {
      destination-nat {
        pool {
          des--p1;
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Enabling RSH ALG Trace Options

CLI Quick Configuration To quickly configure this example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set security alg rsh traceoptions flag all
```

```
set security alg traceoptions file trace
set security alg traceoptions file size 1g
set security alg traceoptions level verbose
```

**Step-by-Step
Procedure**

The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode* in the CLI User Guide.

To enable RSH ALG trace options:

1. Enable RSH ALG trace options.

```
[edit security alg]
user@host#set sql traceoptions flag all
```

2. Configure a filename to receive output from the tracing operation.

```
[edit security alg]
user@host#set traceoptions file trace
```

3. Specify the maximum trace file size.

```
[edit security alg]
user@host#set traceoptions file size 1g
```

4. Specify the level of tracing output.

```
[edit security alg]
user@host#set traceoptions level verbose
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show security alg** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
[edit]
user@host# show security alg
traceoptions {
  file trace size 1g;
  level verbose;
}
rsh traceoptions flag all;
```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Verification

Confirm that the configuration is working properly.

- [Verifying the RSH ALG Control Session on page 93](#)
- [Verifying the RSH ALG on page 93](#)

- [Verifying the RSH ALG Resource Manager Group on page 94](#)
- [Verifying the RSH ALG Resource Information on page 94](#)

Verifying the RSH ALG Control Session

Purpose Verify that the RSH command is executed and all the RSH control and data sessions are created.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security flow session** command.

```
user@host>show security flow session
Session ID: 2924, Policy name: rsh/6, Timeout: 2, Valid
Resource information : RSH ALG, 2, 0
  In: 30.0.172.12/1023 --> 40.0.172.45/514;tcp, If: fe-3/0/0.0, Pkts: 7, Bytes:
320
  Out: 40.0.172.45/514 --> 30.0.172.12/1023;tcp, If: fe-3/0/1.0, Pkts: 7, Bytes:
314

Session ID: 2925, Policy name: rsh/6, Timeout: 2, Valid
Resource information : RSH ALG, 2, 24
  In: 40.0.172.45/44864 --> 30.0.172.12/113;tcp, If: fe-3/0/1.0, Pkts: 5, Bytes:
278
  Out: 30.0.172.12/113 --> 40.0.172.45/44864;tcp, If: fe-3/0/0.0, Pkts: 5, Bytes:
345

Session ID: 2926, Policy name: rsh/6, Timeout: 2, Valid
Resource information : RSH ALG, 2, 23
  In: 40.0.172.45/1023 --> 30.0.172.12/1022;tcp, If: fe-3/0/1.0, Pkts: 4, Bytes:
216
  Out: 30.0.172.12/1022 --> 40.0.172.45/1023;tcp, If: fe-3/0/0.0, Pkts: 3, Bytes:
164
Total sessions: 3
```

- Meaning**
- **Session ID**—Number that identifies the session. Use this ID to get more information about the session such as policy name, number of packets in and out.
 - **Policy name**—Policy name that permitted the traffic.
 - **In**—Incoming flow (source and destination IP addresses with their respective source and destination port numbers, session is TCP, and source interface for this session is fe-3/0/0.0).
 - **Out**—Reverse flow (source and destination IP addresses with their respective source and destination port numbers, session is TCP, and destination interface for this session is fe-3/0/1.0).

Verifying the RSH ALG

Purpose Verify that the RSH ALG is enabled.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security alg status** command.

```
user@host>show security alg status
```

ALG Status :

PPTP	: Enabled
RSH	: Disabled
RTSP	: Enabled
SCCP	: Enabled
SIP	: Enabled
TALK	: Enabled
TFTP	: Enabled
IKE-ESP	: Disabled



NOTE: The RSH ALG is disabled by default. To enable the RSH ALG, enter the `set security alg rsh` command in the configuration mode.

Meaning The output shows the RSH ALG status as follows:

- Enabled—Shows the RSH ALG is enabled.
- Disabled—Shows the RSH ALG is disabled.

Verifying the RSH ALG Resource Manager Group

Purpose Verify the total number of resource manager groups and active groups that are used by the RSH ALG.

Action From operational mode, enter the `show security resource-manager group active` command.

```
user@host>show security resource-manager group active
Group ID 1: Application - RSH ALG
Total groups 677, active groups 1
```

Verifying the RSH ALG Resource Information

Purpose Verify the total number of resources and active resources that are used by the RSH ALG.

Action From operational mode, enter the `show security resource-manager resource active` command.

```
user@host>show security resource-manager resource active
Resource ID 2: Group ID - 1, Application - RSH ALG

Resource ID 1: Group ID - 1, Application - RSH ALG
Total Resources 4044, active resources 2
```

See Also

- [SQLNET ALG on page 108](#)
- [TALK ALG on page 121](#)

RTSP ALG

The Real-Time Streaming Protocol (RTSP) controls the delivery of data with real-time properties such as audio and video. Media can be transmitted on the same RTSP control stream. This is an HTTP-like text-based protocol, but client and server maintain session information. A session is established using the SETUP message and terminated using the TEARDOWN message. The transport (the media protocol, address, and port numbers) is negotiated in the setup and the setup-response.

Support for stateful firewall and NAT services requires that you configure the RTSP ALG for TCP port 554. The ALG monitors the control connection, opens flows dynamically for media (RTP/RTSP) streams, and performs NAT address and port rewrites. For more information, see the following topics:

- [Understanding the RTSP ALG on page 95](#)
- [Understanding RTSP ALG Messages on page 97](#)
- [Understanding RTSP ALG Conversation and NAT on page 98](#)
- [Example: Configuring the RTSP ALG on page 100](#)

Understanding the RTSP ALG

- [Overview on page 95](#)
- [RTSP Modes on page 96](#)

Overview

RTSP (Real-Time Streaming Protocol) is an Application Layer protocol for controlling the delivery of data with real-time properties. It is similar in syntax and operation to HTTP/1.1. Unlike SIP and H.323, the purpose of RTSP is to access existing media files over the network and to control the replay of the media. The typical communication is between a client (running RealPlayer for example) and a streaming media server. Commands include the ability to pause and play media files from the remote server.

RTSP is a control channel protocol between the media client and media server. The data channel uses a different protocol, usually Real-Time Transport Protocol (RTP) or RTP Control Protocol (RTCP).

In RTSP standard mode, the client sets up three network channels with the RTSP server when media data is delivered using RTP over UDP.

RTSP runs over TCP. RTP and RTCP run over UDP. The ports for RTP and RTCP packets are dynamically negotiated by the client and server using RTSP. Because RTP and RTCP ports are dynamic, these ports cannot be allowed by a static policy. The main purpose of introducing an RTSP ALG to a firewall is to create dynamic policy (pinhole) according to the result of client/server negotiation so that RTP and RTCP traffic can pass through.

When the client and server reside in different realms, they might not be able to determine how to route to the address of the RTP or RTCP offer given by the peer. In this case, ALG needs to be involved to do translation for the RTP or RTCP offer address and modify it in the payload.

After the connection is established, the RTSP ALG monitors the messages exchanged between the client and server, tracks the status change of the dialog, and returns all the resources it acquired to support an RTSP dialog back to the system after the dialog has completed or failed.

RTSP Modes

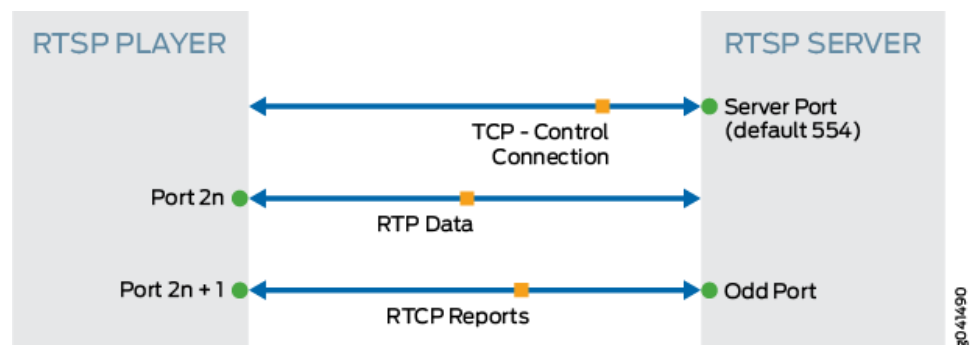
Standard Mode

In RTSP standard mode, the client sets up three network channels with the RTSP server when media data is delivered using RTP over UDP.

A full-duplex TCP connection is used for control and negotiation. A full-duplex UDP channel is used for media data delivery using the RTP packet format. In most cases, RTP is initiated from the server. A full-duplex UDP channel called RTCP is used to provide synchronization information to the client and packet loss information to the server.

Figure 5 on page 96 shows the RTSP ALG standard mode.

Figure 5: RTSP ALG Standard Mode

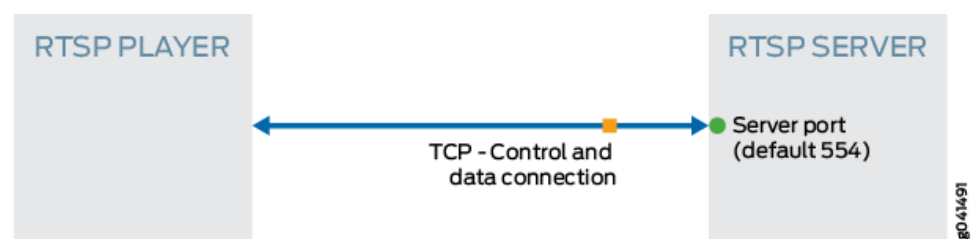


Interleave Mode

In RTSP interleave mode, media data can be made into packets using RTP or RDT over TCP. In this scenario, a single full-duplex TCP connection is used for both control and for media data delivery from the RTSP server to the client. The data stream is interleaved with the RTSP control stream.

Figure 6 on page 96 shows the RTSP ALG interleave mode.

Figure 6: RTSP ALG Interleave Mode



Understanding RTSP ALG Messages

- [RTSP Message Format on page 97](#)
- [RTSP Methods on page 97](#)
- [RTSP Status Code on page 98](#)
- [RTSP Header on page 98](#)

RTSP Message Format

RTSP is text based and uses the ISO 10646 character set in UTF-8 encoding. Lines are terminated by CRLF, and an empty line is the separator of the message and body.

The first line is called the start-line. For request messages from client to server, the start-line represents the RTSP method. For the response message from server to client, the start-line represents the RTSP status code as the reply of method. The status code element is a 3-digit integer result code.

RTSP Methods

There are nine types of methods during one transaction.

- **OPTION**—Represents a request for information about the communication options available on the request/response chain identified by the Request-URL. This method allows the client to determine the options, requirements, or both associated with a resource, or the capabilities of a server, without implying a resource action or initiating a resource retrieval.
- **DESCRIBE**—Retrieves the description of a presentation or media object identified by the request URL from a server. This method might use the Accept header to specify the description formats that the client interprets.
- **ANNOUNCE**—Request sent from client to server, this method posts the description of a presentation or media object identified by the request URL to a server. When request sent from server to client, this method updates the session description in real-time.
- **SETUP**—Requests a URI and specifies the transport mechanism to be used for the streamed media.
- **PLAY**—Informs the server to start sending data using the mechanism specified in SETUP.
- **PAUSE**—Requests the stream delivery to be interrupted temporarily.
- **TEARDOWN**—Stops the stream delivery for the given URI, freeing the resource associated with it.
- **GET_PARAMETER**—Retrieves the value of a parameter of a presentation or stream specified in the URI.
- **SET_PARAMETER**—Sets the value of a parameter for a presentation or stream specified by the URI.

RTSP Status Code

The first digit of the status code defines the class of response.

- **1****: Informational—Request received, continuing process.
- **2****: Success
- **3****: Redirection—Further action must be taken in order to complete the request.
- **4****: Client Error—The request contains bad syntax or cannot be fulfilled.
- **5****: Server Error—The server failed to fulfill an apparently valid request.

RTSP Header

The RTSP header consists of the following fields:

- **CSeq**—Specifies the sequence number for an RTSP request-response pair. For every RTSP request containing the given sequence number, there will be a corresponding response having the same number.
- **Content-Length**—Contains the length of the content of the method, that is, after the double CRLF following the last header.
- **TRANSPORT**—Indicates which transport protocol is to be used and configures its parameters.
- **SESSION**—Identifies an RTSP session started by the media server in a SETUP response and concluded by TEARDOWN on the presentation URL.

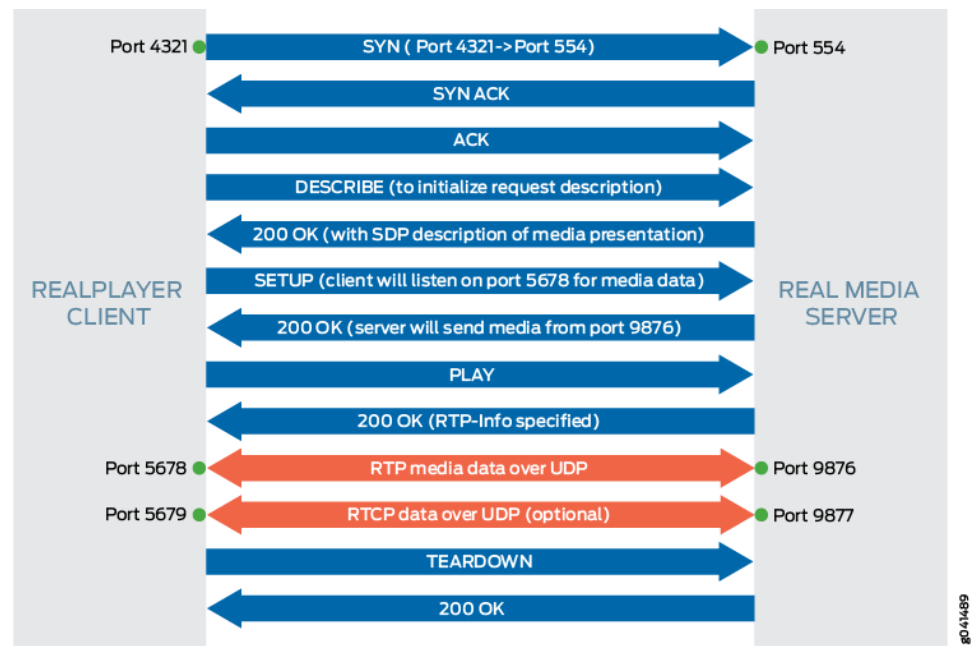
Understanding RTSP ALG Conversation and NAT

This topic provides details on typical RTSP ALG conversation.

In general, RTP and RTCP packets are bidirectional, which means that either the client or server could initiate an RTP or an RTCP session.

[Figure 7 on page 99](#) describes an example of a sample packet capture in a standard RTSP conversation.

Figure 7: RTSP ALG Conversation



The RTSP ALG performs the following actions for a RTSP sample packet capture in a standard RTSP conversation:

1. Monitors SETUP and 200 OK messages.
2. Receives negotiated ports (6543 and 8765 in this example)
3. Opens a pinhole for UDP media data from server to client.
4. Receives the IP address in payload and translates the address if NAT is required.

Table 6 on page 99 describes the RTSP payload IP NAT.

Table 6: RTSP Payload IP NAT

	Forward(C->S)	Reverse(S->C)	Pinhole	Payload IP Translate	Payload Port Translate
No NAT	A/4321->B/554	A/4321<-B/554	B/9876->A/5678 A/5678->B/9876	N/A	N/A
Source NAT (IPv4)	A/4321->B/554	A'/P'<-B/554	B/9876->A'/P" A/5678->B/9876	N/A (*)	5678<->P'
Destination NAT (IPv4)	A/4321->B'/554	A/4321<-B/554	B/9876->A/5678 A/5678->B'/9876	B' -> B (**)	N/A

Table 6: RTSP Payload IP NAT (continued)

	Forward(C->S)	Reverse(S->C)	Pinhole	Payload IP Translate	Payload Port Translate
NAT64	A/4321->B"/554	A"/Q'<-B/554	B/9876->A"/Q" A/5678->B"/9876	B"(IPv6)->B(IPv4)	5678<->Q'
NAT46	A/4321->B"/554	A"/R'<-B/554	B/9876->A"/R" A/5678->B"/9876	B"(IPv4)->B(IPv6)	5678<->R'

In [Table 6 on page 99](#), the following letters and symbols are used:

- A—RTSP client IP address
- A'—Translated IPv4 or IPv6 address of RTSP client
- A"—Translated IPv4 address
- A"—Translated IPv6 address
- B—RTSP server IP address
- B'—RTSP server IP address before destination NAT
- B"—RTSP server IP address at IPv6 realm
- B"—RTSP server IP address at IPv4 realm
- P—Translated Port(translates from 4321) of RTSP client
- P"—Translated Port(translates from 5678 in message payload) of RTSP client
- Q—Translated (IPv6 to IPv4) Port(translates from 4321) of RTSP client
- Q"—Translated (IPv6 to IPv4) Port (translates from 5678 in message payload) of RTSP client
- R—Translated (IPv4 to IPv6) Port (translates from 4321) of RTSP client
- R"—Translated (IPv4 to IPv6) Port (translates from 5678 in message payload) of RTSP client
- (*)—RTSP server IP address B appears in payload message; it does not need to translate
- (**)—IP address B' appears in payload message from client to server; it needs to translate to B

Example: Configuring the RTSP ALG

This example shows how to configure the RTSP ALG to pass through RTSP traffic with a source NAT pool on Juniper Networks devices.

- [Requirements on page 101](#)
- [Overview on page 101](#)

- [Configuration on page 101](#)
- [Verification on page 104](#)

Requirements

- Configure proxy ARP for all IP addresses in the source NAT pool.
- Enable the RTSP ALG.
- Understand the basics concepts of the RTSP ALG. See “[Understanding the RTSP ALG](#)” on page 95.

Overview

In this example, the RTSP ALG is configured to monitor and allow RTSP traffic transferring media between client and server located on opposite sides of a Juniper Networks device.

Configuration

- [Enabling RTSP ALG on page 101](#)
- [Configuring a NAT Source Pool and Rule Set and a Policy on page 101](#)
- [Configuring RTSP ALG trace options on page 103](#)

Enabling RTSP ALG

CLI Quick Configuration

To quickly configure this section of the example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

To configure proxy ARP for all IP addresses in the source NAT pool and to enable RTSP ALG:

```
set security nat proxy-arp interface <interface-name> address 10.10.10.1/32 to 10.10.10.10/32
set security alg rtsp
```

Enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Configuring a NAT Source Pool and Rule Set and a Policy

CLI Quick Configuration

To quickly configure this section of the example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set security nat source pool pool1 address 10.10.10.1/32 to 10.10.10.10/32
set security zones security-zone green address-book address sa1 1.1.1.0/24
set security zones security-zone red address-book address da1 2.2.2.0/24
set security nat source rule-set rs1 from zone green
set security nat source rule-set rs1 to zone red
set security nat source rule-set rs1 rule r1 match source-address 1.1.1.0/24
```

```
set security nat source rule-set rs1 rule r1 match destination-address 2.2.2.0/24
set security nat source rule-set rs1 rule r1 then source-nat pool pool1
```

```
set security policy from-zone green to-zone red policy pol1 match destination-address da1
set security policy from-zone green to-zone red policy pol1 match source-address sa1
set security policy from-zone green to-zone red policy pol1 match application junos-rtsp
set security policy from-zone green to-zone red policy pol1 then permit
```

Enter **commit** from configuration mode.



NOTE: If you are not sure of the RTSP client and server IP address, you can replace “da1” and “sa1” with “any”.

Step-by-Step Procedure

The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode* in the CLI User Guide.

To configure a source NAT pool:

1. Create a NAT source pool.

```
[edit security]
```

```
user@host# set nat source pool pool1 address 10.10.10.1/32 to 10.10.10.10/32
```

2. Configure security zone address book entries.

```
[edit security zones security-zone]
```

```
user@host# set green address-book address sa1 1.1.1.0/24
```

```
user@host# set red address-book address da1 2.2.2.0/24
```

3. Create a NAT source rule set.

```
[edit security nat source rule-set rs1]
```

```
user@host# set from zone green
```

```
user@host# set to zone red
```

```
user@host# set rule r1 match source-address 1.1.1.0/24
```

```
user@host# set rule r1 match destination-address 2.2.2.0/24
```

```
user@host# set rule r1 then source-nat pool pool1
```

4. Configure a policy.

```
[edit security policies from-zone green to-zone red policy pol1]
```

```
user@host# set match source-address sa1
```

```
user@host# set match destination-address da1
```

```
user@host# set match application junos-rtsp
```

```
user@host# set then permit
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show security nat** and **show security policies** commands. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
[edit ]
user@host# show security nat
source {
  pool pool1 {
    address {
      10.10.10.1/32 to 10.10.10.10/32;
    }
  }
}
rule-set rs1 {
  from zone green;
  to zone red;
  rule r1 {
    match {
      source-address 1.1.1.0/24;
      destination-address 2.2.2.0/24;
    }
    then {
      source-nat {
        pool {
          pool1;
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
}

[edit]
user@host# show security policies
from-zone green to-zone red {policy pool1 {
  policy pool1 {
    match {
      source-address sa1;
      destination-address da1;
      application [junos-rtsp];
    }
    then {
      permit;
    }
  }
}
default-policy {
  permit-all;
}
```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Configuring RTSP ALG trace options

CLI Quick Configuration To quickly configure this example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network

configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set security alg rtsp traceoptions flag all
set security alg traceoptions file trace
set security alg traceoptions file size 1g
set security alg traceoptions level verbose
```

Step-by-Step Procedure

To configure RTSP ALG trace options:

1. Enable RTSP ALG trace options.

```
[edit security alg]
user@host# set rtsp traceoptions flag all
```
2. Configure a filename to receive output from the tracing operation.

```
[edit security alg]
user@host# set traceoptions file trace
```
3. Specify the maximum trace file size.

```
[edit security alg]
user@host# set traceoptions file size 1g
```
4. Specify the level of tracing output.

```
[edit security alg]
user@host# set traceoptions level verbose
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show security alg** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
[edit]
user@host# show security alg
traceoptions {
  file trace size 1g;
  level verbose;
}
rtsp traceoptions flag all;
```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Verification

Confirm that the configuration is working properly.

- [Verifying RTSP ALG on page 105](#)
- [Verifying the RTSP ALG Control Session on page 105](#)
- [Verifying the RTSP ALG Flow Gate Information on page 106](#)

- [Verifying the RTSP Resource Manager Group on page 107](#)
- [Verifying the RTSP Resource Information on page 107](#)

Verifying RTSP ALG

Purpose Verify that the RTSP ALG is enabled.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security alg status** command.

```
user@host> show security alg status
```

```
DNS      : Enabled
FTP      : Enabled
H323     : Enabled
RTSP     : Enabled
```

Meaning The output shows the RTSP ALG status as follows:

- Enabled—Shows the RTSP ALG is enabled.
- Disabled—Shows the RTSP ALG is disabled.

Verifying the RTSP ALG Control Session

Purpose Verify that the control session is created and all the RTSP control and data sessions are created.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security flow session** command.

```
user@host>show security flow session
```

```
Flow Sessions on FPC5 PIC0:
```

```
Session ID: 100004087, Policy name: dns-alg/4, Timeout: 1798, Valid
Resource information : RTSP ALG, 1, 0
  In: 1.1.0.100/59889 --> 1.1.0.202/554;tcp, If: ge-0/0/1.0, Pkts: 28, Bytes:
7618
```

```
  Out: 1.1.0.202/554 --> 1.1.0.100/59889;tcp, If: ge-0/0/2.0, Pkts: 27, Bytes:
24304
```

```
Session ID: 100004088, Policy name: dns-alg/4, Timeout: 120, Valid
Resource information : RTSP ALG, 1, 1
  In: 1.1.0.202/5004 --> 1.1.0.100/62092;udp, If: ge-0/0/2.0, Pkts: 19, Bytes:
17013
```

```
  Out: 1.1.0.100/62092 --> 1.1.0.202/5004;udp, If: ge-0/0/1.0, Pkts: 0, Bytes: 0
```

```
Session ID: 100004089, Policy name: dns-alg/4, Timeout: 120, Valid
Resource information : RTSP ALG, 1, 4
  In: 1.1.0.202/5004 --> 1.1.0.100/62094;udp, If: ge-0/0/2.0, Pkts: 433, Bytes:
346183
```

```
  Out: 1.1.0.100/62094 --> 1.1.0.202/5004;udp, If: ge-0/0/1.0, Pkts: 0, Bytes: 0
```

```
Session ID: 100004090, Policy name: dns-alg/4, Timeout: 120, Valid
Resource information : RTSP ALG, 1, 3
```

```
  In: 1.1.0.100/62093 --> 1.1.0.202/5005;udp, If: ge-0/0/1.0, Pkts: 2, Bytes: 260
```

```
Out: 1.1.0.202/5005 --> 1.1.0.100/62093;udp, If: ge-0/0/2.0, Pkts: 0, Bytes: 0
Total sessions: 4
```

- Meaning**
- **Session ID**—Number that identifies the session. Use this ID to get more information about the session such as policy name or number of packets in and out.
 - **Policy name**—Policy name that permitted the traffic.
 - **In**—Incoming flow (source and destination IP addresses with their respective source and destination port numbers, session is TCP, and the source interface for this session is ge-0/0/1.0).
 - **Out**—Reverse flow (source and destination IP addresses with their respective source and destination port numbers, session is TCP, and destination interface for this session is fe-0/0/2.0).

Verifying the RTSP ALG Flow Gate Information

Purpose Verify that the flow gate is opened for TCP data channel connection.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security flow gate** command.

```
user@host>show security flow gate
```

```
Flow Gates on FPC5 PIC0:
```

```
Ho1e: 1.1.0.202-1.1.0.202/5005-5005->1.1.0.100-1.1.0.100/62093-62093
Translated: 0.0.0.0/0->0.0.0.0/0
Protocol: udp
Application: RTSP ALG/11
Age: 32 seconds
Flags: 0x0080
Zone: untrust
Reference count: 1
Resource: 4-1-2
```

```
Ho1e: 1.1.0.100-1.1.0.100/62093-62093->1.1.0.202-1.1.0.202/5005-5005
Translated: 0.0.0.0/0->0.0.0.0/0
Protocol: udp
Application: RTSP ALG/11
Age: 32 seconds
Flags: 0x0080
Zone: trust
Reference count: 1
Resource: 4-1-3
```

```
Ho1e: 1.1.0.202-1.1.0.202/5004-5004->1.1.0.100-1.1.0.100/62094-62094
Translated: 0.0.0.0/0->0.0.0.0/0
Protocol: udp
Application: RTSP ALG/11
Age: 32 seconds
Flags: 0x0080
Zone: untrust
Reference count: 1
Resource: 4-1-4
```

```

Hole: 1.1.0.100-1.1.0.100/62094-62094->1.1.0.202-1.1.0.202/5004-5004
Translated: 0.0.0.0/0->0.0.0.0/0
Protocol: udp
Application: RTSP ALG/11
Age: 32 seconds
Flags: 0x0080
Zone: trust
Reference count: 1
Resource: 4-1-5

Valid gates: 4
Pending gates: 0
Invalidated gates: 0
Gates in other states: 0
Total gates: 4

```

Meaning The sample output shows that the flow gate is opened for TCP data channel connection.

Verifying the RTSP Resource Manager Group

Purpose Verify the total number of resource manager groups and active groups that are used by the RTSP ALG.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security resource-manager group active** command.

```

user@host>show security resource-manager group active
Group ID 1: Application - RTSP ALG
Total groups 19763, active groups 1

```

Meaning The sample output shows the total number of resource manager groups and active groups that are used by the RTSP ALG.

Verifying the RTSP Resource Information

Purpose Verify the total number of resources and active resources that are used by the RTSP ALG.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security resource-manager resource active** command.

```

user@host>show security resource-manager resource active
Resource ID 2: Group ID - 1, Application - RTSP ALG

Resource ID 1: Group ID - 1, Application - RTSP ALG
Total Resources 93286, active resources 2

```

Meaning The sample output shows the total number of resources and active resources that are used by the RTSP ALG.

- Related Documentation**
- [TALK ALG on page 121](#)
 - [TFTP ALG on page 134](#)

SQLNET ALG

The SQLNET protocol is used by Oracle SQL servers to execute SQL commands from clients, including load balancing and application-specific services. Support of stateful firewall and NAT services requires that you configure the SQLNET ALG for TCP port 1521. The ALG monitors the control packets, opens flows dynamically for data traffic, and performs NAT address and port rewrites. For more information, see the following topics:

- [Understanding the SQLNET ALG on page 108](#)
- [Example: Configuring the SQLNET ALG on page 108](#)

Understanding the SQLNET ALG

The SQLNET Application Layer Gateway (ALG) processes Transparent Network Substrate (TNS) REDIRECT packets for IP addresses and port information. The SQLNET ALG performs Network Address Translation (NAT) on the payload of the TNS REDIRECT packet, opens a pinhole for a new connection from a client to a server, and transfers data between a client and a server located on opposite sides of a Juniper Networks device.

SQLNET ALG supports the following types of data transfer modes:

- Redirect mode — connect-redirect type
- Interleave mode — connect-accept type
- Load balance — connect-redirect-connect-redirect type

SQLNET allows remote data access between applications and the Oracle database, or among multiple Oracle databases. SQLNET primarily establishes and maintains connection between a client application and an Oracle database server. SQLNET has several communication layers that enable clients and database servers to share, modify, and manipulate data.

Oracle SQL servers use the SQLNET protocol to execute SQL commands from clients, including load balancing and application-specific services. The SQLNET protocol uses TNS as its networking architecture, and all SQLNET traffic is encapsulated into TNS packet format.

The SQLNET ALG monitors control packets, opens pinhole for data traffic, and performs NAT and port rewrites. Support of stateful firewall and NAT services are required to configure the SQLNET ALG for TCP port 1521.

Example: Configuring the SQLNET ALG

The SQLNET ALG processes TNS REDIRECT packets, performs NAT, and opens a pinhole for a new connection from a client to a server.

This example shows how to configure the SQLNET ALG in route or NAT mode, allow SQLNET traffic to pass through a device, and transfer data between a client and a server located on opposite sides of a Juniper Networks device.

- [Requirements on page 109](#)
- [Overview on page 109](#)
- [Configuration on page 110](#)
- [Verification on page 119](#)

Requirements

This example uses the following hardware and software components:

- An SRX Series device
- Two PCs (client and server)

Before you begin:

- Understand the concepts behind ALGs. See [“ALG Overview” on page 21](#).
- Understand the basics of SQLNET ALG. See [“Understanding the SQLNET ALG” on page 108](#).

Overview

In this example, first you configure network interfaces on the device. Create security zones and assign interfaces to the zones, and configure a policy to allow SQLNET traffic to go through an SRX Series device.

Then you create a static NAT rule set `rs1` with a rule `r1` to match with the destination address `40.0.172.10/32`, and you create a static NAT prefix with address `40.0.172.45/32`.

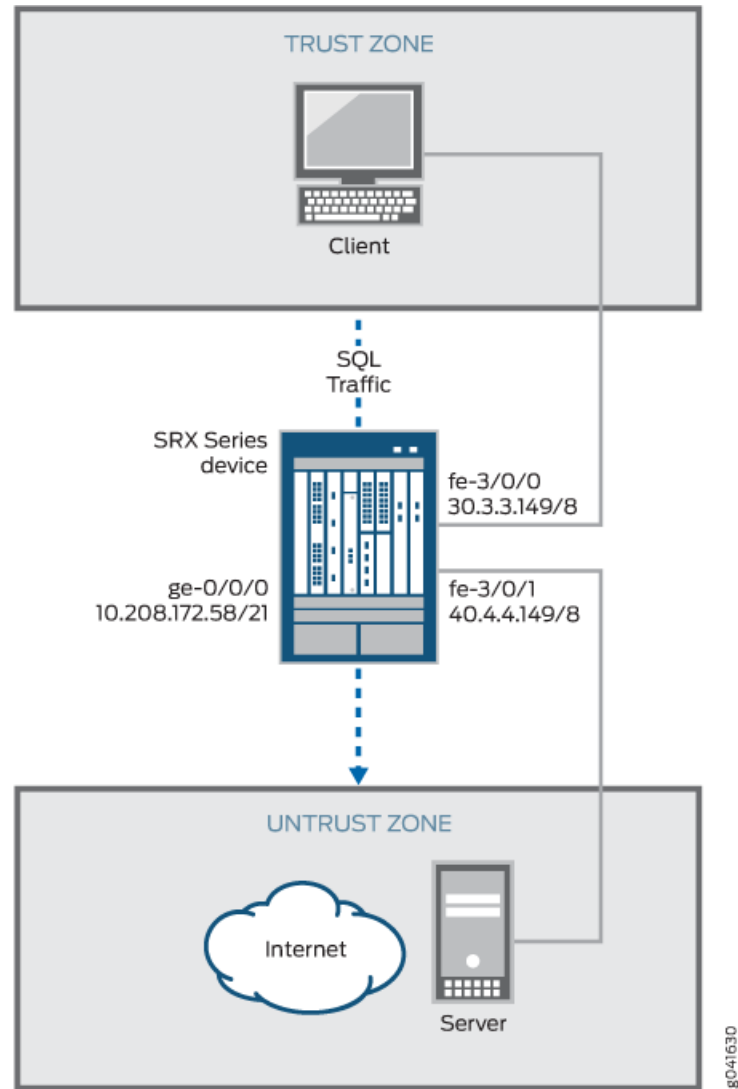
Next you create a source NAT pool `src-p1` with a source rule set `src-rs1` to translate packets from interface `fe-3/0/0.0` to interface `fe-3/0/1.0`. For matching packets, the source address is translated to an IP address in the `src-p1` pool.

Then you create a destination NAT pool `des-p1` with a destination rule set `des-rs1` to translate packets from zone `trust` to destination address `40.0.172.10/32`. For matching packets, the destination address is translated to an IP address in the `des-p1` pool. Finally, you enable SQLNET ALG trace options.

Topology

Figure 8 on page 110 shows the SQLNET ALG topology.

Figure 8: SQLNET ALG Topology



Configuration

To configure the SQLNET ALG, perform these tasks:

- [Configuring a Route Mode on page 111](#)
- [Configuring a Static NAT Rule Set on page 113](#)
- [Configuring a Source NAT Pool and Rule Set on page 114](#)
- [Configuring a Destination NAT Pool and Rule Set on page 116](#)

- [Enabling SQLNET ALG on page 117](#)
- [Enabling SQLNET ALG Trace Options on page 118](#)

Configuring a Route Mode

CLI Quick Configuration To quickly configure this example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set interfaces ge-0/0/0 unit 0 family inet address 10.208.172.58/21
set interfaces fe-3/0/0 unit 0 family inet address 30.3.3.149/8
set interfaces fe-3/0/1 unit 0 family inet address 40.4.4.149/8
set security zones security-zone trust host-inbound-traffic system-services all
set security zones security-zone trust host-inbound-traffic protocols all
set security zones security-zone trust interfaces fe-3/0/0.0
set security zones security-zone untrust host-inbound-traffic system-services all
set security zones security-zone untrust host-inbound-traffic protocols all
set security zones security-zone untrust interfaces fe-3/0/1.0
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy sql match source-address any
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy sql match destination-address any
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy sql match application junos-sqlnet-v2
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy sql then permit
```

Step-by-Step Procedure The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode* in the CLI User Guide.

To configure route mode:

1. Configure interfaces.

```
[edit interfaces]
user@host# set ge-0/0/0 unit 0 family inet address 10.208.172.58/21
user@host# set fe-3/0/0 unit 0 family inet address 30.3.3.149/8
user@host# set fe-3/0/1 unit 0 family inet address 40.4.4.149/8
```

2. Configure zones and assign interfaces to the zones.

```
[edit security zones security-zone]
user@host# set trust host-inbound-traffic system-services all
user@host# set trust host-inbound-traffic protocols all
user@host# set trust interfaces fe-3/0/0.0
user@host# set untrust host-inbound-traffic system-services all
user@host# set untrust host-inbound-traffic protocols all
user@host# set untrust interfaces fe-3/0/1.0
```

3. Configure a SQL policy that allows SQL traffic from the trust zone to the untrust zone.

```
[edit security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust ]
user@host# set policy sql match source-address any
user@host# set policy sql match destination-address any
user@host# set policy sql match application junos-sqlnet-v2
```

```
user@host# set policy sql then permit
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show interfaces**, **show security zones**, and **show security policies** commands. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

For brevity, this **show** output includes only the configuration that is relevant to this example. Any other configuration on the system has been replaced with ellipses (...).

```
[edit]
user@host# show interfaces
ge-0/0/0 {
  unit 0 {
    family inet {
      address 10.208.172.58/21;
    }
  }
}
fe-3/0/0 {
  unit 0 {
    family inet {
      address 30.3.3.149/8;
    }
  }
}
fe-3/0/1 {
  unit 0 {
    family inet {
      address 40.4.4.149/8;
    }
  }
}

[edit]
user@host# show security zones
...
security-zone trust {
  host-inbound-traffic {
    system-services {
      all;
    }
    protocols {
      all;
    }
  }
  interfaces {
    fe-3/0/0.0;
  }
}
security-zone untrust {
  host-inbound-traffic {
    system-services {
      all;
    }
  }
}
```

```

    }
    protocols {
        all;
    }
}
interfaces {
    fe-3/0/1.0;
}
}
...
[edit]
user@host# show security policies
from-zone trust to-zone untrust {
    policy sql {
        match {
            source-address any;
            destination-address any;
            application junos-sqlnet-v2;
        }
        then {
            permit;
        }
    }
}
}

```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Configuring a Static NAT Rule Set

CLI Quick Configuration To quickly configure this example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```

set security nat static rule-set rs1 from zone trust
set security nat static rule-set rs1 rule r1 match destination-address 40.0.172.10/32
set security nat static rule-set rs1 rule r1 then static-nat prefix 40.0.172.45/32

```

Step-by-Step Procedure The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode* in the CLI User Guide.

To configure a static NAT rule set:

1. Create a static NAT rule set.

```

[edit security nat static rule-set rs1]
user@host# set from zone trust

```

2. Define a rule to match with the destination address.

```

[edit security nat static rule-set rs1]
user@host# set rule r1 match destination-address 40.0.172.10/32

```

3. Define a static NAT prefix for the device.

```
[edit security nat static rule-set rs1]
user@host# set rule r1 then static-nat prefix 40.0.172.45/32
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show security nat** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
[edit]
user@host# show security nat
static {
  rule-set rs1 {
    from zone trust;
    rule r1 {
      match {
        destination-address 40.0.172.10/32;
      }
      then {
        static-nat {
          prefix {
            40.0.172.45/32;
          }
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Configuring a Source NAT Pool and Rule Set

CLI Quick Configuration To quickly configure this example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set security nat source pool src-p1 address 40.0.172.100/32 to 40.0.172.101/32
set security nat source rule-set src-rs1 from interface fe-3/0/0.0
set security nat source rule-set src-rs1 to interface fe-3/0/1.0
set security nat source rule-set src-rs1 rule r1 match source-address 30.0.0.0/8
set security nat source rule-set src-rs1 rule r1 match destination-address 40.0.0.0/8
set security nat source rule-set src-rs1 rule r1 then source-nat pool src-p1
```

Step-by-Step Procedure The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode* in the CLI User Guide.

To configure a source NAT pool and rule set:

1. Create a source NAT pool.

```
[edit security nat source]
user@host# set pool src-p1 address 40.0.172.100/32 to 40.0.172.101/32
```

2. Create a source NAT rule set.

```
[edit security nat source]
user@host# set rule-set src-rs1 from interface fe-3/0/0.0
user@host# set rule-set src-rs1 to interface fe-3/0/1.0
```

3. Configure a rule that matches packets and translates the source address to an address in the source pool.

```
[edit security nat source]
user@host# set rule-set src-rs1 rule r1 match source-address 30.0.0.0/8
```

4. Configure a rule that matches packets and translates the destination address to an address in the source pool.

```
[edit security nat source]
user@host# set rule-set src-rs1 rule r1 match destination-address 40.0.0.0/8
```

5. Configure a source NAT pool in the rule.

```
[edit security nat source]
user@host# set rule-set src-rs1 rule r1 then source-nat pool src-p1
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show security nat** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
[edit]
user@host# show security nat
source {
  pool src-p1 {
    address {
      40.0.172.100/32 to 40.0.172.101/32;
    }
  }
}
rule-set src-rs1 {
  from interface fe-3/0/0.0;
  to interface fe-3/0/1.0;
  rule r1 {
    match {
      source-address 30.0.0.0/8;
      destination-address 40.0.0.0/8;
    }
    then {
      source-nat {
        pool {
          src-p1;
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

```
    }  
  }  
}
```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Configuring a Destination NAT Pool and Rule Set

CLI Quick Configuration To quickly configure this example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set security nat destination pool des-p1 address 40.0.172.45/32  
set security nat destination rule-set des-rs1 from zone trust  
set security nat destination rule-set des-rs1 rule des-r1 match source-address 30.0.172.12/32  
set security nat destination rule-set des-rs1 rule des-r1 match destination-address 40.0.172.10/32  
set security nat destination rule-set des-rs1 rule des-r1 then destination-nat pool des-p1
```

Step-by-Step Procedure The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode* in the CLI User Guide.

To configure a destination NAT pool and rule set:

1. Create a destination NAT pool.

```
[edit security nat destination]  
user@host# set pool des-p1 address 40.0.172.45/32
```
2. Create a destination NAT rule set.

```
[edit security nat destination]  
user@host# set rule-set des-rs1 from zone trust
```
3. Configure a rule that matches packets and translates the source address to the address in the pool.

```
[edit security nat destination]  
user@host# set rule-set des-rs1 rule des-r1 match source-address 30.0.172.12/32
```
4. Configure a rule that matches packets and translates the destination address to the address in the pool.

```
[edit security nat destination]  
user@host# set rule-set des-rs1 rule des-r1 match destination-address 40.0.172.10/32
```
5. Configure a source NAT pool in the rule.

```
[edit security nat destination]  
user@host# set rule-set des-rs1 rule des-r1 then destination-nat pool des-p1
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show security nat** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
[edit]
user@host# show security nat
destination {
  pool des-p1 {
    address {
      40.0.172.45/32;
    }
  }
}
rule-set des-rs1 {
  from zone trust;
  rule des-r1 {
    match {
      source-address 30.0.172.12/32;
      destination-address 40.0.172.10/32;
    }
    then {
      destination-nat {
        pool {
          des-p1;
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Enabling SQLNET ALG

CLI Quick Configuration



NOTE: Starting in Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 and Junos OS Release 17.3R1, the SQLNET application layer gateway is enabled by default.

To quickly configure this example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set security alg sql
```

Step-by-Step Procedure

The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode* in the CLI User Guide.

To enable SQLNET ALG:

1. Enable SQLNET ALG.

```
[edit ]
user@host#set security alg sql
```

Enabling SQLNET ALG Trace Options

CLI Quick Configuration To quickly configure this example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set security alg sql traceoptions flag all
set security alg traceoptions file trace
set security alg traceoptions file size 1g
set security alg traceoptions level verbose
```

Step-by-Step Procedure The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode* in the CLI User Guide.

To enable SQLNET ALG trace options:

1. Enable SQLNET ALG trace options.

```
[edit security alg]
user@host#set sql traceoptions flag all
```

2. Configure a filename to receive output from the tracing operation.

```
[edit security alg]
user@host#set traceoptions file trace
```

3. Specify the maximum trace file size.

```
[edit security alg]
user@host#set traceoptions file size 1g
```

4. Specify the level of tracing output.

```
[edit security alg]
user@host#set traceoptions level verbose
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show security alg** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
[edit]
user@host# show security alg
  traceoptions {
    file trace size 1g;
    level verbose;
  }
```

`sql traceoptions flag all;`

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Verification

Confirm that the configuration is working properly.

- [Verifying the SQLNET ALG Control Session on page 119](#)
- [Verifying the SQLNET ALG on page 119](#)
- [Verifying the SQLNET ALG Resource Manager Group on page 120](#)
- [Verifying the SQLNET ALG Resource Information on page 120](#)

Verifying the SQLNET ALG Control Session

Purpose Verify that the SQL command is executed and all the SQL control and data sessions are created.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security flow session** command.

```
user@host>show security flow session
Session ID: 10880, Policy name: sql, Timeout: 2, Valid
  In: 30.0.172.12/52315 --> 40.0.172.35/1521;tcp, If: fe-3/0/0.0, Pkts: 6, Bytes:
    492
  Out: 40.0.172.35/1521 --> 30.0.172.12/52315;tcp, If: fe-3/0/1.0, Pkts: 4, Bytes:
    227

Session ID: 10881, Policy name: sql, Timeout: 1800, Valid
Resource information : SQLV2 ALG, 5, 18
  In: 30.0.172.12/45944 --> 40.0.172.35/1114;tcp, If: fe-3/0/0.0, Pkts: 18, Bytes:
    4240
  Out: 40.0.172.35/1114 --> 30.0.172.12/45944;tcp, If: fe-3/0/1.0, Pkts: 15,
    Bytes: 3989
Total sessions: 2
```

Meaning

- **Session ID**—Number that identifies the session. Use this ID to get more information about the session such as policy name, number of packets in and out.
- **Policy name**—Policy name that permitted the traffic.
- **In**—Incoming flow (source and destination IP addresses with their respective source and destination port numbers, session is TCP, and source interface for this session is fe-3/0/0.0).
- **Out**—Reverse flow (source and destination IP addresses with their respective source and destination port numbers, session is TCP, and destination interface for this session is fe-3/0/1.0).

Verifying the SQLNET ALG

Purpose Verify that the SQLNET ALG is enabled.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security alg status** command.

```
user@host>show security alg status
ALG Status :
  DNS      : Enabled
  FTP      : Enabled
  H323     : Disabled
  MGCP     : Disabled
  MSRPC    : Enabled
  PPTP     : Enabled
  RSH      : Disabled
  RTSP     : Disabled
  SCCP     : Disabled
  SIP      : Disabled
  SQL      : Enabled
  SUNRPC   : Enabled
  TALK     : Enabled
  TFTP     : Enabled
  IKE-ESP  : Disabled
```

Meaning The output shows the SQLNET ALG status as follows:

- Enabled—Shows the SQLNET ALG is enabled
- Disabled—Shows the SQLNET ALG is disabled.

Verifying the SQLNET ALG Resource Manager Group

Purpose Verify the total number of resource manager groups and active groups that are used by the SQLNET ALG.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security resource-manager group active** command.

```
user@host>show security resource-manager group active
Group ID 1: Application - SQL ALG
  Total groups 677, active groups 1
```

Verifying the SQLNET ALG Resource Information

Purpose Verify the total number of resources and active resources that are used by the SQLNET ALG.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security resource-manager resource active** command.

```
user@host>show security resource-manager resource active
Resource ID 2: Group ID - 1, Application - SQL ALG

  Resource ID 1: Group ID - 1, Application - SQL ALG
  Total Resources 4044, active resources 2
```

Release History Table

Release	Description
15.1X49-D10	Starting in Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D10 and Junos OS Release 17.3R1, the SQLNET application layer gateway is enabled by default.

Related Documentation

- [TFTP ALG on page 134](#)
- [DNS ALG on page 31](#)
- [FTP ALG on page 40](#)

TALK ALG

The TALK ALG is a visual communication program used for interactive communication between two users. The TALK protocol uses UDP port 517 and port 518 for control channel connections. The talk program consists of a server and a client. The server handles client notifications and helps to establish talk sessions. There are two types of talk servers: ntalk and talkd. The TALK ALG processes packets of both ntalk and talkd formats. It also performs NAT and gate opening as necessary. For more information, see the following topics:

- [Understanding the TALK ALG on page 121](#)
- [Example: Configuring the TALK ALG on page 121](#)

Understanding the TALK ALG

The TALK ALG is a visual communication program used for interactive communication between two users. The TALK ALG processes TALK packets, performs Network Address Translation (NAT), and opens two gates (TCP and UDP) on the receiver side. One gate is used for the next LOOKUP packet. The other gate is used for make a connection from a client to a server and to initiate communication between a client and a server located on opposite sides of a Juniper Networks device.

There are two types of TALK servers: ntalkd and talkd.

The TALK ALG processes both ntalk and talkd packets. The TALK ALG uses port UDP517 and port UDP518 to establish a connection between a client and a server.

Example: Configuring the TALK ALG

This example show how to configure the TALK ALG in route or NAT mode, allow the TALK traffic to pass through a device, and initiate communication between a client and a server located on opposite sides of a Juniper Networks device.

- [Requirements on page 122](#)
- [Overview on page 122](#)
- [Configuration on page 123](#)
- [Verification on page 131](#)

Requirements

This example uses the following hardware and software components:

- An SRX Series device
- Two PCs (client and server)

Before you begin:

- Understand the concepts behind ALGs. See [“ALG Overview” on page 21](#).
- Understand the basics of TALK ALG. See [“Understanding the TALK ALG” on page 121](#).

Overview

In this example, first you configure network interfaces on the device, create security zones and assign interfaces to the zones, and configure a policy to allow TALK traffic to go through an SRX Series device.

Then you create a static NAT rule set `rs1` with a rule `r1` to match the destination address `40.5.2.120/32`, and you create a static NAT prefix with address `20.5.2.120/32`.

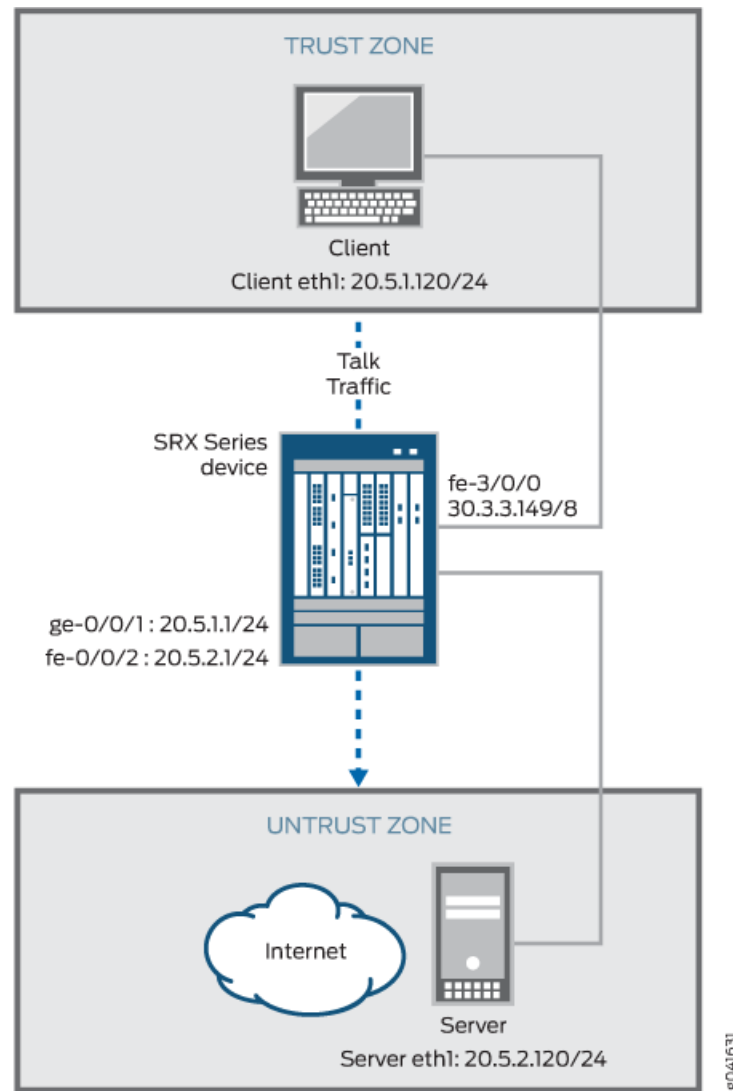
Next you create a source NAT pool `src-p1` with a source rule set `src-rs1` to translate packets from zone `trust` to zone `untrust`. For matching packets, the source address is translated to an IP address in the `src-p1` pool.

Then you create a destination NAT pool `des-p1` with a destination rule set `des-rs1` to translate packets from zone `trust` to destination address `40.5.2.121/32`. For matching packets, the destination address is translated to an IP address in the `des-p1` pool. Finally, you configure TALK ALG trace options.

Topology

Figure 9 on page 123 shows the TALK ALG topology.

Figure 9: TALK ALG Topology



Configuration

To configure the TALK ALG, perform these tasks:

- [Configuring a Route Mode on page 124](#)
- [Configuring a Static NAT Rule Set on page 126](#)
- [Configuring a Source NAT Pool and Rule Set on page 127](#)
- [Configuring a Destination NAT Pool and Rule Set on page 129](#)
- [Configuring TALK ALG trace options on page 130](#)

Configuring a Route Mode

CLI Quick Configuration To quickly configure this example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set interfaces ge-0/0/1 unit 0 family inet address 20.5.1.1/24
set interfaces fe-0/0/2 unit 0 family inet address 20.5.2.1/24
set security zones security-zone trust interfaces ge-0/0/1 host-inbound-traffic system-services
all
set security zones security-zone trust interfaces ge-0/0/1 host-inbound-traffic protocols all
set security zones security-zone untrust interfaces fe-0/0/2 host-inbound-traffic system-services
all
set security zones security-zone untrust interfaces fe-0/0/2 host-inbound-traffic protocols all
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy talk match source-address any
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy talk match destination-address any
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy talk match application junos-ntalk
set security policies from-zone trust to-zone untrust policy talk then permit
```

Step-by-Step Procedure The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode* in the CLI User Guide.

To configure route mode:

1. Configure interfaces.

```
[edit interfaces]
user@host#set ge-0/0/1 unit 0 family inet address 20.5.1.1/24
user@host#set fe-0/0/2 unit 0 family inet address 20.5.2.1/24
```

2. Configure zones and assign interfaces to the zones.

```
[edit security zones security-zone trust]
user@host#set interfaces ge-0/0/1 host-inbound-traffic system-services all
user@host#set interfaces ge-0/0/1 host-inbound-traffic protocols all
[edit security zones security-zone untrust]
user@host#set interfaces fe-0/0/2 host-inbound-traffic system-services all
user@host#set interfaces fe-0/0/2 host-inbound-traffic protocols all
```

3. Configure a TALK policy that allows TALK traffic from the trust zone to the untrust zone.

```
[edit security policies from-zone untrust to-zone trust]
user@host#set policy talk match source-address any
user@host#set policy talk match destination-address any
user@host#set policy talk match application junos-ntalk
user@host#set policy talk then permit
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show interfaces**, **show security zones**, and **show security policies** commands. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

For brevity, this **show** output includes only the configuration that is relevant to this example. Any other configuration on the system has been replaced with ellipses (...).

```
[edit]
user@host# show interfaces
...
  ge-0/0/1 {
    unit 0 {
      family inet {
        address 20.5.1.1/24;
      }
    }
  }
...
  fe-0/0/2 {
    unit 0 {
      family inet {
        address 20.5.2.1/24;
      }
    }
  }
}

[edit]
user@host# show security zones
security-zone trust {
  ....
  interfaces {
    ge-0/0/1.0 {
      host-inbound-traffic {
        system-services {
          all;
        }
        protocols {
          all;
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
...
security-zone untrust {
  interfaces {
    fe-0/0/2.0 {
      host-inbound-traffic {
        system-services {
          all;
        }
        protocols {
          all;
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

```
    }  
  }  
}  
  
[edit]  
user@host# show security policies  
from-zone trust to-zone untrust {  
  policy talk {  
    match {  
      source-address any;  
      destination-address any;  
      application junos-ntalk;  
    }  
    then {  
      permit;  
    }  
  }  
}
```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Configuring a Static NAT Rule Set

CLI Quick Configuration To quickly configure this example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set security nat static rule-set rs1 from zone trust  
set security nat static rule-set rs1 rule r1 match destination-address 40.5.2.120/32  
set security nat static rule-set rs1 rule r1 then static-nat prefix 20.5.2.120/32
```

Step-by-Step Procedure The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode* in the CLI User Guide.

To configure a static NAT rule set:

1. Create a static NAT rule set.

```
[edit security nat static rule-set rs1]  
user@host# set from zone trust
```

2. Define the rule to match with the destination address.

```
[edit security nat static rule-set rs1]  
user@host# set rule r1 match destination-address 40.5.2.120/32
```

3. Define the static NAT prefix for the device.

```
[edit security nat static rule-set rs1]  
user@host# set rule r1 then static-nat prefix 20.5.2.120/32
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show security nat** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
[edit]
user@host# show security nat
static {
  rule-set rs1 {
    from zone trust;
    rule r1 {
      match {
        destination-address 40.5.2.120/32
      }
      then {
        static-nat {
          prefix {
            20.5.2.120/32;
          }
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Configuring a Source NAT Pool and Rule Set

CLI Quick Configuration To quickly configure this example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set security nat source pool src-p1 address 40.5.1.120/32
set security nat source rule-set src-rs1 from zone trust
set security nat source rule-set src-rs1 to zone untrust
set security nat source rule-set src-rs1 rule src-r1 match source-address 20.5.1.120/32
set security nat source rule-set src-rs1 rule src-r1 match destination-address 20.5.2.120/32
set security nat source rule-set src-rs1 rule src-r1 then source-nat pool src-p1
```

Step-by-Step Procedure The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode* in the CLI User Guide.

To configure a source NAT pool and rule set:

1. Create a source NAT pool.

```
[edit security nat source]
user@host#set pool src-p1 address 40.5.1.120/32
```

2. Create a source NAT rule set.

```
[edit security nat source]
```

```
user@host# set rule-set src-rs1 from zone trust
user@host# set rule-set src-rs1 to zone untrust
```

3. Configure a rule that matches packets and translates the source address to an address in the source pool.

```
[edit security nat source]
user@host# set rule-set src-rs1 rule src-r1 match source-address 20.5.1.120/32
```

4. Configure a rule that matches packets and translates the destination address to an address in the source pool.

```
[edit security nat source]
user@host# set rule-set src-rs1 rule src-r1 match destination-address 20.5.2.120/32
```

5. Configure a source NAT pool in the rule.

```
[edit security nat source]
user@host# set rule-set src-rs1 rule src-r1 then source-nat pool src-p1
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show security nat** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
[edit]
user@host# show security nat
source {
  pool src-p1 {
    address {
      40.5.1.120/32;
    }
  }
}
rule-set src-rs1 {
  from zone trust;
  to zone untrust;
  rule src-r1 {
    match {
      source-address 20.5.1.120/32;
      destination-address 20.5.2.120/32;
    }
    then {
      source-nat {
        pool {
          src-p1;
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Configuring a Destination NAT Pool and Rule Set

CLI Quick Configuration To quickly configure this example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set security nat destination pool des-p1 address 20.5.2.120/32
set security nat destination rule-set des-rs1 from zone trust
set security nat destination rule-set des-rs1 rule des-r1 match source-address 20.5.1.120/32
set security nat destination rule-set des-rs1 rule des-r1 match destination-address 40.5.2.120/32
set security nat destination rule-set des-rs1 rule des-r1 then destination-nat pool des-p1
```

Step-by-Step Procedure The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode* in the CLI User Guide.

To configure a destination NAT pool and rule set:

1. Create a destination NAT pool.

```
[edit security nat destination]
user@host# set pool des-p1 address 20.5.2.120/32
```

2. Create a destination NAT rule set.

```
[edit security nat destination]
user@host# set rule-set des-rs1 from zone trust
```

3. Configure a rule that matches packets and translates the source address to the address in the pool.

```
[edit security nat destination]
user@host# set rule-set des-rs1 rule des-r1 match source-address 20.5.1.120/32
```

4. Configure a rule that matches packets and translates the destination address to the address in the pool.

```
[edit security nat destination]
user@host# set rule-set des-rs1 rule des-r1 match destination-address 40.5.2.120/32
```

5. Configure a source NAT pool in the rule.

```
[edit security nat destination]
user@host# set rule-set des-rs1 rule des-r1 then destination-nat pool des-p1
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show security nat** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
[edit]
user@host# show security nat
destination {
  pool des-p1 {
    address {
      20.5.2.120/32;
    }
  }
  rule-set des-rs1 {
    from zone trust;
    rule des-r1 {
      match {
        source-address 20.5.1.120/32;
        destination-address 40.5.2.120/32;
      }
      then {
        destination-nat {
          pool {
            des-p1;
          }
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Configuring TALK ALG trace options

CLI Quick Configuration To quickly configure this example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set security alg talk traceoptions flag all
set security alg traceoptions file trace
set security alg traceoptions file size 1g
set security alg traceoptions level verbose
```

Step-by-Step Procedure The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode* in the CLI User Guide.

To configure TALK ALG trace options:

1. Enable TALK ALG trace options.

```
[edit security alg]
user@host#set talk traceoptions flag all
```

2. Configure the filename to receive output from the tracing operation.

```
[edit security alg]
user@host#set traceoptions file trace
```

3. Specify the maximum trace file size.

```
[edit security alg]
user@host#set traceoptions file size 1g
```

4. Specify the level of tracing output.

```
[edit security alg]
user@host#set traceoptions level verbose
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show security alg** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
[edit]
user@host# show security alg
traceoptions {
  file trace size 1g;
  level verbose;
}
talk traceoptions flag all;
```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Verification

Confirm that the configuration is working properly.

- [Verifying the TALK ALG Control Session on page 131](#)
- [Verifying the TALK Flow Gate Information on page 132](#)
- [Verifying TALK ALG on page 133](#)
- [Verifying the TALK Resource Manager Group on page 133](#)
- [Verifying the TALK Resource Information on page 134](#)

Verifying the TALK ALG Control Session

Purpose Verify that the TALK control session is created and all the TALK control and data sessions are created.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security flow session** command.

```
user@host>show security flow session

  session ID: 128570, Policy name: p11/4, Timeout: 56, Valid
Resource information : TALK ALG, 2, 0
  In: 5.1.1.200/1105 --> 6.1.1.200/518;udp, If: ge-0/0/1.0, Pkts: 3, Bytes: 336
  Out: 6.1.1.200/518 --> 5.1.1.200/1105;udp, If: ge-0/0/2.0, Pkts: 3, Bytes: 156

Session ID: 128617, Policy name: p11/4, Timeout: 1796, Valid
Resource information : TALK ALG, 2, 2
  In: 6.1.1.200/42224 --> 5.1.1.200/518;udp, If: ge-0/0/2.0, Pkts: 1, Bytes: 112
```

```
Out: 5.1.1.200/518 --> 6.1.1.200/42224;udp, If: ge-0/0/1.0, Pkts: 1, Bytes: 52
Session ID: 128618, Policy name: p11/4, Timeout: 1796, Valid
Resource information : TALK ALG, 2, 3
In: 6.1.1.200/51430 --> 5.1.1.200/32905;tcp, If: ge-0/0/2.0, Pkts: 4, Bytes:
219
Out: 5.1.1.200/32905 --> 6.1.1.200/51430;tcp, If: ge-0/0/1.0, Pkts: 3, Bytes:
167
```

- Meaning**
- **Session ID**—Number that identifies the session. Use this ID to get more information about the session such as policy name or number of packets in and out.
 - **Policy name**—Policy name that permitted the traffic.
 - **In**—Incoming flow (source and destination IP addresses with their respective source and destination port numbers, session is TCP, and the source interface for this session is ge-0/0/1.0).
 - **Out**—Reverse flow (source and destination IP addresses with their respective source and destination port numbers, session is TCP, and destination interface for this session is fe-0/0/2.0).

Verifying the TALK Flow Gate Information

Purpose Verify that the gates are opened for TCP data channel and reverse UDP reply.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security flow gate** command.

```
user@host>show security flow gate
Ho1e: 6.1.1.200-6.1.1.200/0-0->5.1.1.200-5.1.1.200/518-518
Translated: 0.0.0.0/0->0.0.0.0/0
Protocol: udp
Application: TALK ALG/65
Age: 110 seconds
Flags: 0x0080
Zone: untrust
Reference count: 1
Resource: 11-2-2

Ho1e: 6.1.1.200-6.1.1.200/0-0->5.1.1.200-5.1.1.200/32905-32905
Translated: 0.0.0.0/0->0.0.0.0/0
Protocol: tcp
Application: TALK ALG/65
Age: 110 seconds
Flags: 0x0080
Zone: untrust
Reference count: 1
Resource: 11-2-3
```

- Meaning**
- **Hole**—Range of flows permitted by the pinhole.
 - **Translated**—Tuples used to create the session if it matches the pinhole (source and destination IP addresses with their respective source and destination port numbers).
 - **Protocol**—Application protocol, such as UDP or TCP.
 - **Application**—Name of the application.
 - **Age**—Idle timeout for the pinhole.
 - **Flags**— Internal debug flags for the pinhole.
 - **Zone**—Security zone such as from zone and to zone.
 - **Reference count**—Number of resource manager references to the pinhole.
 - **Resource**—Resource manager information about the pinhole.

Verifying TALK ALG

Purpose Verify that the TALK ALG is enabled.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security alg status** command.

```
user@host>show security alg status
ALG Status :
  PPTP      : Enabled
  RSH       : Disabled
  RTSP      : Enabled
  SCCP      : Enabled
  SIP       : Enabled
  TALK      : Enabled
  TFTP      : Enabled
  IKE-ESP   : Disabled
```

Meaning The output shows the TALK ALG status as follows:

- **Enabled**—Shows the TALK ALG is enabled.
- **Disabled**—Shows the TALK ALG is disabled.

Verifying the TALK Resource Manager Group

Purpose Verify the total number of resource manager groups and active groups that are used by the TALK ALG.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security resource-manager group active** command.

```
user@host>show security resource-manager group active
Group ID 2: Application - TALK ALG
    Total groups 3276, active groups 1
```

Verifying the TALK Resource Information

Purpose Verify the total number of resources and active resources that are used by the TALK ALG.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security resource-manager resource active** command.

```
user@host>show security resource-manager resource active
Resource ID 3: Group ID - 2, Application - TALK ALG
```

```
Resource ID 2: Group ID - 2, Application - TALK ALG
Total Resources 6015, active resources 2
```

Related Documentation

- [IKE and ESP ALG on page 46](#)
- [PPTP ALG on page 57](#)

TFTP ALG

The Trivial File Transfer Protocol (TFTP) ALG processes TFTP packets that initiate the request to UDP destination port 69 and opens a gate to allow return packets from the reverse direction to the port that sends the request. Support of stateful firewall and NAT services requires that you configure the TFTP ALG for UDP destination port 69. For more information, see the following topics:

- [Understanding the TFTP ALG on page 134](#)
- [Example: Configuring the TFTP ALG on page 137](#)

Understanding the TFTP ALG

- [Overview on page 134](#)
- [TFTP Packets on page 135](#)
- [TFTP Session on page 135](#)
- [Understanding TFTP ALG Conversation on page 136](#)
- [Understanding IPv6 Support for the TFTP ALG on page 136](#)

Overview

Trivial File Transfer Protocol (TFTP) is a simple protocol used for files transfer (*RFC 1350*). TFTP is implemented on top of UDP, with destination port 69 as the well-known port. The TFTP Application Layer Gateway (ALG) processes TFTP packets that initiate the request and creates pinholes to allow return packets from the reverse direction.

In flow processing there are two sessions for one TFTP conversation, one is the TFTP control session created by a read request (RRQ) or write request (WRQ) packet; the other one is the TFTP data session created by a DATA packet (for RRQ) or acknowledgment (ACK) packet (for WRQ).

In a Junos OS firewall, the TFTP control session is permitted through the `junos-tftp` application policy. The data session is permitted through the TFTP ALG open pinhole from any port of the server to the TID (port) of the client when the control session packet is received. No NAT translation is required, because the NAT translation has already been performed and the information is available from the session data structure.

On SRX210, SRX240, SRX320, or SRX340 devices, broadcast TFTP is not supported when flow is enabled on the device. (Platform support depends on the Junos OS release in your installation.)

TFTP Packets

Any transfer begins with a request to read or write a file. A data packet of less than 512 bytes signals termination of a transfer.

TFTP supports five types of packets:

- Read request (RRQ)
- Write request (WRQ)
- Data (DATA)
- Acknowledgment (ACK)
- Error (ERROR)

TFTP Session

The TFTP ALG is based on UDP, which is a stateless transport protocol. In a firewall, the TFTP ALG acts as a UDP session with timeout. If there is no packet refresh session, the session is terminated after timeout. Although the TFTP client and server determine the termination of a TFTP conversation, they are sometimes unaware of the session in Firewall. Therefore, the client and server could request a new TFTP conversation in this scenario.

The TFTP ALG session can proceed in any of the following ways:

- When the TFTP control session reaches timeout, the session is not terminated if the data session is still alive.
- A TFTP session might terminate or get corrupted by the **clear security flow session all** or the **clear specific session** CLI commands regardless of whether the data session is ongoing or not.
- If a new TFTP session request arrives and reaches the existing session, the TFTP ALG will open the pinhole again for the new request.
- If the pinhole already exists, the TFTP ALG will not open the pinhole again and there will be no packet drop.
- The TFTP ALG will not drop any packet.

Understanding TFTP ALG Conversation

By default TFTP servers listen for incoming requests from TFTP clients on port 69. A TFTP client chooses its source tunnel identifier (TID) port and sends its initial request to the server. In response, the server uses the TID chosen as the source port and sends a response to the client's TID as the destination port. The two TIDs ports are then used for the rest of the data transfer.

Read file conversation steps:

1. Host A (client) sends an RRQ packet to host B (server) with A's TID as source and port 69 as destination.
2. Host B (server) sends a DATA packet to host A (client) with B's TID as source and A's TID as destination.
3. Host A (client) sends an ACK packet to host B (server) with A's TID as source and B's TID as destination.
4. DATA and ACK packets conversation continues until file data transferring is complete.

Write file conversation steps:

1. Host A (client) sends a WRQ packet to host B (server) with A's TID as source and port 69 as destination.
2. Host B (server) sends an ACK packet to host A (client) with B's TID as source and A's TID as destination.
3. Host A (client) sends a DATA packet to host B (server) with A's TID as source and B's TID as destination.
4. Host B (server) sends an ACK packet to host A (client) with B's TID as source and A's TID as destination.

Understanding IPv6 Support for the TFTP ALG

Trivial File Transfer Protocol (TFTP) Application Layer Gateway (ALG) has been enhanced to support IPv6 and IPv4 TFTP conversation, which has IPv6 and IPv4 addresses for both the source IP address and destination IP address.

TFTP ALG processes packets that initiate the routing request and create pinholes to allow return packets from the reverse direction to the port that sent the request.

The data session is set up by the first packet from the client to the server. TFTP ALG monitors the first packet and opens a pinhole from any port on the server to the client. This process helps the return packets from the server and subsequent data packets to pass through.

Example: Configuring the TFTP ALG

The TFTP ALG processes TFTP packets that initiate the request and opens a gate to allow return packets from the reverse direction to the port that sends the request.

This example shows how to configure the TFTP ALG to pass through TFTP traffic with a source NAT pool on Juniper Networks devices.

- [Requirements on page 137](#)
- [Overview on page 137](#)
- [Configuration on page 137](#)
- [Verification on page 139](#)

Requirements

- Configure proxy ARP for all IP addresses in the source NAT pool.
- Understand the basic concepts of TFTP ALG. See “[Understanding the TFTP ALG](#)” on [page 134](#).

Overview

In this example, the TFTP ALG is configured to monitor and allow TFTP traffic, transferring files between the client and server located on opposite sides of a Juniper Networks device.

Configuration

Configuring a NAT Source Pool, Rule Set, and a Policy

CLI Quick Configuration

To quickly configure this section of the example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set security nat source pool pool1 address 10.10.10.1/32 to 10.10.10.10/32
set security zones security-zone green address-book address sa1 1.1.1.0/24
set security zones security-zone red address-book address da1 2.2.2.0/24
set security nat source rule-set rs1 from zone green
set security nat source rule-set rs1 to zone red
set security nat source rule-set rs1 rule r1 match source-address 1.1.1.0/24
set security nat source rule-set rs1 rule r1 match destination-address 2.2.2.0/24
set security nat source rule-set rs1 rule r1 then source-nat pool pool1
```

```
set security policy from-zone green to-zone red policy pol1 match destination-address da1
set security policy from-zone green to-zone red policy pol1 match source-address sa1
set security policy from-zone green to-zone red policy pol1 match application junos-tftp
set security policy from-zone green to-zone red policy pol1 then permit
```



NOTE: If you are not sure of the TFTP client and server IP address, you can replace “da1” and “sa1” with “any”.

Step-by-Step Procedure The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode* in the CLI User Guide.

To configure a source NAT pool:

1. Create a NAT source pool.

```
[edit security]
user@host# set nat source pool pool1 address 10.10.10.1/32 to 10.10.10.10/32
```

2. Configure security zone address book entries.

```
[edit security zones security-zone]
user@host# set green address-book address sa1 1.1.1.0/24
user@host# set red address-book address da1 2.2.2.0/24
```

3. Create a NAT source rule set.

```
[edit security nat source rule-set rs1]
user@host# set from zone green
user@host# set to zone red
user@host# set rule r1 match source-address 1.1.1.0/24
user@host# set rule r1 match destination-address 2.2.2.0/24
user@host# set rule r1 then source-nat pool pool1
```

4. Configure a policy

```
[edit security policies from-zone green to-zone red policy pol1]
user@host# set match source-address sa1
user@host# set match destination-address da1
user@host# set match application junos-tftp
user@host# set then permit
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show security nat** and **show security policies** commands. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
[edit]
user@host# show security nat
source {
  pool pool1 {
    address {
      10.10.10.1/32 to 10.10.10.10/32;
    }
  }
}
rule-set rs1 {
  from zone green;
  to zone red;
  rule r1 {
    match {
      source-address 1.1.1.0/24;
      destination-address 2.2.2.0/24;
```

```

    }
    then {
        source-nat {
            pool {
                pool1;
            }
        }
    }
}

[edit]
user@host# show security policies
from-zone green to-zone red {policy pol1 {
    policy pol1 {
        match {
            source-address sa1;
            destination-address da1;
            application [junos-tftp];
        }
        then {
            permit;
        }
    }
}
default-policy {
    permit-all;
}

```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Verification

Confirm that the configuration is working properly.

- [Verifying the NAT Source Pool and Rule Set on page 139](#)
- [Verifying TFTP ALG on page 139](#)

Verifying the NAT Source Pool and Rule Set

Purpose Verify that the NAT source pool and rule set used to support the TFTP ALG are working properly.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security nat static rule r1** command.

Verifying TFTP ALG

Purpose Verify that the TFTP ALG is enabled.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security alg status** command.

```
user@host> show security alg status
```

```
DNS      : Enabled
FTP      : Enabled
H323     : Enabled
TFTP     : Enabled
```

Meaning The output shows the TFTP ALG status as follows:

- Enabled—Shows the TFTP ALG is enabled.
- Disabled—Shows the TFTP ALG is disabled.

Related Documentation

- [RPC ALG on page 70](#)
- [RSH ALG on page 81](#)

Understanding IPv6 ALG Support for ICMP

The Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) Application Layer Gateway (ALG) is one of the ALG's that handle ICMP traffic.

IPv6 nodes use the ICMPv6 protocol to report errors encountered in processing packets and to perform other Internet-layer functions such as diagnostics. ICMPv6 is an integral part of IPv6 and must be fully implemented by every IPv6 node; therefore the ALG layer is always enabled for ICMPv6.

ICMP Error Messages

ICMPv6 messages are grouped into two classes:

- ICMPv6 error messages
 - Destination unreachable
 - Packet too big
 - Time exceeded
 - Parameter problem
- ICMPv6 informational (or ping) messages
 - Echo request
 - Echo reply

The ICMP ALG monitors all these messages, and then does the following :

- Closes the session
- Modifies the payload

The ICMP ALG closes a session if it meets the following conditions:

- Receives echo reply message.
- Receives a destination unreachable error message and has not received any replies yet.



NOTE: The ICMP ALG checks if the session has received any replies from destination node. If it has received any reply, the destination should be reachable and the ICMP error message is not credible, therefore it does not close the session. This is to avoid hackers from sniffing the TCP/UDP packet and forging an ICMP destination unreachable packet to kill the session.

ICMP ALG Functionality

ICMP ALG behaves differently in various modes.

ICMP ALG functionality in NAT mode:

1. Close the session.
2. Modify the identifier, the sequence number or both of the echo request.
3. Resume the original identifier and sequence number for the echo reply.
4. NAT translates the embedded IPv6 packet for the ICMPv6 error message.

ICMP ALG functionality in NAT-PT support mode:

1. Close the session.
2. Translate the ICMPv4 ping message to the ICMPv6 ping message.
3. Translate the ICMPv6 ping message to the ICMPv4 ping message.
4. Translate the ICMPv4 error message to the ICMPv6 error message and translate its embedded IPv4 packet to an IPv6 packet.
5. Translate the ICMPv6 error message to the ICMPv4 error message and translate its embedded IPv6 packet to an IPv4 packet.

Related Documentation

- *Understanding How SRX Series Devices Handle Packet Fragmentation for IPv6 Flows*
- *Understanding IPv6 Address Space, Addressing, Address Format, and Address Types*

Understanding 464XLAT ALG Traffic Support

When you deploy IPv6 applications on mobile networks, be aware that some mobile operators cannot provide IPv6 support for their users, because some phone applications do not support an IPv6-only environment.

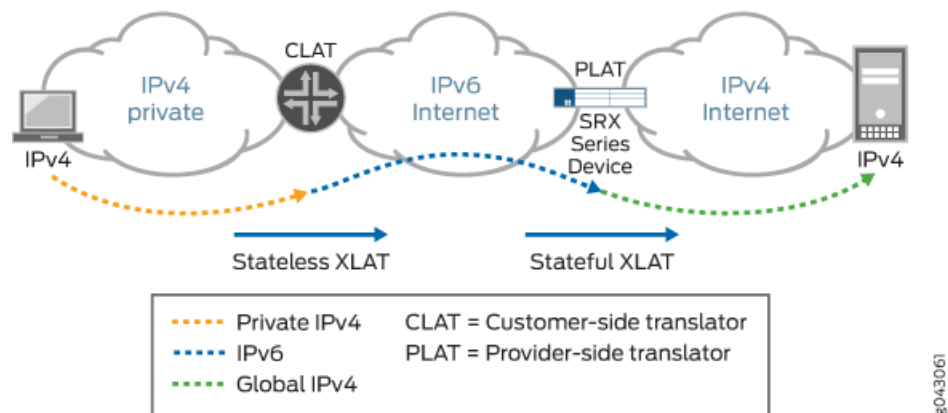
The solution is to use the NAT64 mechanism to access the IPv4-only content in the operator's network and to use 464XLAT traffic to enable IPv4-only applications to work on IPv6-only networks.

The 464XLAT architecture is a combination of stateless translation on the customer-side translator (CLAT) and stateful translation on the provider-side translator (PLAT). The 464XLAT architecture is used to translate the packet information of a device using the combination of stateless (translates private IPv4 address to global IPv6 addresses, and vice versa) and stateful (translates IPv6 addresses to global IPv4 addresses, and vice versa) translation.

Starting in Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D15 and Junos OS Release 17.3R1, the 464XLAT traffic is not supported in a none PAT pool with a persistent NAT pool.

Figure 10 on page 142 illustrates the 464XLAT architecture, which provides IPv4 connectivity across an IPv6-only network by combining existing and well-known stateful protocol translation on PLAT in the core and stateless protocol on CLAT at the edge. The private IPv4 host can reach global IPv4 hosts through both CLAT and PLAT translation. Conversely, the IPv6 host can directly reach other IPv6 hosts on the Internet without translation. This means that the customer premises equipment (CPE) can support CLAT and also operate as an IPv6 native router for native IPv6 traffic.

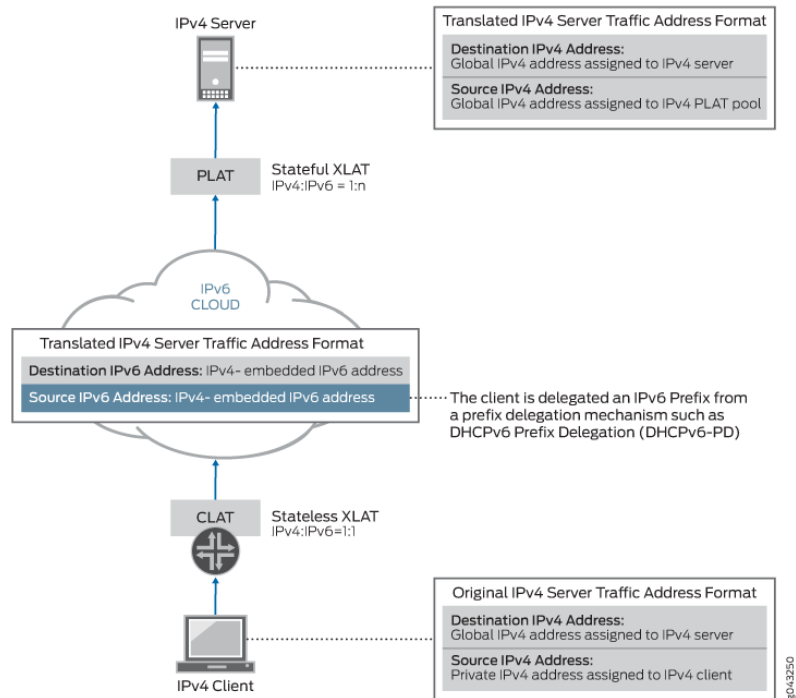
Figure 10: 464XLAT Architecture



Understanding 464XLAT ALG Functionality

Figure 11 on page 143 describes the address translation architecture and shows how packet information for a device is translated using a combination of stateful translation at the provider-side translator (PLAT) and stateless translation at the customer-side translator (CLAT). In this diagram, the client is delegated an IPv6 prefix from a prefix delegation mechanism such as DHCPv6 Prefix Delegation (DHCPv6-PD). Therefore, the client has a dedicated IPv6 prefix for translation.

Figure 11: 464XLAT ALG Functionality



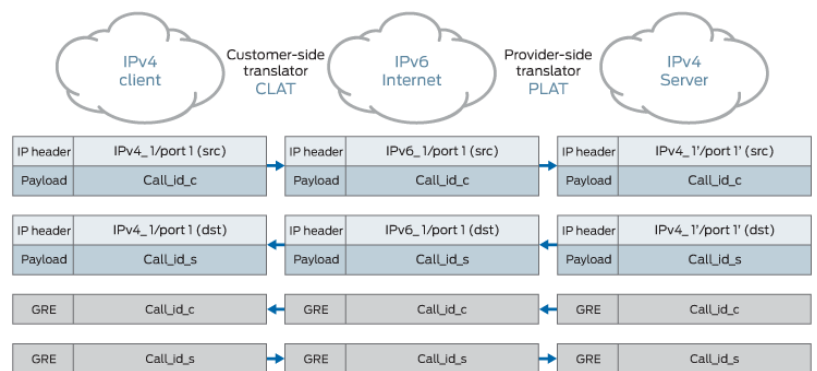
The PPTP, RTSP, and FTP ALGs also support XLAT functionality.

This following sections explain how the PPTP, RTSP, and FTP ALGs work when the device acts as PLAT:

How the PPTP ALG Supports the Device Acting As PLAT

Figure 12 on page 143 describes the PPTP ALG XLAT functionality.

Figure 12: PPTP ALG XLAT Functionality



The PPTP ALG uses the call_ID for destination port functionality.

1. **The client sends the outgoing call request (with PPTP Access Concentrator (PAC) call_ID) to the server:**

CLAT: The source address/port is translated from Ipv4_1/port1 to Ipv6_1/port1. However, the payload call_ID is not changed.

PLAT: The source address/port Ipv6_1/port1 is translated to Ipv4_1'/port1' and matches the NAT64 rule. However, the call_ID in the payload is not changed. The PPTP ALG creates a gate such as server_ip/0->Ipv4_1'/call_ID(Ipv6_1/call_ID).

The first generic routing encapsulation (GRE) packet reaches the gate from the server side: When the first GRE traffic reaches the gate, the GRE packet from the server side with destination Ipv4_1'/call_ID is translated to Ipv6_1/call_ID. Finally, the GRE packet reaches the client Ipv4_1/call_ID after CLAT.

Another special case for call_ID 0:

CLAT: The source address/port is translated from Ipv4_1/port1 to Ipv6_1/port1. However, the payload call_ID is not changed.

PLAT: The source address/port Ipv6_1/port1 is translated to Ipv4_1'/port1' and matches the NAT64 rule. However, the call_ID 0 in the payload is manually translated to 65002. The PPTP ALG creates a gate such as server_ip/0->Ipv4_1'/65002(Ipv6_1/0).

The first GRE packet reaches the gate from the server side: When the first GRE traffic reaches the gate, the GRE packet from the server side with destination Ipv4_1'/65002 is translated to Ipv6_1/0. Finally, the GRE packet reaches the client Ipv4_1/0 after CLAT.

2. **The server sends the outgoing call reply (with PPTP Network Server (PNS) and PAC call_ID) to the client:**

PLAT: The source address/port Ipv4_2/port2 is translated to Ipv6_2/port2' and matches the NAT64 rule. However, the call_ID in the payload is not changed, and the PPTP ALG creates a gate such as client_v6/0->Ipv6_2/call_ID(Ipv4_2/call_ID).

CLAT: The source address/port is translated from Ipv6_2/port2 to Ipv4_2/port2. However, the payload call_ID is not changed.

The first GRE packet reaches the gate from the client side: When the first GRE traffic reaches the gate, the GRE packet from the client side with destination Ipv4_2'/call_ID is translated to Ipv6_2/call_ID after CLAT and then it is translated to Ipv4_2/call_ID. Finally, the GRE packet reaches the server Ipv4_2/call_ID after PLAT.

Another special case for call_ID 0:

PLAT: The source address/port Ipv4_2/port2 is translated to Ipv6_2/port2' and matches the NAT64 rule. However, the call_ID in the payload is translated to 65002 and the PPTP ALG creates a gate such as client_v6/0->Ipv6_2/65002(Ipv4_2/0).

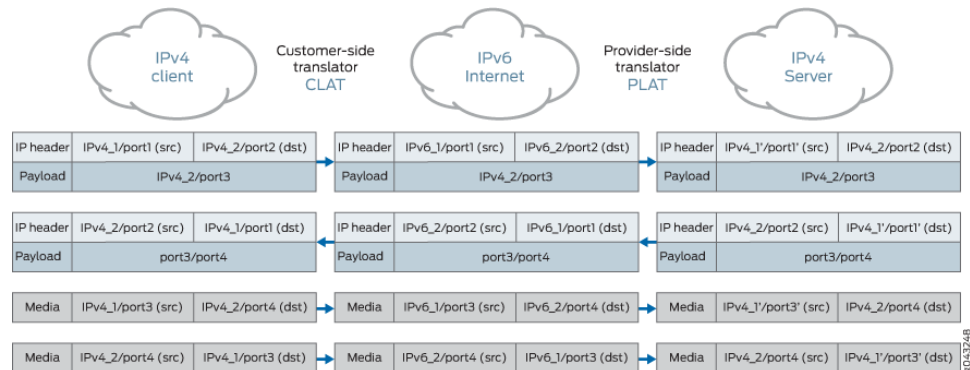
CLAT: The source address/port is translated from Ipv6_2/port2 to Ipv4_2/port2. However, the payload call_ID is not changed.

The first GRE packet reaches the gate from the client side: When the first GRE traffic reaches the gate, the GRE packet from the client side with destination Ipv4_2'/65002 is translated to Ipv6_2/65002 after CLAT and then it is translated to Ipv4_2/0. Finally, the GRE packet reaches the server Ipv4_2/0 after PLAT.

How the RTSP ALG Supports the Device Acting As PLAT

Figure 13 on page 145 describes the RTSP ALG XLAT functionality.

Figure 13: RTSP ALG XLAT Functionality



1. The Windows Media Player on the Windows PC sends a SETUP message:

CLAT: The source address/port is translated from lpv4_1/port1 to lpv6_1/port1. However, the payload lpv4_2/port3 is not changed.

PLAT: The source address/port lpv6_1/port1 is translated to lpv4_1'/port1' and matches the NAT64 rule, and the payload port3 is translated to port3'. However, the IP address in the payload ULR remains unchanged.

2. The Windows Media Server on the Windows server sends a 200 OK message:

PLAT: The source address/port lpv4_1'/port1' is translated to lpv6_1/port1 and matches the NAT64 rule. However, the port4 in the payload is not changed. The port3' is translated to port3. The RTSP ALG create gates such as c->s lpv6_1/port1->lpv6_2/port3 and s->c lpv4_2/port4->lpv4_1'/port3' over UDP media data sent from the server side with destination lpv4_1'/port1', then the IP header is translated to lpv6_1/port1 and reaches the gate.

CLAT: The source address/port is translated from lpv6_1/port1 to lpv4_1/port1. However, the payload port3/port4 is not changed.

3. The server sends the Real-Time Transport Protocol (RTP) over UDP media data:

PLAT: When the RTP over UDP media data is sent from the server side with destination lpv4_1'/port3, the IP header is translated to lpv6_1/port3 and reaches the gate.

CLAT: The IP header is translated from lpv6_1/port3 to lpv4_1/port3.

4. The client sends the RTP over UDP media data:

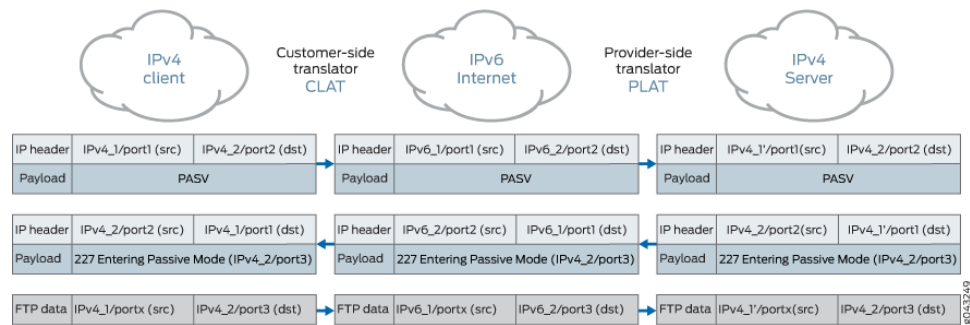
CLAT: The source address/port is translated from lpv4_1/port3 to lpv6_1/port3 and the destination address is translated from lpv4_2/port4 to lpv6_2/port4.

PLAT: The source address/port is translated from lpv6_1/port3 to lpv4_1'/port3 and the destination address is translated from lpv6_2/port4 to lpv4_2/port4.

How the FTP ALG Supports the Device Acting As PLAT

Figure 14 on page 146 and Figure 15 on page 146 describe the FTP ALG XLAT functionality in passive mode and port mode.

Figure 14: FTP Passive mode:



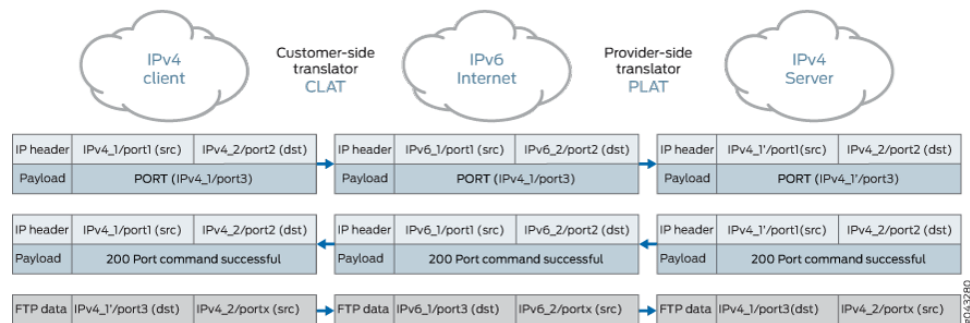
1. A 227 message enters passive mode:

CLAT: The source address/port is translated from lpv4_1/port1 to lpv6_1/port1. However, the payload does not contain IP or port information.

PLAT: The source address/port lpv4_1'/port1' is translated to lpv6_1/port1 and matches the NAT64 rule. However, the lpv4_2/port3 in the payload is not changed, and the FTP ALG creates a gate such as lpv4_1/0(lpv6_1/0)->lpv4_2/port3.

2. The first packet reaches the gate from the client side: When the traffic reaches the gate, the data packet from the client side with destination lpv4_2/port3 is translated to lpv6_2/port2. The IP header is translated to lpv4_2/port3 by NAT64 rule based on PLAT.

Figure 15: FTP Port Mode



1. FTP port mode sends a PORT message:

CLAT: The source address/port is translated from lpv4/port1 to lpv6/port1.

PLAT: The source address/port is lpv6_1/port1 is translated to lpv4_1'/port1' and matches the NAT64 rule. The lpv4_1/port2 in the payload is translated to lpv4_1'/port2'

and the FTP ALG creates a gate such as
Ipv4_1'/port2'(Ipv4_1/port2->server_ip/server_port.

2. **The first packet reaches the gate from the server side:** When the traffic reaches the gate, the first packet from the server side with destination Ipv4_1'/port2' is translated to Ipv6_1/port2. Finally, the packet reaches the client Ipv4_1/port2 before CLAT.

Release History Table

Release	Description
12.3X48-D15	Starting in Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D15 and Junos OS Release 17.3R1, the 464XLAT traffic is not supported in a none PAT pool with a persistent NAT pool.

**Related
Documentation**

- [Understanding IPv6 ALG Support for ICMP on page 140](#)

CHAPTER 3

VoIP ALGs

- [Understanding VoIP ALG Types on page 149](#)
- [VoIP DSCP Rewrite Rules on page 150](#)
- [H.323 ALG on page 152](#)
- [MGCP ALG on page 192](#)
- [SCCP ALG on page 225](#)
- [SIP ALG on page 248](#)

Understanding VoIP ALG Types

Junos OS supports voice-over-IP Application Layer Gateways (VoIP ALGs) and basic data ALGs. (Note that supported ALG types vary depending on which hardware device you are using.)

VoIP ALGs provide stateful Application Layer inspection and Network Address Translation (NAT) capabilities to VoIP signaling and media traffic. The ALG inspects the state of transactions, or calls, and forwards or drops packets based on those states.

Junos OS supports the following VoIP ALGs:

[Table 7 on page 149](#) lists the VoIP ALG types.

Table 7: VoIP-ALG-Types

VoIP ALG	Description
H.323	The H.323 ALG provides support for the H.323 legacy VoIP protocol. The ALG lets you secure VoIP communication between terminal hosts, such as IP phones and multimedia devices. In such a telephony system, the gatekeeper device manages call registration, admission, and call status for VoIP calls. Gatekeepers can reside in the two different zones or in the same zone.
MGCP	The MGCP ALG provides support for Media Gateway Control Protocol (MGCP). MGCP is a text-based Application Layer protocol used for call setup and call control between the media gateway and the media gateway controller (MGC).
SCCP	The SCCP ALG provides support for Skinny Client Control Protocol (SCCP). SCCP is a Cisco proprietary protocol for call signaling. Skinny is based on a call-agent-based call-control architecture. The control protocol uses binary-coded frames encoded on TCP frames sent to well-known TCP port number destinations to set up and tear down RTP media sessions.

Table 7: VoIP-ALG-Types (continued)

VoIP ALG	Description
SIP	The SIP ALG provides support for the Session Initiation Protocol (SIP). SIP is an Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF)-standard protocol for initiating, modifying, and terminating multimedia sessions over the Internet. Such sessions might include conferencing, telephony, or multimedia, with features such as instant messaging and application-level mobility in network environments.

For information about enabling and configuring each of these ALGs through J-Web, select the **Configure>Security>ALG** page in the J-Web user interface and click **Help**.

Related Documentation

- [ALG Overview on page 21](#)
- [Understanding the IKE and ESP ALG on page 47](#)
- [Understanding H.323 ALG on page 152](#)
- [Understanding the SIP ALG on page 248](#)
- [Understanding SCCP ALGs on page 225](#)
- [Understanding the MGCP ALG on page 192](#)
- [Understanding RPC ALGs on page 70](#)

VoIP DSCP Rewrite Rules

The Vo IP rewrite rules modifies the appropriate class of service (CoS) bits in an outgoing packets through Differentiated Services Code Point (DSCP) mechanism that improves the VoIP quality in a congested network. For more information, see the following topics:

- [Understanding VoIP DSCP Rewrite Rules on page 150](#)
- [Example: Configuring VoIP DSCP Rewrite Rules on page 151](#)

Understanding VoIP DSCP Rewrite Rules

This topic describes the voice over IP Application Layer Gateway (VoIP ALG) mechanism for modifying the Differentiated Services Code Point (DSCP) field of Real-Time Transport Protocol (RTP) packets. The VoIP ALG mechanism is applicable for the RTP session, which is recognized by the ALG.

DSCP is a modification of the type of service byte for class of service (CoS). Six bits of this byte are reallocated for use as the DSCP field, where each DSCP specifies a particular per-hop behavior that is applied to a packet.

A rewrite rule modifies the appropriate CoS bits in an outgoing packet to meet the requirements of the targeted peer. Each rewrite rule reads the current CoS value that is configured at the VoIP ALG level. Every packet that hits the VoIP ALG is marked by this CoS value.

This feature supports ALG DSCP marking for H323, Session Initiation Protocol (SIP), Media Gateway Control Protocol (MGCP), and Skinny Client Control Protocol (SCCP). It provides a 6-bit DSCP value configuration for each of these. When the first RTP packet hits the ALG, this feature receives the 6-bit DSCP value from the configuration and sets it to the RTP session that the packet has created. This first RTP packet and the following RTP packets passing through the RTP session are marked according to the 6-bit DSCP value in the session.

To avoid VoIP quality degradation caused by network congestion, the RTP packets are required to mark the DSCP bit to ensure they get higher routing priority. A downstream router can put those packets in a higher priority queue for faster forwarding. To provide this functionality, there needs to be a per-VoIP mechanism for modifying the DSCP field of RTP packets according to the specific configuration. This will ensure that all RTP packets based on User Datagram Protocol/Transport Control Protocol (UDP/TCP) that encounter the ALG will be assigned a specific DSCP bit.

Example: Configuring VoIP DSCP Rewrite Rules

This example shows how to configure VoIP DSCP.

- [Requirements on page 151](#)
- [Overview on page 151](#)
- [Configuration on page 151](#)
- [Verification on page 152](#)

Requirements

This example uses an SRX210 or SRX320 device. The example assumes that the VoIP ALG has been enabled. (Platform support depends on the Junos OS release in your installation.)

Overview

This example shows how to configure four ALG DSCP markings; SIP, H323, MGCP, and SCCP. You set the 6-bit DSCP value configuration for each ALG DSCP.

Configuration

Step-by-Step Procedure

To configure VoIP DSCP rewrite rules:

1. Set the DSCP for each VoIP ALG.

[edit]

```
user@host# set security alg sip dscp-rewrite code-point 101010
user@host# set security alg h323 dscp-rewrite code-point 010101
user@host# set security alg mgcp dscp-rewrite code-point 111000
user@host# set security alg sccp dscp-rewrite code-point 000111
```

2. If you are done configuring the device, commit the configuration.

[edit]

```
user@host# commit
```

Verification

To verify that the configuration is working properly, enter the **show security alg** command.

Related Documentation

- [MGCP ALG on page 192](#)
- [SCCP ALG on page 225](#)
- [SIP ALG on page 248](#)

H.323 ALG

The H.323 Application Layer Gateway (ALG) consist of a suit of H.225.0 and H.245 protocols to provide audio-visual communication session on any network. The H.323 ALG provides a secure communication between terminal hosts, such as IP phones and multimedia devices. For more information, see the following topics:

- [Understanding H.323 ALG on page 152](#)
- [Understanding the Avaya H.323 ALG on page 154](#)
- [Example: Passing H.323 ALG Traffic to a Gatekeeper in the Private Zone on page 156](#)
- [Example: Passing H.323 ALG Traffic to a Gatekeeper in the External Zone on page 161](#)
- [Example: Using NAT with the H.323 ALG to Enable Incoming Calls on page 167](#)
- [Example: Using NAT with the H.323 ALG to Enable Outgoing Calls on page 175](#)
- [Example: Setting H.323 ALG Endpoint Registration Timeouts on page 182](#)
- [Example: Setting H.323 ALG Media Source Port Ranges on page 183](#)
- [Example: Configuring H.323 ALG DoS Attack Protection on page 184](#)
- [Understanding H.323 ALG Known Message Types on page 185](#)
- [Understanding H.323 ALG Unknown Message Types on page 190](#)
- [Example: Allowing Unknown H.323 ALG Message Types on page 190](#)

Understanding H.323 ALG

The H.323 standard is a legacy voice-over-IP (VoIP) protocol defined by the International Telecommunication Union (ITU-T). H.323 consists of a suite of protocols (such as H.225.0 and H.245) that are used for call signaling and call control for VoIP.

H.323 uses the ASN.1 coding format. It sets up the dynamic links for data, video, and audio streams, following the protocols Q.931 (with port number 1720) and H.245. There are three major processes in H.323:

- **Gatekeeper Discovery**—An endpoint finds its gatekeeper through the gatekeeper discovery process, via broadcast or unicast to a known IP and the well-known UDP port 1719. Note that Junos OS only supports unicast discovery.
- **Endpoint Registration, Admission, and Status**—An endpoint registers to a gatekeeper and asks for its management. Before making a call, an endpoint asks its gatekeeper for permission to place the call. In both registration and admission phases, the

Registration, Admission, and Status (RAS) channel is used. The Transport Service Access Point (TSAP) can utilize either the well-known UDP port (1719) or a dynamically assigned port from the discovery or registration phase and an IP address.

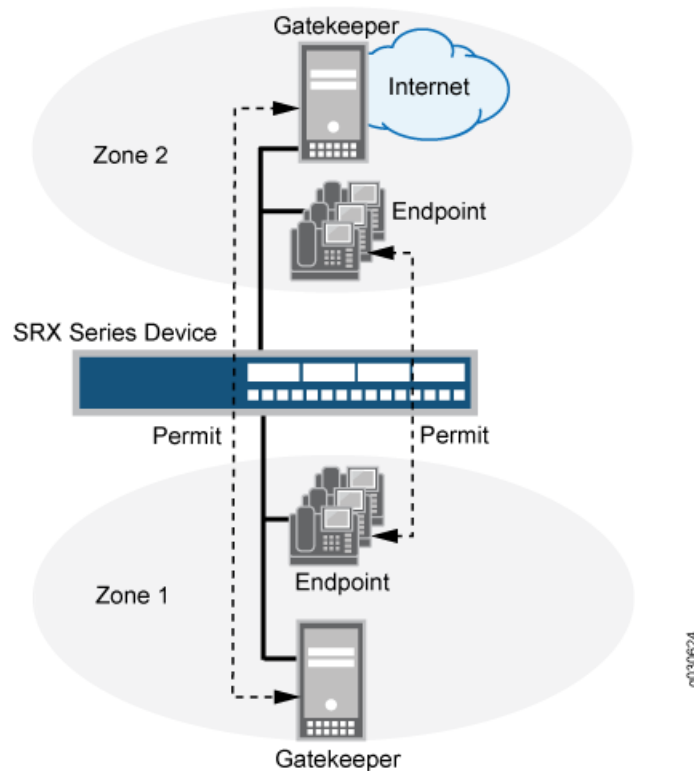
- **Call Control and Call Setup**—Calls can be established within a zone or across two zones, or even across multiple zones (multipoint conference). The call setup and tear down is performed through the call signaling channel whose TSAP is the well-known TCP port (1720). The call control, including opening/closing media channels between two endpoints, is performed through the call control channel whose TSAP is dynamically assigned from the previous call signaling process. H.245 messages are used in the call control channel, and are encoded using ASN.1.



NOTE: Detailed information on H.323 can be found in ITU-T Recommendation H.323.

The H.323 Application Layer Gateway (ALG) of the device lets you secure VoIP communication between terminal hosts, such as IP phones and multimedia devices. In such a telephony system, the gatekeeper device manages call registration, admission, and call status for VoIP calls. Gatekeepers can reside in the two different zones or in the same zone. (See [Figure 16 on page 153](#).)

Figure 16: H.323 ALG for VoIP Calls





NOTE: The illustration uses IP phones for illustrative purposes, although it is possible to make configurations for other hosts that use VoIP, such as Microsoft NetMeeting multimedia devices.

Starting with Junos OS Release 17.4R1, the gateway-to-gateway call feature is supported on the H.323 Application Layer Gateway (ALG). This feature introduces one-to-many mapping between an H.225 control session and H.323 calls as multiple H.323 calls go through a single control session.

Starting with Junos OS Release 17.4R1, the H.323 Application Layer Gateway (ALG) supports NAT64 rules in an IPv6 network.

H.323 ALG Configuration Overview

The H.323 Application Layer Gateway (ALG) is enabled by default on the device—no action is required to enable it. However, you might choose to fine-tune H.323 ALG operations by using the following instructions:

1. Specify how long an endpoint registration entry remains in the Network Address Translation (NAT) table. For instructions, see [“Example: Setting H.323 ALG Endpoint Registration Timeouts” on page 182](#).
2. Enable media traffic on a narrow or wide range of ports. For instructions, see [“Example: Setting H.323 ALG Media Source Port Ranges” on page 183](#).
3. Protect the H.323 gatekeeper from denial-of-service (DoS) flood attacks. For instructions, see [“Example: Configuring H.323 ALG DoS Attack Protection” on page 184](#).
4. Enable unknown messages to pass when the session is in NAT mode and route mode. For instructions, see [“Example: Allowing Unknown H.323 ALG Message Types” on page 190](#).

Understanding the Avaya H.323 ALG

The H.323 standard is a legacy voice-over-IP (VoIP) protocol defined by the International Telecommunication Union (ITU-T). H.323 consists of a suite of protocols (such as H.225.0 and H.245) that are used for call signaling and call control for VoIP. The processes for configuring the H.323 standard Application Layer Gateway (ALG) and the proprietary Avaya H.323 ALG are the same.

However, Avaya H.323 ALG has some special features. To understand and configure the Avaya H.323-specific features listed here, see the *Administrator Guide for Avaya Communication Manager*, *Avaya IP Telephony Implementation Guide*, and *Avaya Application Solutions IP Telephony Deployment Guide* at <http://support.avaya.com>.

This topic contains the following sections:

- [Avaya H.323 ALG-Specific Features on page 155](#)
- [Call Flow Details in the Avaya H.323 ALG on page 155](#)

Avaya H.323 ALG-Specific Features

Avaya H.323-specific features are as follows:

- H.323 Fast Connect
- H.323 asymmetric media
- Call waiting
- Call forwarding
- Voice mail
- Call identification
- Conference calling

Call Flow Details in the Avaya H.323 ALG

- Connecting the Phone into the Network—Avaya performs the Q.931 Setup/Connect negotiation when the phone is wired into the network rather than when a call is being initiated.
- Making a call—When a call is made, because the PBX has already stored the capabilities for each phone when the phone is connected to the network, no further Q.931 and PBX negotiations are required to set up the call. It no longer exchanges Q.931 Setup and Connect messages with the PBX. The phone and the PBX exchange H.323 Facility messages to set up the call.
- Registering with a CM—When a call has been made, Avaya H.323 registers with the Avaya Communication Manager (CM). The registration process is similar to a generic H.323 standard registration process.



NOTE: The direct mode and tunnel mode are not defined by Avaya H.323 ALG.

For a call to work, the CM must be deployed with Avaya Endpoints. During the call, RAS and Q.931 messages are exchanged between the CM and the Avaya Endpoints.



NOTE: For Avaya H.323 with a source Network Address Translation (NAT) pool, the registration process allows only one IP address in the pool.

- Setting up Real-Time Transport Protocol (RTP)/Real-Time Control Protocol (RTCP) ports—The Q.931 Setup, Facility and Information messages are used to set up RTP/RTCP ports. The hierarchy for an Avaya H.323 session is Q.931, RTP/RTCP, Parent, and then Child.



NOTE: H.245 ports are not used in an Avaya call flow process.

- Using Avaya H.323 counters—The counters for calls and active calls are not applicable to the Avaya H.323 ALG. The call creation and tearing down is done by Facility messages afterward. When resources are allocated for a call, all counters for calls and active calls increment. If resources are allocated for a call multiple times, messages belonging to the same call that pass the firewall multiple times will trigger multiple increments of the counters. In other words, messages that belong to the same call and pass the firewall multiple times might trigger multiple increments of the counters if the resource for a call needs to be allocated multiple times.

For example, in the two-zone case, the setup and connect message pair allocates one call resource. The active call counter is increased once. Each time the setup and connect message pair passes the firewall, a different call resource with unique interfaces and NAT is allocated. Therefore, the counter increments twice in a three-zone scenario.

Example: Passing H.323 ALG Traffic to a Gatekeeper in the Private Zone

This example shows how to set up two policies that allow H.323 traffic to pass between IP phone hosts and a gatekeeper in the private zone, and an IP phone host (2.2.2.5/32) in the public zone.

- [Requirements on page 156](#)
- [Overview on page 156](#)
- [Configuration on page 157](#)
- [Verification on page 160](#)

Requirements

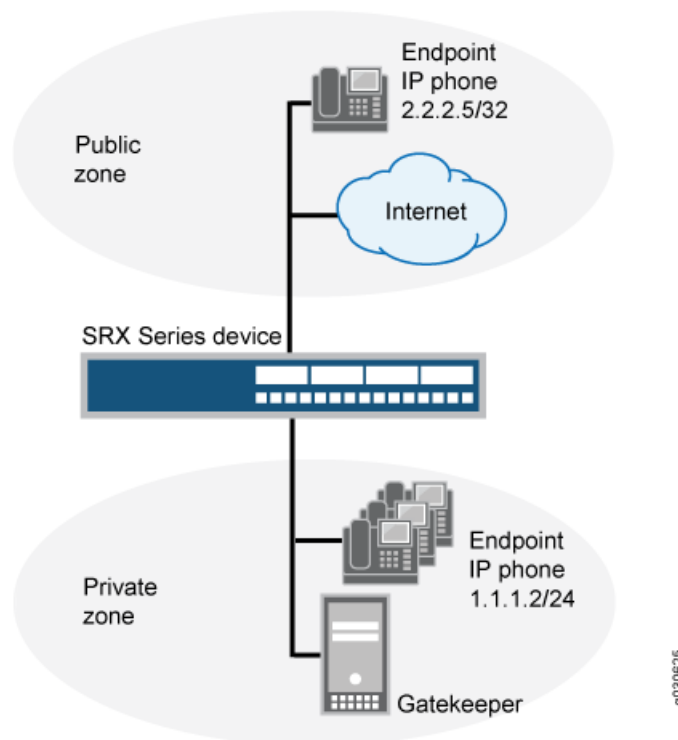
Before you begin:

- Understand and configure any Avaya H.323-specific features. See the *Administrator Guide for Avaya Communication Manager*, *Avaya IP Telephony Implementation Guide*, and *Avaya Application Solutions IP Telephony Deployment Guide* at <http://support.avaya.com>.
- Configure security zones. See *Understanding Security Zones*.

Overview

This example shows how to set up two policies that allow H.323 traffic to pass between IP phone hosts and a gatekeeper in the private zone, and an IP phone host (2.2.2.5/32) in the public zone. The connection to the device can either be with or without NAT. See [Figure 17 on page 157](#).

Figure 17: H.323 Gatekeeper in the Private Zone



Configuration

CLI Quick Configuration

To quickly configure this section of the example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set security zones security-zone public address-book address ip_phone 2.2.2.5/32
set security zones security-zone private address-book address gateway 2.2.2.5/32
set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy P1 match source-address
any
set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy P1 match destination-address
IP_Phone
set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy P1 match application
junos-h323
set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy P1 then permit
set security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy P2 match source-address
any
set security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy P2 match destination-address
gateway
set security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy P2 match application
junos-h323
set security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy P2 then permit
```

Step-by-Step Procedure The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode in the CLI User Guide.

To configure the device to pass H.323 ALG traffic to a gatekeeper in the private zone:

1. Configure two address books.

[edit]

```
user@host# set security zones security-zone public address-book address ip_phone 2.2.2.5/32
```

```
set security zones security-zone private address-book address gateway 2.2.2.5/32
```

2. Configure policy P1 from the private zone to the public zone.

[edit]

```
user@host# set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy P1 match source-address any
```

```
user@host# set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy P1 match destination-address IP_Phone
```

```
user@host# set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy P1 match application junos-h323
```

```
user@host# set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy P1 then permit
```

3. Configure policy P2 from the public zone to the private zone.

[edit]

```
user@host# set security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy P2 match source-address any
```

```
user@host# set security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy P2 match destination-address gateway
```

```
user@host# set security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy P2 match application junos-h323
```

```
user@host# set security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy P2 then permit
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show security policies** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

For brevity, this show output includes only the configuration that is relevant to this example. Any other configuration on the system has been replaced with ellipses (...).

```
[edit]
user@host# show security policies
...
from-zone trust to-zone trust {
  policy default-permit {
    match {
      source-address any;
      destination-address any;
      application any;
    }
    then {
      permit;
    }
  }
}
from-zone trust to-zone untrust {
  policy default-permit {
    match {
      source-address any;
      destination-address any;
      application any;
    }
    then {
      permit;
    }
  }
}
from-zone untrust to-zone trust {
  policy default-deny {
    match {
      source-address any;
      destination-address any;
      application any;
    }
    then {
      deny;
    }
  }
}
from-zone private to-zone public {
  policy P1 {
    match {
      source-address any;
      destination-address IP_Phone;
      application junos-h323;
    }
    then {
      permit;
    }
  }
}
from-zone public to-zone private {
  policy P2 {
    match {
      source-address any;
      destination-address gateway;
      application junos-h323;
    }
  }
}
```

```

        then {
            permit;
        }
    }
}
...

```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Verification

To confirm that the configuration is working properly, perform this task:

- [Verifying H.323 ALG Configurations on page 160](#)

Verifying H.323 ALG Configurations

Purpose Display information about active calls.



NOTE: H.323 counters for calls and active calls in the output to this **show security** command do not apply to the proprietary Avaya implementation of H.323. This is because Q.931 setup and connect messages are exchanged right after the phone is powered up and call creation and tear down is done by Facility messages.

Counters for calls and active calls are increased when the resources allocated for calls are increased—that is, messages belonging to the same call and that pass the firewall multiple times increment the counters. This applies when resources for a call need to be allocated multiple times. For example, in a two-zone scenario the setup and connect message pair allocates one call resource, and the active call counter is increased by one. But in a three-zone scenario the setup and connect message pair passes the firewall twice, each time allocating different call resources. In this case, the counter is incremented.

Action From the J-Web interface, select **Monitor>ALGs>H323**. Alternatively, from the CLI, enter the **show security alg h323 counters** command.

Counters for H.245 messages received also will not be accurate in the case of H.245 tunneling. Because H.245 messages are encapsulated in Q.931 packets, the counter for H.245 messages received will remain zero even when there are H.245 messages. The **Other H245** counter will, however, reflect these packet transmissions.

```

[edit]
user@host> show security alg h323 counters
H.323 counters summary:
  Packets received      : 0
  Packets dropped       : 0
  RAS message received  : 0
  Q.931 message received : 0

```

```
H.245 message received : 0
Number of calls         : 0
Number of active calls  : 0
H.323 error counters:
Decoding errors         : 0
Message flood dropped   : 0
NAT errors              : 0
Resource manager errors : 0
H.323 message counters:
RRQ                     : 0
RCF                     : 0
ARQ                     : 0
ACF                     : 0
URQ                     : 0
UCF                     : 0
DRQ                     : 0
DCF                     : 0
Oth RAS                 : 0
Setup                  : 0
Alert                  : 0
Connect                : 0
CallProd               : 0
Info                   : 0
RelCmpl                : 0
Facility               : 0
Empty                  : 0
OLC                    : 0
OLC-ACK                : 0
Oth H245               : 0
```

Example: Passing H.323 ALG Traffic to a Gatekeeper in the External Zone

This example shows how to set up two policies to allow H.323 traffic to pass between IP phone hosts in the internal zone, and the IP phone at IP address 2.2.2.5/32 (and the gatekeeper) in the external zone.

- [Requirements on page 161](#)
- [Overview on page 162](#)
- [Configuration on page 162](#)
- [Verification on page 165](#)

Requirements

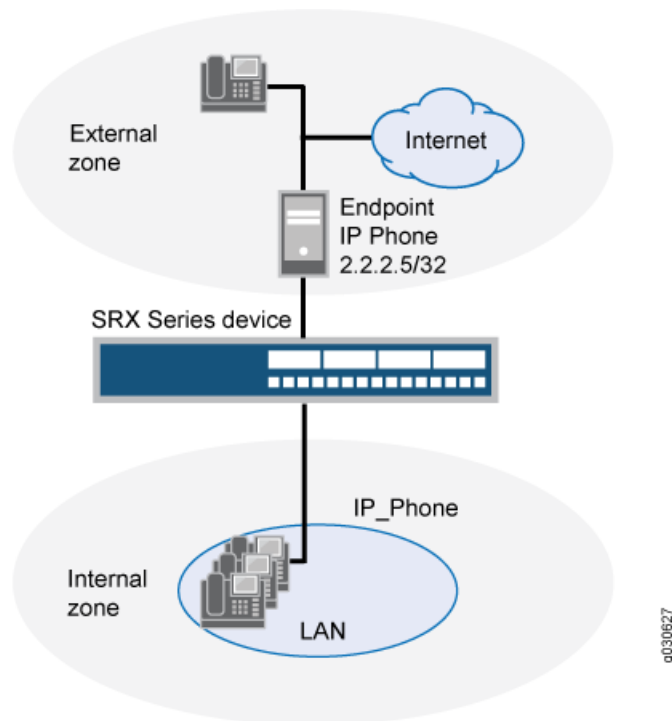
Before you begin:

- Understand and configure any Avaya H.323-specific features. See the *Administrator Guide for Avaya Communication Manager*, *Avaya IP Telephony Implementation Guide*, and *Avaya Application Solutions IP Telephony Deployment Guide* at <http://support.avaya.com>.
- Configure security zones. See *Understanding Security Zones*.

Overview

Because route mode does not require address mapping of any kind, a device configuration for a gatekeeper in the external, or public, zone is usually identical to the configuration for a gatekeeper in an internal, or private, zone. This example shows how to set up two policies to allow H.323 traffic to pass between IP phone hosts in the internal zone, and the IP phone at IP address 2.2.2.5/32 (and the gatekeeper) in the external zone. The device can be in transparent or route mode. See [Figure 18 on page 162](#).

Figure 18: H.323 Gatekeeper in the External Zone



Configuration

CLI Quick Configuration

To quickly configure this section of the example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set security zones security-zone external address-book address IP_Phone 2.2.2.5/32
set security zones security-zone internal address-book address gatekeeper 2.2.2.10/32
set security policies from-zone internal to-zone external policy P1 match source-address
any
set security policies from-zone internal to-zone external policy P1 match
destination-address IP_Phone
set security policies from-zone internal to-zone external policy P1 match application
junos-h323
set security policies from-zone internal to-zone external policy P1 then permit
set security policies from-zone internal to-zone external policy P2 match source-address
any
```

```

set security policies from-zone internal to-zone external policy P2 match
  destination-address gatekeeper
set security policies from-zone internal to-zone external policy P2 match application
  junos-h323
set security policies from-zone internal to-zone external policy P2 then permit
set security policies from-zone external to-zone internal policy P3 match source-address
  IP_Phone
set security policies from-zone external to-zone internal policy P3 match
  destination-address any
set security policies from-zone external to-zone internal policy P3 match application
  junos-h323
set security policies from-zone external to-zone internal policy P3 then permit
set security policies from-zone external to-zone internal policy P4 match source-address
  gatekeeper
set security policies from-zone external to-zone internal policy P4 match
  destination-address any
set security policies from-zone external to-zone internal policy P4 match application
  junos-h323
set security policies from-zone external to-zone internal policy P4 then permit

```

**Step-by-Step
Procedure**

The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode* in the CLI User Guide.

To configure the device to pass H.323 ALG traffic to a gatekeeper in the external zone:

1. Configure two address books.

```

[edit]
user@host# set security zones security-zone external address-book address
  IP_Phone 2.2.2.5/32
user@host# set security zones security-zone internal address-book address
  gatekeeper 2.2.2.10/32

```

2. Configure policy P1 from the internal zone to the external zone.

```

[edit]
user@host# set security policies from-zone internal to-zone external policy P1 match
  source-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone internal to-zone external policy P1 match
  destination-address IP_Phone
user@host# set security policies from-zone internal to-zone external policy P1 match
  application junos-h323
user@host# set security policies from-zone internal to-zone external policy P1 then
  permit

```

3. Configure policy P2 to allow traffic between the internal zone and the gatekeeper in the external zone.

```

[edit]
user@host# set security policies from-zone internal to-zone external policy P2 match
  source-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone internal to-zone external policy P2 match
  destination-address gatekeeper

```

```
user@host# set security policies from-zone internal to-zone external policy P2 match
application junos-h323
user@host# set security policies from-zone internal to-zone external policy P2 then
permit
```

4. Configure policy P3 to allow traffic between phones in the internal zone and the external zone.

```
[edit]
user@host# set security policies from-zone external to-zone internal policy P3 match
source-address IP_Phone
user@host# set security policies from-zone external to-zone internal policy P3 match
destination-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone external to-zone internal policy P3 match
application junos-h323
user@host# set security policies from-zone external to-zone internal policy P3 then
permit
```

5. Configure policy P4 to allow traffic between phones in the internal zone and the gatekeeper in the external zone.

```
[edit]
user@host# set security policies from-zone external to-zone internal policy P4
match source-address gatekeeper
user@host# set security policies from-zone external to-zone internal policy P4
match destination-address any
user@host# set security policies from-zone external to-zone internal policy P4
match application junos-h323
user@host# set security policies from-zone external to-zone internal policy P4 then
permit
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show security policies** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

For brevity, this show output includes only the configuration that is relevant to this example. Any other configuration on the system has been replaced with ellipses (...).

```
[edit]
user@host# show security policies
...
from-zone internal to-zone external {
  policy P1 {
    match {
      source-address any;
      destination-address IP_Phone;
      application junos-h323;
    }
    then {
      permit;
    }
  }
  policy P2 {
    match {
```

```

        source-address any;
        destination-address gatekeeper;
        application junos-h323;
    }
    then {
        permit;
    }
}
}
from-zone external to-zone internal {
    policy P3 {
        match {
            source-address IP_Phone;
            destination-address any;
            application junos-h323;
        }
        then {
            permit;
        }
    }
    policy P4 {
        match {
            source-address gatekeeper;
            destination-address any;
            application junos-h323;
        }
        then {
            permit;
        }
    }
}
...

```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Verification

To confirm that the configuration is working properly, perform this task:

- [Verifying H.323 ALG Configurations on page 165](#)

Verifying H.323 ALG Configurations

Purpose Display information about active calls.



NOTE: H.323 counters for calls and active calls in the output to this show security command do not apply to the proprietary Avaya implementation of H.323. This is because Q.931 setup and connect messages are exchanged right after the phone is powered up and call creation and tear down is done by Facility messages.

Counters for calls and active calls are increased when the resources allocated for calls are increased—that is, messages belonging to the same call and that pass the firewall multiple times increment the counters. This applies when resources for a call need to be allocated multiple times. For example, in a two-zone scenario the setup and connect message pair allocates one call resource, and the active call counter is increased by one. But in a three-zone scenario the setup and connect message pair passes the firewall twice, each time allocating different call resources. In this case, the counter is incremented.

Action From the J-Web interface, select **Monitor>ALGs>H323**. Alternatively, from the CLI, enter the **show security alg h323 counters** command.

Counters for H.245 messages received also will not be accurate in the case of H.245 tunneling. Because H.245 messages are encapsulated in Q.931 packets, the counter for H.245 messages received will remain zero even when there are H.245 messages. The **Other H245** counter will, however, reflect these packet transmissions.

```
[edit]
user@host> show security alg h323 counters
```

```
H.323 counters summary:
  Packets received      : 0
  Packets dropped       : 0
  RAS message received  : 0
  Q.931 message received : 0
  H.245 message received : 0
  Number of calls       : 0
  Number of active calls : 0
H.323 error counters:
  Decoding errors       : 0
  Message flood dropped  : 0
  NAT errors            : 0
  Resource manager errors : 0
H.323 message counters:
  RRQ      : 0
  RCF      : 0
  ARQ      : 0
  ACF      : 0
  URQ      : 0
  UCF      : 0
  DRQ      : 0
  DCF      : 0
  Oth RAS  : 0
  Setup    : 0
  Alert    : 0
  Connect  : 0
```

```
CallProd : 0
Info      : 0
RelCmpl   : 0
Facility  : 0
Empty     : 0
OLC       : 0
OLC-ACK   : 0
Oth H245  : 0
```

Example: Using NAT with the H.323 ALG to Enable Incoming Calls

This example shows how to configure NAT with the H.323 ALG to enable calls from a public to a private network.

- [Requirements on page 167](#)
- [Overview on page 167](#)
- [Configuration on page 168](#)
- [Verification on page 173](#)

Requirements

Before you begin, understand H.323 ALGs. See [“Understanding H.323 ALG” on page 152](#).

Overview

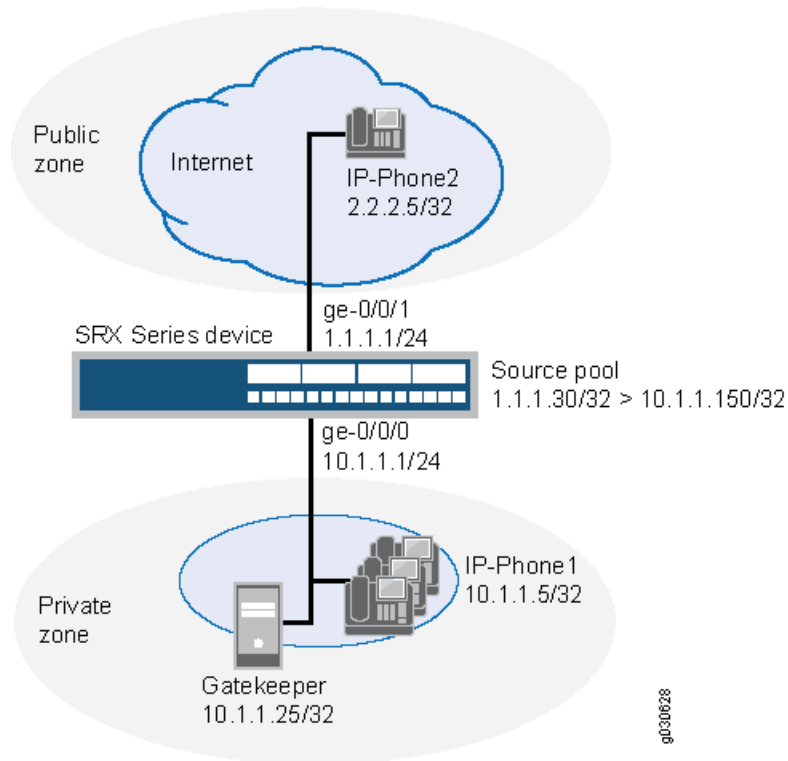
In a two-zone scenario with a server in the private zone, you can use NAT for incoming calls by configuring a NAT pool on the interface to the public zone.

In this example (see [Figure 19 on page 168](#)), IP-Phone1 and a server called gatekeeper are in the private zone, and IP-Phone2 is in the public zone. You configure a static nat rule set and a source NAT pool to do NAT. You also create two policies, private-to-public and public-to-private, to permit ALG H.323 traffic from and to the private and public zones.

Topology

Figure 19 on page 168 shows NAT with the H.323 ALG incoming calls.

Figure 19: NAT with the H.323 ALG—Incoming Calls



In this example, you configure source NAT as follows:

- Create a static NAT rule set called `gatekeeper` with a rule called `gatekeeper` to match packets from the public zone with the destination address `1.1.1.25/32`. For matching packets, the destination IP address is translated to the private address `10.1.1.25/32`.
- Define a source NAT pool called `h323-nat-pool` to contain the IP address range from `1.1.1.30/32` through `1.1.1.150/32`.
- Create a source NAT rule set called `h323-nat` with rule `h323-r1` to match packets from the private zone to the public zone with the source IP address `10.1.1.0/24`. For matching packets, the source address is translated to the IP address in `h323-nat-pool`.
- Configure proxy ARP for the addresses `1.1.1.30/32` through `1.1.1.150/32` on interface `ge-0/0/1.0`. This allows the system to respond to ARP requests received on the interface for these addresses.

Configuration

CLI Quick Configuration

To quickly configure this section of the example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your

network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set interfaces ge-0/0/0 unit 0 family inet address 10.1.1.1/24
set interfaces ge-0/0/1 unit 0 family inet address 1.1.1.1/24
set security zones security-zone private address-book address IP-Phone1 10.1.1.5/32
set security zones security-zone private address-book address gatekeeper 10.1.1.25/32
set security zones security-zone private interfaces ge-0/0/0.0
set security zones security-zone public address-book address IP-Phone2 2.2.2.5/32
set security zones security-zone public interfaces ge-0/0/1.0
set security nat source pool h323-nat-pool address 1.1.1.30/32 to 1.1.1.150/32
set security nat source address-persistent
set security nat source rule-set h323-nat from zone private
set security nat source rule-set h323-nat rule h323-r1 match source-address 10.1.1.0/24
set security nat source rule-set h323-nat rule h323-r1 then source-nat pool h323-nat-pool
set security nat proxy-arp interface ge-0/0/1.0 address 1.1.1.30/32 to 1.1.1.150/32
set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy private-to-public match
  source-address IP-Phone1
set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy private-to-public match
  source-address gatekeeper
set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy private-to-public match
  destination-address IP-Phone2
set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy private-to-public match
  application junos-h323
set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy private-to-public then permit
set security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy public-to-private match
  source-address IP-Phone2
set security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy public-to-private match
  destination-address IP-Phone1
set security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy public-to-private match
  destination-address gatekeeper
set security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy public-to-private match
  application junos-h323
set security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy public-to-private then permit
```

Step-by-Step Procedure

The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode* in the CLI User Guide.

To configure NAT with H.323 ALG to enable calls from a public to a private network:

1. Configure interfaces.

```
[edit]
user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/0 unit 0 family inet address 10.1.1.1/24
user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/1 unit 0 family inet address 1.1.1.1/24
```

2. Configure zones and assign addresses to them.

```
[edit security zones]
user@host# set security-zone private interfaces ge-0/0/0.0
user@host# set security-zone private address-book address IP-Phone1 10.1.1.5/32
user@host# set security-zone private address-book address gatekeeper 10.1.1.25/32
user@host# set security-zone public interfaces ge-0/0/1.0
```

```
user@host# set security-zone public address-book address IP-Phone2 2.2.2.5/32
```

3. Create a static NAT rule set.

```
[edit security nat static rule-set ip-phones]
user@host# set from zone public
user@host# set match destination-address 1.1.1.25/32
user@host# set then static-nat prefix 10.1.1.25/32
```

4. Configure proxy ARP.

```
[edit security nat]
user@host# set proxy-arp interface ge-0/0/1.0 address 1.1.1.25/32
```

5. Configure a source NAT rule set.

```
[edit security nat]
set source pool h323-nat-pool address 1.1.1.30/32 to 1.1.1.150/32
set source address-persistent
set source rule-set h323-nat from zone private
set source rule-set h323-nat to zone public
set source rule-set h323-nat rule h323-r1 match source-address 10.1.1.0/24
set source rule-set h323-nat rule h323-r1 then source-nat pool h323-nat-pool
set proxy-arp interface ge-0/0/1.0 address 1.1.1.30/32 to 1.1.1.150/32
```

6. Configure policies for outgoing traffic.

```
[edit security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy private-to-public]
user@host# set match source-address IP-Phone1
user@host# set match source-address gatekeeper
user@host# set match destination-address IP-Phone2
user@host# set match application junos-h323
user@host# set then permit
```

7. Configure policies for incoming traffic.

```
[edit security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy public-to-private]
user@host# set match source-address IP-Phone2
user@host# set match destination-address IP-Phone1
user@host# set match destination-address gatekeeper
user@host# set match application junos-h323
user@host# set then permit
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show interfaces**, **show security zones**, **show security nat**, and **show security policies** commands. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
[edit]
user@host# show interfaces
ge-0/0/0 {
  unit 0 {
    family inet {
```

```

        address 10.1.1.1/24;
    }
}
ge-0/0/1 {
    unit 0 {
        family inet {
            address 1.1.1.1/24;
        }
    }
}
[edit]
user@host# show security zones
security-zone private {
    address-book {
        address IP-Phone1 10.1.1.5/32;
        address gatekeeper 10.1.1.25/32;
    }
    interfaces {
        ge-0/0/0.0;
    }
}
security-zone public {
    address-book {
        address IP-Phone2 2.2.2.5/32;
    }
    interfaces {
        ge-0/0/1.0;
    }
}
[edit]
user@host# show security nat
source {
    pool h323-nat-pool {
        address {
            1.1.1.30/32 to 1.1.1.150/32;
        }
    }
    address-persistent;
    rule-set h323-nat {
        from zone private;
        to zone public;
        rule h323-r1 {
            match {
                source-address 10.1.1.0/24;
            }
            then {
                source-nat {
                    pool {
                        h323-nat-pool;
                    }
                }
            }
        }
    }
}
}

```

```
proxy-arp {
  interface ge-0/0/1.0 {
    address {
      1.1.1.30/32 to 1.1.1.150/32;
    }
  }
}
static {
  rule-set ip-phones {
    from zone public;
    rule gatekeeper {
      match {
        destination-address 1.1.1.25/32;
      }
      then {
        static-nat prefix 10.1.1.25/32;
      }
    }
  }
}
proxy-arp {
  interface ge-0/0/1.0 {
    address {
      1.1.1.25/32;
    }
  }
}
[edit]
user@host# show security policies
from-zone private to-zone public {
  policy private-to-public {
    match {
      source-address [IP-Phone1 gatekeeper];
      destination-address IP-Phone2;
      application junos-h323;
    }
    then {
      permit;
    }
  }
}
from-zone public to-zone private {
  policy public-to-private {
    match {
      source-address IP-Phone2;
      destination-address [IP-Phone1 gatekeeper];
      application junos-h323;
    }
    then {
      permit;
    }
  }
}
```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Verification

To confirm that the configuration is working properly, perform these tasks:

- [Verifying H.323 ALG Status on page 173](#)
- [Verifying Security ALG H.323 Counters on page 173](#)
- [Verifying Source NAT Rule Usage on page 174](#)

Verifying H.323 ALG Status

Purpose Verify that H.323 ALG is enabled on your system.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security alg status** command.

```
user@host> show security alg status
ALG Status :
  DNS      : Enabled
  FTP      : Enabled
  H323     : Enabled
  MGCP     : Enabled
  MSRPC    : Enabled
  PPTP     : Enabled
  RSH      : Disabled
  RTSP     : Enabled
  SCCP     : Enabled
  SIP      : Enabled
  SQL      : Enabled
  SUNRPC   : Enabled
  TALK     : Enabled
  TFTP     : Enabled
  IKE-ESP  : Disabled
```

Meaning The output shows the H323 ALG status as follows:

- Enabled—Shows the H323 ALG is enabled.
- Disabled—Shows the H323 ALG is disabled.

Verifying Security ALG H.323 Counters

Purpose Verify that there is a security counters for ALG H323.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security alg h323 counters** command.

```
user@host> show security alg h323 counters

H.323 counters summary:
Packets received :4060
Packets dropped :24
RAS message received :3690
Q.931 message received :202
H.245 message received :145
```

```
Number of calls :25
Number of active calls :0

H.323 Error Counters:
Decoding errors :24
Message flood dropped :0
NAT errors :0
Resource manager errors :0

H.323 Message Counters:
RRQ : 431
RCF : 49
ARQ : 60
ACF : 33
URQ : 34
UCF : 25
DRQ : 55
DCF : 44
oth RAS : 2942
Setup : 28
Alert : 9
Connect : 25
CallPrcd : 18
Info : 0
RelCmpl : 39
Facility : 14
Progress : 0
Empty : 65
OLC : 20
OLC-ACK : 20
```

Meaning The sample output gives the rundown of security ALG H.323 counters expressing that, there are security counters for ALG H323.

Verifying Source NAT Rule Usage

Purpose Verify that there is traffic matching the source NAT rule.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security nat source rule all** command. View the Translation hits field to check for traffic that matches the rule.

```
user@host> show security nat source rule all
source NAT rule: h323-r1      Rule-set: h323-nat
Rule-Id                      : 1
Rule position                 : 1
From zone                    : private
To zone                      : public
Match
  Source addresses            : 0.0.0.0          - 255.255.255.255
  Destination port            : 0                - 0
Action                        : interface
Persistent NAT type           : N/A
Persistent NAT mapping type   : address-port-mapping
Inactivity timeout            : 0
Max session number            : 0
Translation hits               : 0
```

```
Successful sessions      : 0
Failed sessions         : 0
Number of sessions      : 0
```

Meaning The **Translation hits** field shows that, there is no traffic matching the source NAT rule.

Example: Using NAT with the H.323 ALG to Enable Outgoing Calls

This example shows how to configure static NAT with H.323 ALG to enable calls from a private to a public network.

- [Requirements on page 175](#)
- [Overview on page 175](#)
- [Configuration on page 176](#)
- [Verification on page 180](#)

Requirements

Before you begin, understand the H.323 ALG and its processes. See “[Understanding H.323 ALG](#)” on page 152.

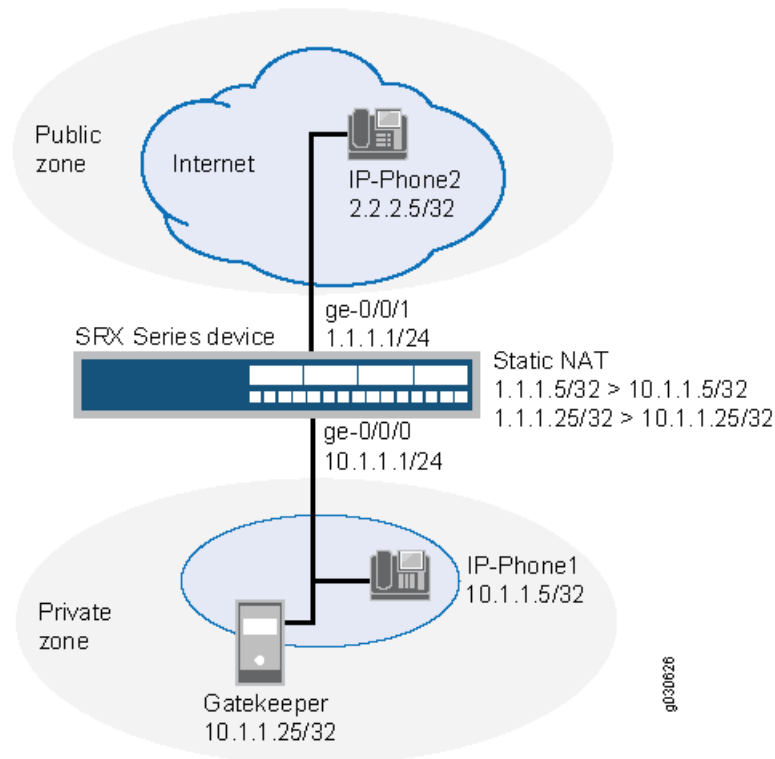
Overview

In this example (see [Figure 20 on page 176](#)), IP-Phone 1 and a server called gatekeeper are in the private zone and IP-Phone2 is in the public zone. You configure static NAT to enable IP-Phone1 and gatekeeper to call IP-Phone2 in the public zone. You then create a policy called public-to-private to allow ALG H.323 traffic from the public zone to the private zone and a policy called private-to-public to allow ALG H.323 traffic from the private zone to the public zone.

Topology

Figure 20 on page 176 shows NAT with the H.323 ALG outgoing calls.

Figure 20: NAT with the H.323 ALG—Outgoing Calls



In this example, you configure static NAT as follows:

- Create a static NAT rule set called `ip-phones` with a rule called `phone1` to match packets from the public zone with the destination address `1.1.1.5/32`. For matching packets, the destination IP address is translated to the private address `10.1.1.5/32`.
- Define a second rule called `gatekeeper` to match packets from the public zone with the destination address `1.1.1.25/32`. For matching packets, the destination IP address is translated to the private address `10.1.1.25/32`.
- Create proxy ARP for the addresses `1.1.1.5/32` and `1.1.1.25/32` on interface `ge-0/0/1`. This allows the system to respond to ARP requests received on the specified interface for these addresses.

Configuration

CLI Quick Configuration

To quickly configure this section of the example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set interfaces ge-0/0/0 unit 0 family inet address 10.1.1.1/24
```

```

set interfaces ge-0/0/1 unit 0 family inet address 1.1.1/24
set security zones security-zone private address-book address IP-Phone1 10.1.1.5/32
set security zones security-zone private address-book address gatekeeper 10.1.1.25/32
set security zones security-zone private interfaces ge-0/0/0.0
set security zones security-zone public address-book address IP-Phone2 2.2.2.5/32
set security zones security-zone public interfaces ge-0/0/1.0
set security nat static rule-set ip-phones from zone public
set security nat static rule-set ip-phones rule phone1 match destination-address 1.1.1.5/32
set security nat static rule-set ip-phones rule phone1 then static-nat prefix 10.1.1.5/32
set security nat static rule-set ip-phones rule gatekeeper match destination-address
  1.1.1.25/32
set security nat static rule-set ip-phones rule gatekeeper then static-nat prefix 10.1.1.25/32
set security nat proxy-arp interface ge-0/0/1.0 address 1.1.1.5/32
set security nat proxy-arp interface ge-0/0/1.0 address 1.1.1.25/32
set security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy public-to-private match
  source-address IP-Phone2
set security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy public-to-private match
  destination-address gatekeeper
set security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy public-to-private match
  application junos-h323
set security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy public-to-private then permit
set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy private-to-public match
  source-address IP-Phone1
set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy private-to-public match
  source-address gatekeeper
set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy private-to-public match
  destination-address IP-Phone2
set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy private-to-public match
  application junos-h323
set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy private-to-public then permit

```

Step-by-Step Procedure

The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode* in the CLI User Guide.

To configure static NAT with the H.323 ALG to enable calls from a private to a public network:

1. Configure interfaces.

```

user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/0 unit 0 family inet address 10.1.1.1/24
user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/1 unit 0 family inet address 1.1.1.1/24

```

2. Create zones and assign addresses to them.

```

[edit security zones]
user@host# set security-zone private interfaces ge-0/0/0.0
user@host# set security-zone public interfaces ge-0/0/1.0
user@host# set security-zone private address-book address IP-Phone1 10.1.1.5/32
user@host# set security-zone private address-book address gatekeeper 10.1.1.25/32
user@host# set security-zone public address-book address IP-Phone2 2.2.2.5/32

```

3. Configure static NAT rule set with rules.

```
[edit security nat static rule-set ip-phones]
user@host# set from zone public
user@host# set rule phone1 match destination-address 1.1.1.5/32
user@host# set rule phone1 then static-nat prefix 10.1.1.5/32
user@host# set rule gatekeeper match destination-address 1.1.1.25/32
user@host# set rule gatekeeper then static-nat prefix 10.1.1.25/32
```

4. Configure proxy ARP.

```
[edit security nat]
user@host# set proxy-arp interface ge-0/0/1 address 1.1.1.5/32
user@host# set proxy-arp interface ge-0/0/1 address 1.1.1.25/32
```

5. Configure a security policy for incoming traffic.

```
[edit security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy public-to-private]
user@host# set match source-address IP-Phone2
user@host# set match destination-address gatekeeper
user@host# set match application junos-h323
user@host# set then permit
```

6. Configure a security policy for outgoing traffic.

```
[edit security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy private-to-public]
user@host# set match source-address IP-Phone1
user@host# set match source-address gatekeeper
user@host# set match destination-address IP-Phone2
user@host# set match application junos-h323
user@host# set then permit
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show interfaces**, **show security zones**, **show security nat**, and **show security policies** commands. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
[edit]
user@host# show interfaces
ge-0/0/0 {
  unit 0 {
    family inet {
      address 10.1.1.1/24;
    }
  }
}
ge-0/0/1 {
  unit 0 {
    family inet {
      address 1.1.1.1/24;
    }
  }
}
```

```
[edit]
user@host# show security zones
security-zone private {
  address-book {
    address IP-Phone1 10.1.1.5/32;
    address gatekeeper 10.1.1.25/32;
  }
  interfaces {
    ge-0/0/0.0;
  }
}
security-zone public {
  address-book {
    address IP-Phone2 2.2.2.5/32;
  }
  interfaces {
    ge-0/0/1.0;
  }
}
[edit]
user@host# show security nat
static {
  rule-set ip-phones {
    from zone public;
    rule phone1 {
      match {
        destination-address 1.1.1.5/32;
      }
      then {
        static-nat prefix 10.1.1.5/32;
      }
    }
    rule gatekeeper {
      match {
        destination-address 1.1.1.25/32;
      }
      then {
        static-nat prefix 10.1.1.25/32;
      }
    }
  }
}
proxy-arp {
  interface ge-0/0/1.0 {
    address {
      1.1.1.5/32;
      1.1.1.25/32;
    }
  }
}
[edit]
user@host# show security policies
from-zone public to-zone private {
  policy public-to-private {
    match {
      source-address IP-Phone2;
```

```
        destination-address gatekeeper;
        application junos-h323;
    }
    then {
        permit;
    }
}
}
from-zone private to-zone public {
    policy private-to-public {
        match {
            source-address [ IP-Phone1 gatekeeper ];
            destination-address IP-Phone2;
            application junos-h323;
        }
        then {
            permit;
        }
    }
}
```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Verification

To confirm that the configuration is working properly, perform these tasks:

- [Verifying H.323 ALG Status on page 180](#)
- [Verifying Security ALG H.323 Counters on page 181](#)

Verifying H.323 ALG Status

Purpose Verify that H.323 ALG is enabled on your system.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security alg status** command.

```
user@host> show security alg status
ALG Status :
DNS       : Enabled
FTP       : Enabled
H323      : Enabled
MGCP      : Enabled
MSRPC     : Enabled
PPTP      : Enabled
RSH       : Enabled
RTSP      : Enabled
SCCP      : Enabled
SIP       : Enabled
SQL       : Enabled
SUNRPC    : Enabled
TALK      : Enabled
TFTP      : Enabled
IKE-ESP   : Disabled
```

Meaning The output shows the H323 ALG status as follows:

- Enabled—Shows the H323 ALG is enabled.
- Disabled—Shows the H323 ALG is disabled.

Verifying Security ALG H.323 Counters

Purpose Verify that there is a security counters for ALG H323.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security alg h323 counters** command.

```
user@host> show security alg h323 counters
```

```
H.323 counters summary:
Packets received :4060
Packets dropped :24
RAS message received :3690Q.931 message received :202
H.245 message received :145
Number of calls :25
Number of active calls :0
```

```
H.323 Error Counters:
Decoding errors :24
Message flood dropped :0
NAT errors :0
Resource manager errors :0
```

```
H.323 Message Counters:
RRQ : 431
RCF : 49
ARQ : 60
ACF : 33
URQ : 34
UCF : 25
DRQ : 55
DCF : 44
oth RAS : 2942
Setup : 28
Alert : 9
Connect : 25
CallPrd : 18
Info : 0
RelCmpl : 39
Facility : 14
Progress : 0
Empty : 65
OLC : 20
OLC-ACK : 20
```

Meaning The sample output gives the synopsis of security ALG H.323 counters expressing that there are security counters for ALG H.323.

Example: Setting H.323 ALG Endpoint Registration Timeouts

This example shows how to specify the endpoint registration timeout.

- [Requirements on page 182](#)
- [Overview on page 182](#)
- [Configuration on page 182](#)
- [Verification on page 183](#)

Requirements

Before you begin, understand and configure any Avaya H.323-specific features. See the *Administrator Guide for Avaya Communication Manager*, *Avaya IP Telephony Implementation Guide*, and *Avaya Application Solutions IP Telephony Deployment Guide* at <http://support.avaya.com>.

Overview

In Network Address Translation (NAT) mode, when endpoints in the protected network behind the Juniper Networks device register with the H.323 gatekeeper, the device adds an entry to the NAT table containing a mapping of the public-to-private address for each endpoint. These entries make it possible for endpoints in the protected network to receive incoming calls.

You set an endpoint registration timeout to specify how long an endpoint registration entry remains in the NAT table. To ensure uninterrupted incoming call service, set the endpoint registration timeout to a value equal to or greater than the keepalive value the administrator configures on the gatekeeper. The range is 10 to 50,000 seconds, the default value is 3600 seconds.

Configuration

GUI Step-by-Step Procedure

To specify the H.323 ALG endpoint registration timeout:

1. Select **Configure>Security>ALG**.
2. Select the **H323** tab.
3. In the Timeout for endpoints box, type **5000**.
4. Click **OK** to check your configuration and save it as a candidate configuration.
5. If you are done configuring the device, click **Commit Options>Commit**.

Step-by-Step Procedure

1. If you are done configuring the device, commit the configuration.
`[edit]`
`user@host# commit`

Verification

To verify the configuration is working properly, enter the **show security alg h323 counters** command.

Example: Setting H.323 ALG Media Source Port Ranges

This example shows how to enable the H.323 ALG media source port feature.

- [Requirements on page 183](#)
- [Overview on page 183](#)
- [Configuration on page 183](#)
- [Verification on page 184](#)

Requirements

Before you begin, understand and configure any Avaya H.323-specific features. See the *Administrator Guide for Avaya Communication Manager*, *Avaya IP Telephony Implementation Guide*, and *Avaya Application Solutions IP Telephony Deployment Guide* at <http://support.avaya.com>.

Overview

The media source port feature enables you to configure the device to allow media traffic on a narrow or wide range of ports. By default, the device listens for H.323 traffic on a narrow range of ports. If your endpoint equipment allows you to specify a sending port and a listening port, you might want to narrow the range of ports the device allows media traffic on. This enhances security by opening a smaller pinhole for H.323 traffic. This example shows how to configure the device to open a wide gate for media traffic by enabling the media source port feature.

Configuration

GUI Step-by-Step Procedure

To enable the H.323 ALG media source port feature:

1. Select **Configure>Security>ALG**.
2. Select the **H323** tab.
3. Select the **Enable Permit media from any source port** check box.
4. Click **OK** to check your configuration and save it as a candidate configuration.
5. If you are done configuring the device, click **Commit Options>Commit**.

**Step-by-Step
Procedure**

To enable the H.323 ALG media source port feature:

1. Set a narrow gate for media traffic by disabling the media source port for the H.323 ALG.

[edit]

```
user@host# delete security alg h323 media-source-port-any
```

2. If you are done configuring the device, commit the configuration.

[edit]

```
user@host# commit
```

Verification

To verify the configuration is working properly, enter the **show security alg h323 counters** command.

Example: Configuring H.323 ALG DoS Attack Protection

This example shows how to configure the H.323 ALG DoS attack protection feature.

- [Requirements on page 184](#)
- [Overview on page 184](#)
- [Configuration on page 184](#)
- [Verification on page 185](#)

Requirements

Before you begin, understand and configure any Avaya H.323-specific features. See the *Administrator Guide for Avaya Communication Manager*, *Avaya IP Telephony Implementation Guide*, and *Avaya Application Solutions IP Telephony Deployment Guide* at <http://support.avaya.com>.

Overview

You can protect the H.323 gatekeeper from denial-of-service (DoS) flood attacks by limiting the number of Registration, Admission, and Status (RAS) messages per second it will attempt to process. Incoming RAS request messages exceeding the threshold you specify are dropped by H.323 Application Layer Gateway (ALG). The range is 2 to 50,000 messages per second, the default value is 1000.

Configuration**GUI Step-by-Step
Procedure**

To configure the H.323 ALG DoS attack protection feature:

1. Select **Configure>Security>ALG**.
2. Select the **H323** tab.
3. In the Message flood gatekeeper threshold box, type **5000**.

4. Click **OK** to check your configuration and save it as a candidate configuration.
5. If you are done configuring the device, click **Commit Options>Commit**.

Step-by-Step Procedure

To configure the H.323 ALG DoS attack protection feature:

1. Configure the gatekeeper for the H.323 ALG and set the threshold.

```
[edit]
user@host# set security alg h323 application-screen message-flood gatekeeper
threshold 5000
```

2. If you are done configuring the device, commit the configuration.

```
[edit]
user@host# commit
```

Verification

To verify the configuration is working properly, enter the **show security alg h323 counters** command.

Understanding H.323 ALG Known Message Types

The H.323 standard is a legacy voice-over-IP (VoIP) protocol defined by the International Telecommunication Union (ITU-T). H.323 consists of a suite of protocols (such as H.225.0 and H.245) that are used for call signaling and call control for VoIP. There are three major processes in H.323:

- **Gatekeeper Discovery**—An endpoint finds its gatekeeper through the gatekeeper discovery process, through broadcast or unicast (to a known IP and the well-known UDP port 1719).
 - **Endpoint Registration, Admission, and Status**—An endpoint registers to a gatekeeper and asks for its management. Before making a call, an endpoint asks its gatekeeper for permission to place the call. In both registration and admission phases, the Registration, Admission, and Status (RAS) channel is used.
 - **Call Control and Call Setup**—Calls can be established within a zone or across two zones, or even across multiple zones (multipoint conference). The call setup and tear down is performed through the call signaling channel whose TSAP is the well-known TCP port (1720). The call control, including opening/closing media channels between two endpoints, is performed through the call control channel whose TSAP is dynamically assigned from the previous call signaling process. H.245 messages are used in the call control channel, and are encoded using ASN.1.
- [H.225 RAS Signaling: Gatekeepers and Gateways on page 186](#)
 - [H.225 Call Signaling \(Q.931\) on page 189](#)
 - [H.245 Media Control and Transport signaling on page 189](#)

H.225 RAS Signaling: Gatekeepers and Gateways

Registration, Admission, and Status (RAS), as described in the (ITU-T) H.323 standard, is the signaling protocol used between gateways or endpoints. The gatekeepers provide address resolution and admission control services.

RAS is the process by which H.323 gateways discover their zone gatekeepers. RAS communication is carried out through a UDP datagram on port 1718 (multicast) and 1719 (unicast). Endpoints use the RAS protocol to communicate with a gatekeeper. If an H.323 endpoint does not know its gatekeeper, then it can send a Gatekeeper Request (GRQ) message to seek the gatekeeper's response. One or more gatekeepers might answer the request with either a Gatekeeper Confirmation (GCF) message or a Gatekeeper Reject (GRJ) message. A reject message contains the reason for rejection.

Table 8 on page 186 lists the supported RAS gatekeeper messages.

Table 8: Gatekeeper Messages

Message	Description
GRQ (Gatekeeper_Request)	A message sent from an endpoint to a gatekeeper to "discover" gatekeepers willing to provide service.
GCF (Gatekeeper_Confirm)	A reply from a gatekeeper to an endpoint that indicates the acceptance to communicate with the gatekeeper's RAS channel.
GRJ (Gatekeeper_Reject)	A reply from a gatekeeper to an endpoint that rejects the endpoint request.

- [RAS Registration and Unregistration on page 186](#)
- [RAS Admissions on page 187](#)
- [RAS Location on page 187](#)
- [RAS Bandwidth Control on page 188](#)
- [RAS Status Information on page 188](#)
- [RAS Disengage Information on page 188](#)

RAS Registration and Unregistration

Registration is the process by which the gateways, terminals, and multipoint control units (MCUs) join a zone and inform the gatekeeper of their IP and alias addresses. Every gateway can register only one active gatekeeper.

The registration takes place after the endpoint determines and confirms the gatekeeper to communicate, by sending a Registration Request (RRQ) message. The gatekeeper then responds with a Registration Confirm (RCF) message, thereby making the endpoint known to the network.

Table 9 on page 187 lists the supported RAS registration and unregistration messages.

Table 9: Registration and Unregistration Messages

Message	Description
RRQ (Registration_Request)	A message sent from an endpoint to a gatekeeper. Registration requests are predefined in the system's administrative setup.
RCF (Registration_Confirm)	A reply from a gatekeeper that confirms an endpoint's registration in response to an RRQ message.
RRJ (Registration_Reject)	A reply from a gatekeeper that rejects an endpoint's registration.
URQ (Unregister_Request)	A message sent from an endpoint or a gatekeeper requesting to cancel a registration.
UCF (Unregister_Confirm)	A reply sent from an endpoint or a gatekeeper to confirm that the registration is canceled.
URJ (Unregister_Reject)	A message that indicates that the endpoint is not preregistered with the gatekeeper.

RAS Admissions

Admission messages between endpoints and gatekeepers provide the basis for call admissions and bandwidth control. The gatekeeper then resolves the address either with confirmation or rejection of an admission request.

[Table 10 on page 187](#) lists the supported RAS admission messages.

Table 10: Call Admission Messages

Message	Description
ARQ (Admission_Request)	An attempt by an endpoint to initiate a call.
ACF (Admission_Confirm)	A positive response from a gatekeeper that authorizes an endpoint to participate in a call.
ARJ (Admission_Reject)	A message sent from a gatekeeper rejecting the ARQ message that initiates a call.

RAS Location

Location Request (LRQ) messages are sent by either an endpoint or a gatekeeper to an interzone gatekeeper to get the IP addresses of different zone endpoints.

[Table 11 on page 187](#) lists the supported RAS location request messages.

Table 11: Location Request Messages

Message	Description
LRQ (Location_Request)	A message sent to request a gatekeeper for contact information of one or more addresses.
LCF (Location_Confirm)	A response sent by a gatekeeper that contains call signaling channel or RAS channel addresses.

Table 11: Location Request Messages (continued)

Message	Description
LRI (Location_Reject)	A response sent by gatekeepers that received an LRQ for which the requested endpoint is not registered.

RAS Bandwidth Control

Bandwidth control is invoked to set up the call, and is initially managed through the admission messages (ARQ/ACF/ARJ) sequence.

[Table 12 on page 188](#) lists the supported RAS bandwidth control messages.

Table 12: Bandwidth Control Messages

Message	Description
BRQ (Bandwidth_Request)	A request sent by an endpoint to a gatekeeper to increase or decrease call bandwidth.
BCF (Bandwidth_Confirm)	A response sent by a gatekeeper to confirm the acceptance of a bandwidth change request.
BRJ (Bandwidth_Reject)	A response sent by a gatekeeper to reject a bandwidth change request.

RAS Status Information

A gatekeeper uses an Information Request (IRQ) message to determine the status of an endpoint. The RAS protocol is used to determine whether the endpoints are online or offline.

[Table 13 on page 188](#) lists the supported RAS status information messages.

Table 13: Status Information Messages

Message	Description
IRQ (Information_Request)	A message sent from a gatekeeper to request status information of its recipient endpoints.
IRR (Information_Request_Response)	A response sent by endpoint to a gatekeeper in response to an IRQ message. It determines whether the endpoints are online or offline.
IACK (Info_Request_Acknowledge)	A message sent by a gatekeeper to acknowledge the receipt of an IRR message from an endpoint.
INACK (Info_Request_Neg_Acknowledge)	A message sent a gatekeeper if an information request message is not understood.

RAS Disengage Information

An endpoint sends a Disengage Request (DRQ) message to a gatekeeper in the event of a call drop.

Table 14 on page 189 lists the supported RAS disengage messages.

Table 14: Disengage Request Messages

Message	Description
DRQ (Disengage_Request)	A status request sent from an endpoint to a gatekeeper when a call ends.
DCF (Disengage_Confirm)	A message sent by a gatekeeper to confirm receipt of the DRQ message from an endpoint.
DRJ (Disengage_Reject)	A message sent by a gatekeeper that rejects a disengage confirmation request from an endpoint.

H.225 Call Signaling (Q.931)

H.225 is used to set up connections between H.323 endpoints. The (ITU-T) H.225 recommendation specifies the use and support of Q.931 messages.

H.225 call signaling supports the following messages:

- Setup and Setup Acknowledge
- Call Proceeding
- Connect
- Alerting
- User Information
- Release Complete
- Facility
- Progress
- Status and Status Inquiry
- Notify

H.245 Media Control and Transport signaling

H.245 handles end-to-end control messages between H.323 endpoints. This control channel protocol establishes the logical channels for transmission of audio, video, data, and control channel information.

H.245 supports the following messages:

- Request
- Response
- Command
- Indication

Understanding H.323 ALG Unknown Message Types

Unknown H.323 message type feature enables you to specify how unidentified H.323 messages are handled by the device. The default is to drop unknown (unsupported) messages.

You can protect the H.323 gatekeeper from denial-of-service (DoS) flood attacks by limiting the number of Registration, Admission, and Status (RAS) messages per second it will attempt to process. Incoming RAS request messages exceeding the threshold you specify are dropped by the H.323 Application Layer Gateway (ALG). The range is 2 to 50,000 messages per second, the default value is 1000.

We do not recommend permitting unknown messages because they can compromise security. However, in a secure test or production environment, unknown H.323 message type command can be useful for resolving interoperability issues with disparate vendor equipment. Permitting unknown H.323 messages can help you get your network operational, so that you can analyze your voice-over-IP (VoIP) traffic to determine why some messages were being dropped. The unknown H.323 message type feature enables you to configure the device to accept H.323 traffic containing unknown message types in both Network Address Translation (NAT) mode and route mode.



.....

NOTE: Unknown H.323 message type option applies only to received packets identified as supported VoIP packets. If a packet cannot be identified, it is always dropped. If a packet is identified as a supported protocol and you have configured the device to permit unknown message types, the message is forwarded without processing.

.....

Example: Allowing Unknown H.323 ALG Message Types

This example shows how to configure the device to allow unknown H.323 message types in both route and NAT modes.

- [Requirements on page 190](#)
- [Overview on page 190](#)
- [Configuration on page 191](#)
- [Verification on page 191](#)

Requirements

Before you begin, understand and configure any Avaya H.323-specific features. See the *Administrator Guide for Avaya Communication Manager*, *Avaya IP Telephony Implementation Guide*, and *Avaya Application Solutions IP Telephony Deployment Guide* at <http://support.avaya.com>.

Overview

This feature enables you to specify how unidentified H.323 messages are handled by the device. The default is to drop unknown (unsupported) messages. The Enable Permit NAT applied option and the **permit-nat-applied** configuration statement specify that

unknown messages be allowed to pass if the session is in NAT mode. The Enable Permit routed option and the **permit-routed** configuration statement specify that unknown messages be allowed to pass if the session is in route mode. (Sessions in transparent mode are treated as route mode.)

Configuration

GUI Step-by-Step Procedure

To configure the device to allow unknown H.323 message types in both route and NAT modes:

1. Select **Configure>Security>ALG**.
2. Select the **H323** tab.
3. Select the **Enable Permit NAT applied** check box.
4. Select the **Enable Permit routed** check box.
5. Click **OK** to check your configuration and save it as a candidate configuration.
6. If you are done configuring the device, click **Commit Options>Commit**.

Step-by-Step Procedure

To configure the device to allow unknown H.323 message types in both route and NAT modes:

1. Specify that unknown messages be allowed to pass if the session is in NAT mode.

```
[edit]
user@host# set security alg h323 application-screen unknown-message
permit-nat-applied
```
2. Specify that unknown messages be allowed to pass if the session is in route mode.

```
[edit]
user@host# set security alg h323 application-screen unknown-message
permit-routed
```
3. If you are done configuring the device, commit the configuration.

```
[edit]
user@host# commit
```

Verification

To verify the configuration is working properly, enter the **show security alg h323** command and the **show security alg h323 counters** command.

Release History Table

Release	Description
17.4R1	Starting with Junos OS Release 17.4R1, the gateway-to-gateway call feature is supported on the H.323 Application Layer Gateway (ALG).
17.4R1	Starting with Junos OS Release 17.4R1, the H.323 Application Layer Gateway (ALG) supports NAT64 rules in an IPv6 network.

Related Documentation

- [Understanding VoIP ALG Types on page 149](#)
- [SCCP ALG on page 225](#)
- [SIP ALG on page 248](#)

MGCP ALG

The Media Gateway Control Protocol (MGCP) is a text-based signaling and call control communications protocol used in VoIP telecommunication systems. MGCP is used to set up, maintain, and terminate calls between multiple endpoints. For more information, see the following topics:

- [Understanding the MGCP ALG on page 192](#)
- [MGCP ALG Configuration Overview on page 198](#)
- [Example: Configuring Media Gateways in Subscriber Homes Using MGCP ALGs on page 198](#)
- [Example: Configuring Three-Zone ISP-Hosted Service Using MGCP ALG and NAT on page 205](#)
- [Understanding MGCP ALG Call Duration and Timeouts on page 218](#)
- [Example: Setting MGCP ALG Call Duration on page 218](#)
- [Example: Setting MGCP ALG Inactive Media Timeout on page 220](#)
- [Example: Setting MGCP ALG Transaction Timeout on page 221](#)
- [Example: Configuring MGCP ALG DoS Attack Protection on page 222](#)
- [Example: Allowing Unknown MGCP ALG Message Types on page 223](#)

Understanding the MGCP ALG

The Media Gateway Control Protocol (MGCP) is a text-based Application Layer protocol used for call setup and call control between the media gateway and the media gateway controller (MGC).

The protocol is based on a master/slave call control architecture: the MGC (call agent) maintains call control intelligence, and media gateways carry out the instructions from the call agent. Both signaling packets and media packets are transmitted over UDP. Junos OS supports MGCP in route mode and Network Address Translation (NAT) mode.

The MGCP Application Layer Gateway (ALG) performs the following procedures:

- Conducts voice-over-IP (VoIP) signaling payload inspection. The payload of the incoming VoIP signaling packet is fully inspected based on related RFCs and proprietary standards. Any malformed packet attack is blocked by the ALG.
- Conducts MGCP signaling payload inspection. The payload of the incoming MGCP signaling packet is fully inspected in accordance with RFC 3435. Any malformed-packet attack is blocked by the ALG.
- Provides stateful processing. The corresponding VoIP-based state machines are invoked to process the parsed information. Any out-of-state or out-of-transaction packet is identified and properly handled.
- Performs NAT. Any embedded IP address and port information in the payload is properly translated based on the existing routing information and network topology, and is then replaced with the translated IP address and port number, if necessary.
- Manages pinholes for VoIP traffic. To keep the VoIP network secure, the IP address and port information used for media or signaling is identified by the ALG, and any needed pinhole is dynamically created and closed during call setup.

This topic contains the following sections:

- [MGCP Security on page 193](#)
- [Entities in MGCP on page 194](#)
- [MGCP Commands on page 195](#)
- [MGCP Response Codes on page 197](#)

MGCP Security

The MGCP ALG includes the following security features:

- Denial-of-service (DoS) attack protection. The ALG performs stateful inspection at the UDP packet level, the transaction level, and the call level. MGCP packets matching the RFC 3435 message format, transaction state, and call state, are processed. All other messages are dropped.
- Security policy enforcement between gateway and gateway controller (signaling policy).
- Security policy enforcement between gateways (media policy).
- Per-gateway MGCP message flooding control. Any malfunctioning or hacked gateway will not disrupt the whole VoIP network. Combined with per-gateway flooding control, damage is contained within the impacted gateway.
- Per-gateway MGCP connection flooding control.
- Seamless switchover/failover if calls, including calls in progress, are switched to the standby firewall in case of system failure.

Entities in MGCP

There are four basic entities in MGCP:

- [Endpoint on page 194](#)
- [Connection on page 194](#)
- [Call on page 194](#)
- [Call Agent on page 194](#)

Endpoint

A media gateway is a collection of endpoints. An endpoint can be an analog line, trunk, or any other access point. An endpoint contains the following elements:

`local-endpoint-name@domain-name`

The following examples are some valid endpoint IDs:

`group1/Trk8@example.net`
`group2/Trk1/*@[192.168.10.8]` (wild-carding)
`$@example.net` (any endpoint within the media gateway)
`*@example.net` (all endpoints within the media gateway)

Connection

Connections are created on each endpoint by an MG during call setup. A typical VoIP call involves two connections. A complex call, for example a three-party call or conference call, might require more connections. The MGC can instruct media gateways to create, modify, delete, and audit a connection.

A connection is identified by its connection ID, which is created by the MG when it is requested to create a connection. Connection ID is presented as a hexadecimal string, and its maximum length is 32 characters.

Call

A call is identified by its call ID, which is created by the MGC when establishing a new call. Call ID is a hexadecimal string with a maximum length of 32 characters. Call ID is unique within the MGC. Two or more connections can have the same call ID if they belong to the same call.

Call Agent

One or more call agents (also called media gateway controllers) are supported in MGCP to enhance reliability in the VoIP network. The following two examples are of call agent names:

`CallAgent@voipCA.example.com`
`voipCA.example.com`

Several network addresses can be associated under one domain name in the Domain Name System (DNS). By keeping track of the time to live (TTL) of DNS query/response data and implementing retransmission using other alternative network addresses, switchover and failover is achieved in MGCP.

The concept of a *notified entity* is essential in MGCP. The notified entity for an endpoint is the call agent currently controlling that endpoint. An endpoint should send any MGCP command to its notified entity. However, different call agents might send MGCP commands to this endpoint.

The notified entity is set to a provisioned value upon startup, but can be changed by a call agent through the use of the **NotifiedEntity** parameter contained in an MGCP message. If the notified entity for an endpoint is empty or has not been set explicitly, its value defaults to the source address of the last successful non-audit MGCP command received for that endpoint.

MGCP Commands

The MGCP protocol defines nine commands for controlling endpoints and connections. All commands are composed of a command header, optionally followed by Session Description Protocol (SDP) information. A command header has the following elements:

- A command line: command verb + transaction ID + endpointId + MGCP version.
- Zero or more parameter lines, composed of a parameter name followed by a parameter value.

[Table 15 on page 195](#) lists supported MGCP commands and includes a description of each, the command syntax, and examples. Refer to RFC 2234 for a complete explanation of command syntax.

Table 15: MGCP Commands

Command	Description	Command Syntax	Example
EPCF	EndpointConfiguration—Used by a call agent to inform a gateway of coding characteristics (a-law or mu-law) expected by the line side of the endpoint.	ReturnCode [PackageList] EndpointConfiguration (EndpointId,[BearerInformation])	EPCF 2012 wxx/T2@example.com MGCP 1.0B: e:mu
CRCX	CreateConnection—Used by a call agent to instruct the gateway to create a connection with, and endpoint inside, the gateway.	ReturnCode, [ConnectionId,] [SpecificEndPointId,] [LocalConnectionDescriptor,] [SecondEndPointId,] [SecondConnectionId,] [PackageList] CreateConnection (CallId, EndpointId, [NotifiedEntity,] [LocalConnectionOption,] Mode, [{RemoteConnectionDescriptor SecondEndpointId},] [encapsulated RQNT,] [encapsulated EPCF])	CRCX 1205 aaln/1@gw-25.example.net MGCP 1.0C: A3C47F21456789F0L: p:10, a:PCMUM: sendrecvX: 0123456789ADR: L/hdS: L/rgv=0o=- 25678 753849 IN IP4 128.96.41.1s=-c=IN IP4 128.96.41.1t=0 Om=audio 3456 RTP/AVP 0

Table 15: MGCP Commands (continued)

Command	Description	Command Syntax	Example
MDCX	ModifyConnection—Used by a call agent to instruct a gateway to change the parameters for an existing connection.	ReturnCode, [LocalConnectionDescriptor,] [PackageList] ModifyConnection (CallId, EndpointId, ConnectionId, [NotifiedEntity,] [LocalConnectionOption,] [Mode,] [RemoteConnectionDescriptor,] [encapsulated RQNT,] [encapsulated EPCF])	MDCX 1210 aaln/1@rgw-25.example.net MGCP 1.OC: A3C47F21456789F0I: FDE234C8M: reconlyX: 0123456789AER: L/huS: G/rtv=0o=- 4723891 7428910 IN IP4 128.96.63.25s=-c=IN IP4 128.96.63.25t=0 Om=audio 3456 RTP/AVP 0
DLCX	DeleteConnection—Used by a call agent to instruct a gateway to delete an existing connection. DeleteConnection can also be used by a gateway to release a connection that can no longer be sustained.	ReturnCode, ConnectionParameters, [PackageList] DeleteConnection (CallId, EndpointId, ConnectionId, [NotifiedEntity,] [encapsulated RQNT,] [encapsulated EPCF])	Example 1: MGC -> MG DLCX 9210 aaln/1@rgw-25.example.net MGCP 1.OC: A3C47F21456789F0I: FDE234C8 Example 2: MG -> MGC DLCX 9310 aaln/1@rgw-25.example.net MGCP 1.OC: A3C47F21456789F0I: FDE234C8E: 900 - Hardware errorP: PS=1245, OS=62345, PR=780, OR=45123, PL=10, JI=27, LA=48
RQNT	NotificationRequest command—Used by a call agent to instruct an MG to monitor for certain event(s) or signal(s) for a specific endpoint.	ReturnCode, [PackageList] NotificationRequest([EndpointId, [NotifiedEntity,] [RequestedEvents,] RequestIdentifier, [DigitMap,] [SignalRequests,] [QuarantineHandling,] [DetectEvents,] [encapsulated EPCF])	RQNT 1205 aaln/1@rgw-25.example.net MGCP 1.ON: ca-new@callagent-ca.example.netX: 0123456789AAR: L/hd(A, E(S(L/dl),R(L/oc,L/hu,D/[0-9#*T](D))))D: (OT O0T xx 91xxxxxxxxxx 9011x.T)S:T: G/ft
NTFY	Notify—Used by a gateway to inform the call agent when requested event(s) or signal(s) occur.	ReturnCode, [PackageList] Notify (EndpointId, [NotifiedEntity,] RequestIdentifier, ObservedEvents)	NTFY 2002 aaln/1@rgw-25.example.net MGCP 1.ON: ca@ca1.example.net:5678X: 0123456789ACO: L/hd,D/9,D/1,D/2,D/0,D/1,D/8,D/2,D/9,D/4, D/2,D/6,D/6
AUEP	AuditEndpoint—Used by a call agent to audit the status of the endpoint.	ReturnCode, EndPointIdList, { [RequestedEvents,] [QuarantineHandling,] [DigitMap,] [SignalRequests,] [RequestedIdentifier,] [NotifiedEntity,] [ConnectionIdentifier,] [DetectEvents,] [ObservedEvents,] [EventStats,] [BearerInformation,] [BearerMethod,] [RestartDelay,] [ReasonCode,] [MaxMGCPDatagram,] [Capabilities]} [PackageList] AuditEndpoint (EndpointId, [RequestedInfo])	Example 1: AUEP 1201 aaln/1@rgw-25.example.net MGCP 1.OF: A, R,D,S,X,N,I,T,O Example 2: AUEP 1200 *@rgw-25.example.net MGCP 1.0

Table 15: MGCP Commands (continued)

Command	Description	Command Syntax	Example
AUCX	AuditConnection—Used by a call agent to collect the parameters applied to a connection.	ReturnCode, [CallId,] [NotifiedEntity,] [LocalConnectionOptions,] [Mode,] [RemoteConnectionDescriptor,] [LocalConnectionDescriptor,] [ConnectionParameters,] [PackageList] AuditConnection (EndpointId, ConnectionId, RequestedInfo)	AUCX 3003 aaln/1@rgw-25.example.net MGCP 1.0l: 32F345E2F: C,N,L,M,LC,P
RSIP	RestareInProgress—Used by a gateway to notify a call agent that one or more endpoints are being taken out of service or placed back in service.	ReturnCode, [NotifiedEntity,] [PackageList] RestartInProgress (EndpointId, RestartMethod, [RestartDelay,] [ReasonCode])	RSIP 5200 aaln/1@rg2-25.example.net MGCP 1.0RM: gracefulRD: 300

MGCP Response Codes

Every command sent by the calling agent or gateway, whether successful or not, requires a response code. The response code is in the header of the response message, and optionally is followed by session description information.

The response header is composed of a response line, followed by zero or more parameter lines, each containing a parameter name letter followed by its value. The response header is composed of a three-digit response code, transaction ID, and optionally followed by commentary. The response header in the following response message shows response code 200 (successful completion), followed by ID 1204 and the comment:OK.

```
200 1204 OK
l: FDE234C8
v=0
o=- 25678 753849 IN IP4 128.96.41.1
s=-
c=IN IP4 128.96.41.1
t=0 0
m=audio 3456 RTP/AVP 96
a=rtpmap:96 G726-32/8000
```

The ranges of response codes are defined as follows:

- 000 — 099 indicate a response acknowledgement.
- 100 — 199—indicate a provisional response.
- 200 — 299 indicate a successful completion (final response).
- 400 — 499 indicate a transient error (final response).
- 500 — 599 indicate a permanent error (final response).

Refer to RFC 3661 for detailed information about response codes.

A response to a command is sent to the source address of the command, not to the current notified entity. A media gateway can receive MGCP commands from various

network addresses simultaneously, and send back responses to corresponding network addresses. However, it sends all MGCP commands to its current notified entity.

MGCP ALG Configuration Overview

The Media Gateway Control Protocol (MGCP ALG) is enabled by default on the device—no action is required to enable it. However, you might choose to fine-tune MGCP ALG operations by using the following instructions:

1. Free up bandwidth when calls fail to properly terminate. See [“Example: Setting MGCP ALG Call Duration” on page 218](#).
2. Control how long a call can remain active without any media traffic. See [“Example: Setting MGCP ALG Inactive Media Timeout” on page 220](#).
3. Track and clear signaling traffic when it times out. See [“Example: Setting MGCP ALG Transaction Timeout” on page 221](#).
4. Protect the media gateway from denial-of-service (DoS) flood attacks. See [“Example: Configuring MGCP ALG DoS Attack Protection” on page 222](#).
5. Enable unknown messages to pass when the session is in Network Address Translation (NAT) mode and route mode. See [“Example: Allowing Unknown MGCP ALG Message Types” on page 223](#).

Example: Configuring Media Gateways in Subscriber Homes Using MGCP ALGs

This example shows how to configure media gateways in subscriber homes using MGCP ALGs.

- [Requirements on page 198](#)
- [Overview on page 198](#)
- [Configuration on page 199](#)
- [Verification on page 203](#)

Requirements

Before you begin:

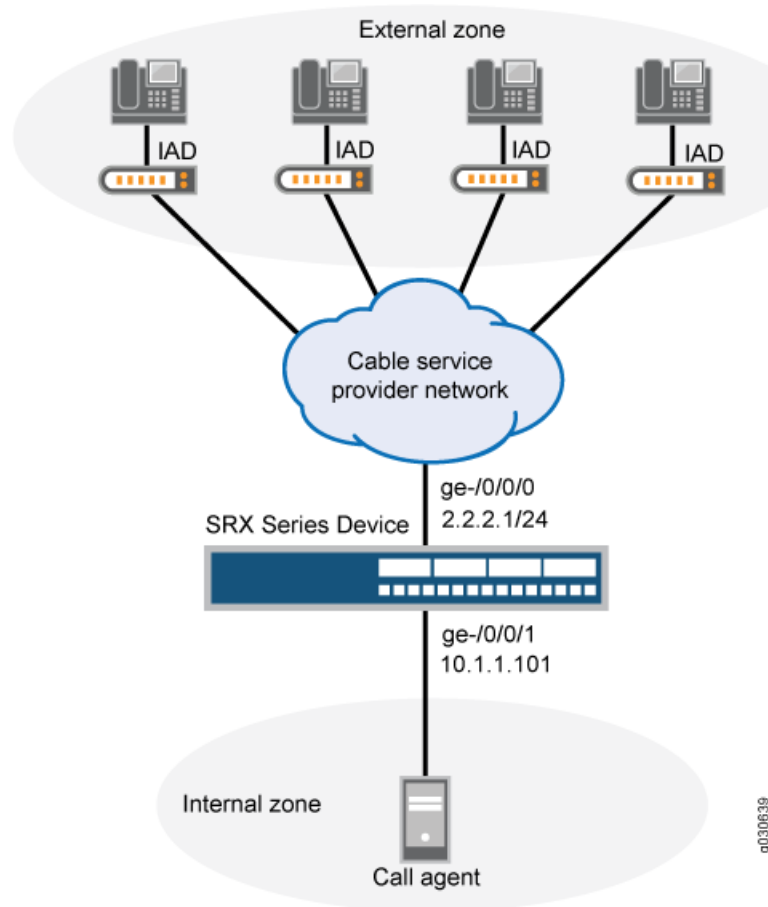
- Configure zones. See *Example: Creating Security Zones*.
- Configure addresses and interfaces. See *Example: Configuring Address Books and Address Sets*.
- Configure security policies. See *Security Policies Configuration Overview*.

Overview

When a cable service provider offers MGCP services to residential subscribers, they locate the Juniper Networks device and call agent on their premises and install a set-top box, in each subscriber's home. The set-top boxes act as gateways for the residences.

After creating zones—`external_subscriber` for the customer and `internal_ca` for the service provider—you configure addresses, then interfaces, and finally policies to allow signaling between endpoints. Note that although gateways frequently reside in different zones, requiring policies for media traffic, in this example both gateways are in the same subnet. Note also that because RTP traffic between the gateways never passes through the device, no policy is needed for the media. See [Figure 21 on page 199](#).

Figure 21: Media Gateway in Subscriber Homes



Configuration

CLI Quick Configuration

To quickly configure this section of the example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set security zones security-zone external-subscriber host-inbound-traffic system-services all
set security zones security-zone external-subscriber host-inbound-traffic protocols all
set security zones security-zone internal-ca host-inbound-traffic system-services all
set security zones security-zone internal-ca host-inbound-traffic protocols all
set interfaces ge-0/0/1 unit 0 family inet address 2.2.2.1/24
set interfaces ge-0/0/0 unit 0 family inet
```

```
set security zones security-zone external-subscriber interfaces ge-0/0/0
set security zones security-zone internal-ca interfaces ge-0/0/1
set security address-book book1 address ca-agent 110.1.1.101/32
set security address-book book1 attach zone internal-ca
set security address-book book2 address subscriber-subnet 2.2.2.1/24
set security address-book book2 attach zone external-subscriber
set security policies from-zone internal-ca to-zone external-subscriber policy
  ca-to-subscribers match source-address ca-agent-1
set security policies from-zone internal-ca to-zone external-subscriber policy
  ca-to-subscribers match destination-address subscriber-subnet
set security policies from-zone internal-ca to-zone external-subscriber policy
  ca-to-subscribers match application junos-mgcp
set security policies from-zone internal-ca to-zone external-subscriber policy
  ca-to-subscribers then permit
set security policies from-zone external-subscriber to-zone internal-ca policy
  subscriber-to-ca match source-address subscriber-subnet
set security policies from-zone external-subscriber to-zone internal-ca policy
  subscriber-to-ca match destination-address ca-agent-1
set security policies from-zone external-subscriber to-zone internal-ca policy
  subscriber-to-ca match application junos-mgcp
set security policies from-zone external-subscriber to-zone internal-ca policy
  subscriber-to-ca then permit
set security policies from-zone internal-ca to-zone internal-ca policy intra-ca match
  source-address any
set security policies from-zone internal-ca to-zone internal-ca policy intra-ca match
  destination-address any
set security policies from-zone internal-ca to-zone internal-ca policy intra-ca match
  application any
set security policies from-zone internal-ca to-zone internal-ca policy intra-ca then permit
set security policies from-zone external-subscriber to-zone external-subscriber policy
  intra-subscriber match source-address any
set security policies from-zone external-subscriber to-zone external-subscriber policy
  intra-subscriber match destination-address any
set security policies from-zone external-subscriber to-zone external-subscriber policy
  intra-subscriber match application any
set security policies from-zone external-subscriber to-zone external-subscriber policy
  intra-subscriber then permit
```

Step-by-Step Procedure The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode* in the CLI User Guide.

To configure media gateways in subscriber homes using MGCP ALGs:

1. Create security zones for the customer and the service provider.

```
[edit security zones security-zone external-subscriber]
user@host# set host-inbound-traffic system-services all
user@host# set host-inbound-traffic protocols all
```

```
[edit security zones security-zone internal-ca]
user@host# set host-inbound-traffic system-services all
user@host# set host-inbound-traffic protocols all
```

2. Configure interfaces for the zones.

```
[edit]
user@host# edit security zones security-zone external-subscriber interfaces
ge-0/0/0
user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/0 unit 0 family inet
user@host# set security zones security-zone internal-ca interfaces ge-0/0/1
user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/1 unit 0 family inet address 2.2.2.1/24
```

3. Configure address books and attach zones to them.

```
[edit security address-book book1]
user@host# set address ca-agent 110.1.1.101/32
user@host# set attach zone internal-ca

[edit security address-book book2]
user@host# set address subscriber-subnet 2.2.2.1/24
user@host# set attach zone external-subscriber
```

4. Configure policies for traffic from the internal to the external zone.

```
[edit security policies from-zone internal-ca to-zone external-subscriber policy
ca-to-subscribers]
user@host# edit match source-address ca-agent-1
user@host# set match destination-address subscriber-subnet
user@host# set match application junos-mgcp
user@host# set then permit
```

5. Configure policies for traffic from the external to the internal zone.

```
[edit security policies from-zone external-subscriber to-zone internal-ca policy
subscriber-to-ca]
user@host# edit match source-address subscriber-subnet
user@host# set match destination-address ca-agent-1
user@host# set match application junos-mgcp
user@host# set then permit
```

6. Configure policies for traffic between two internal zones.

```
[edit security policies from-zone internal-ca to-zone internal-ca policy intra-ca]
user@host# edit match source-address any
user@host# set match destination-address any
user@host# set match application any
user@host# set then permit
```

7. Configure policies for traffic between two external zones.

```
[edit security policies from-zone external-subscriber to-zone external-subscriber
policy intra-subscriber]
user@host# edit match source-address any
user@host# set match destination-address any
user@host# set match application any
user@host# set then permit
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show security policies** command. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
from-zone internal-ca to-zone external-subscriber {
  policy ca-to-subscribers {
    match {
      source-address ca-agent-1;
      destination-address subscriber-subnet;
      application junos-mgcp;
    }
    then {
      permit;
    }
  }
}
from-zone external-subscriber to-zone internal-ca {
  policy subscriber-to-ca {
    match {
      source-address subscriber-subnet;
      destination-address ca-agent-1;
      application junos-mgcp;
    }
    then {
      permit;
    }
  }
}
from-zone internal-ca to-zone internal-ca {
  policy intra-ca {
    match {
      source-address any;
      destination-address any;
      application any;
    }
    then {
      permit;
    }
  }
}
from-zone external-subscriber to-zone external-subscriber {
  policy intra-subscriber {
    match {
      source-address any;
      destination-address any;
      application any;
    }
    then {
      permit;
    }
  }
}
```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Verification

To confirm that the configuration is working properly, perform this task:

- [Verifying MGCP ALGs on page 203](#)
- [Verifying MGCP ALG Calls on page 203](#)
- [Verifying MGCP ALG Endpoints on page 204](#)
- [Verifying MGCP ALG Counters on page 204](#)

Verifying MGCP ALGs

Purpose Verify the MGCP ALG verification options.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security alg mgcp ?** command.

```
user@host> show security alg mgcp ?
Possible completions:
  calls           Show MGCP calls
  counters        Show MGCP counters
  endpoints       Show MGCP endpoints
```

Meaning The output shows a list of all MGCP verification parameters. Verify the following information:

- All MGCP calls
- Counters for all MGCP calls
- Information about all MGCP endpoints

Verifying MGCP ALG Calls

Purpose Verify information about active MGCP calls.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security alg mgcp calls** command.

```
user@host> show security alg mgcp calls
Endpoint@GW          Zone      Call ID          RM Group
d001@101.50.10.1      Trust     10d55b81140e0f76  512
  Connection Id> 0
    Local SDP> o: 101.50.10.1      x_o: 101.50.10.1
                  c: 101.50.10.1/32206  x_c: 101.50.10.1/32206
    Remote SDP> c: 3.3.3.5/16928    x_c: 3.3.3.5/16928
Endpoint@GW          Zone      Call ID          RM Group
d001@3.3.3.5          Untrust   3a104e9b41a7c4c9  511
  Connection Id> 0
    Local SDP> o: 3.3.3.5          x_o: 3.3.3.5
                  c: 3.3.3.5/16928    x_c: 3.3.3.5/16928
    Remote SDP> c: 101.50.10.1/32206 x_c: 101.50.10.1/32206
```

Meaning The output displays information about all MGCP calls. Verify the following information:

- Endpoint
- Zone
- Call identifier
- Resource Manager group

Verifying MGCP ALG Endpoints

Purpose Verify information about MGCP endpoints.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security alg mgcp endpoints** command.

```
user@host> show security alg mgcp endpoints
Gateway: 101.50.10.1 Zone: Trust IP: 101.50.10.1 -> 101.50.10.1
  Endpoint      Trans #  Call #  Notified Entity
  d001          1        1      0.0.0.0/0->0.0.0.0/0
Gateway: 3.3.3.5 Zone: Untrust IP: 3.3.3.5 -> 3.3.3.5
  Endpoint      Trans #  Call #  Notified Entity
  d001          1        1      0.0.0.0/0->0.0.0.0/0
```

Meaning The output displays information about all MGCP endpoints. Verify the following information:

- Gateway IP address and zone of both endpoints
- Endpoint identifier, transaction number, call number, and notified entity for each gateway

Verifying MGCP ALG Counters

Purpose Verify information about MGCP counters.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security alg mgcp counters** command.

```
user@host> show security alg mgcp counters
MGCP counters summary:
Packets received           :284
Packets dropped            :0
Message received          :284
Number of connections      :4
Number of active connections :3
Number of calls            :4
Number of active calls     :3
Number of transactions     :121
Number of active transactions:52
Number of re-transmission  :68
MGCP Error Counters:
Unknown-method            :0
Decoding error            :0
Transaction error         :0
```

```

Call error                :0
Connection error          :0
Connection flood drop     :0
Message flood drop        :0
IP resolve error          :0
NAT error                 :0
Resource manager error    :0
MGCP Packet Counters:
CRCX      :4      MDCX      :9      DLCX      :2
AUEP      :1      AUCX      :0      NTFY      :43
RSIP      :79     EPCF      :0      RQNT      :51
000-199   :0      200-299   :95     300-999   :0

```

Meaning The output displays information about all MGCP counters. Verify the following information:

- Summary of MGCP counters
- MGCP error counters
- MGCP packet counters

See Also • [Understanding the MGCP ALG on page 192](#)

Example: Configuring Three-Zone ISP-Hosted Service Using MGCP ALG and NAT

This example shows how to configure a three-zone configuration using MGCP ALG and NAT.

- [Requirements on page 205](#)
- [Overview on page 205](#)
- [Configuration on page 207](#)
- [Verification on page 215](#)

Requirements

Before you begin, understand NAT support with MGCP ALG. See [“Understanding the MGCP ALG” on page 192](#).

Overview

Typically, a three-zone configuration is used when an ISP in one geographical location provides service to two networks in different geographical locations.

In this example (see [Figure 22 on page 207](#)), an ISP located on the USA West Coast provides MGCP service to customers in separate networks in Asia and San Francisco. Asia customers are in the asia-3 zone and are supported by the asia-gw gateway; San Francisco customers are in the sf-2 zone and are supported by the sf-gw gateway. A call agent, west-ca, is in the DMZ. The gateways and the call agent are listed in [Table 16 on page 207](#), showing the corresponding IP address, interface, and zone.

In this example, after creating zones and setting addresses for the gateways and the call agent, you associate the zones to interfaces, and then configure static NAT to the call agent and source NAT for communication from an IP phone in the sf-2 zone to phones in the asia-3 zone. You also configure a policy between the zones to allow the communication.

Topology

Figure 22 on page 207 shows a three-zone ISP-hosted service.

Figure 22: Three-Zone ISP-Hosted Service

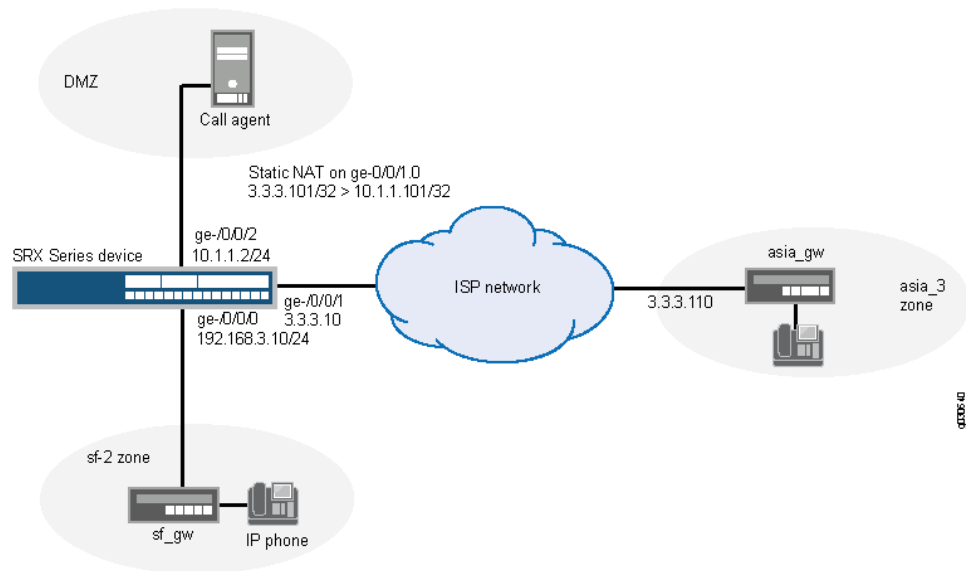


Table 16: Three-Zone ISP-Host Service

Gateway	IP Address	Interface	Zone
sf-gw	192.168.3.201	ge-0/0/0	sf-2
asia-gw	3.3.3.101	ge-0/0/1	asia-3
west-ca	10.1.1.101	ge-0/0/2	DMZ

Configuration

CLI Quick Configuration

To quickly configure this section of the example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```

set interfaces ge-0/0/0 unit 0 family inet address 192.168.3.10/24
set interfaces ge-0/0/1 unit 0 family inet address 3.3.3.10/24
set interfaces ge-0/0/2 unit 0 family inet address 10.1.1.2/24
set security zones security-zone sf-2 interfaces ge-0/0/0.0
set security zones security-zone asia-3 interfaces ge-0/0/1.0
set security zones security-zone dmz interfaces ge-0/0/2.0
set security address-book book1 address sf-gw 192.168.3.201/32
set security address-book book1 attach zone sf-2
set security address-book book2 address asia-gw 3.3.3.101/32
set security address-book book2 attach zone asia-3
set security address-book book3 address west-ca 10.1.1.101/32

```

```
set security address-book book3 attach zone dmz
set security nat source pool ip-phone-pool address 3.3.3.20/32
set security nat source rule-set phones from zone sf-2
set security nat source rule-set phones to zone asia-3
set security nat source rule-set phones rule phone1 match source-address 192.168.3.10/32
set security nat source rule-set phones rule phone1 match destination 3.3.3.101/32
set security nat source rule-set phones rule phone1 then source-nat pool ip-phone-pool
set security nat static rule-set to-callagent from zone asia-3
set security nat static rule-set to-callagent rule phone1 match destination-address
  3.3.3.101/32
set security nat static rule-set to-callagent rule phone1 then static-nat prefix 10.1.1.101/32
set security nat proxy-arp interface ge-0/0/1.0 address 3.3.3.101/32
set security nat proxy-arp interface ge-0/0/1.0 address 3.3.3.20/32
set security policies from-zone dmz to-zone asia-3 policy pol-dmz-to-asia-3 match
  source-address west-ca
set security policies from-zone dmz to-zone asia-3 policy pol-dmz-to-asia-3 match
  destination-address asia-gw
set security policies from-zone dmz to-zone asia-3 policy pol-dmz-to-asia-3 match
  application junos-mgcp
set security policies from-zone dmz to-zone asia-3 policy pol-dmz-to-asia-3 then permit
set security policies from-zone asia-3 to-zone dmz policy pol-asia-3-to-dmz match
  source-address asia-gw
set security policies from-zone asia-3 to-zone dmz policy pol-asia-3-to-dmz match
  destination-address west-ca
set security policies from-zone asia-3 to-zone dmz policy pol-asia-3-to-dmz match
  application junos-mgcp
set security policies from-zone asia-3 to-zone dmz policy pol-asia-3-to-dmz then permit
set security policies from-zone sf-2 to-zone dmz policy pol-sf-2-to-dmz match
  source-address sf-gw
set security policies from-zone sf-2 to-zone dmz policy pol-sf-2-to-dmz match
  destination-address west-ca
set security policies from-zone sf-2 to-zone dmz policy pol-sf-2-to-dmz match application
  junos-mgcp
set security policies from-zone sf-2 to-zone dmz policy pol-sf-2-to-dmz then permit
set security policies from-zone dmz to-zone sf-2 policy pol-dmz-to-sf-2 match
  source-address west-ca
set security policies from-zone dmz to-zone sf-2 policy pol-dmz-to-sf-2 match
  destination-address sf-gw
set security policies from-zone dmz to-zone sf-2 policy pol-dmz-to-sf-2 match application
  junos-mgcp
set security policies from-zone dmz to-zone sf-2 policy pol-dmz-to-sf-2 then permit
set security policies from-zone sf-2 to-zone asia-3 policy pol-sf-2-to-asia-3 match
  source-address sf-gw
set security policies from-zone sf-2 to-zone asia-3 policy pol-sf-2-to-asia-3 match
  destination-address asia-gw
set security policies from-zone sf-2 to-zone asia-3 policy pol-sf-2-to-asia-3 match
  application junos-mgcp
set security policies from-zone sf-2 to-zone asia-3 policy pol-sf-2-to-asia-3 then permit
set security policies from-zone asia-3 to-zone sf-2 policy pol-asia-3-to-sf-2 match
  source-address asia-gw
set security policies from-zone asia-3 to-zone sf-2 policy pol-asia-3-to-sf-2 match
  destination sf-gw
set security policies from-zone asia-3 to-zone sf-2 policy pol-asia-3-to-sf-2 match
  application junos-mgcp
set security policies from-zone asia-3 to-zone sf-2 policy pol-asia-3-to-sf-2 then permit
```

```

set security policies from-zone sf-2 to-zone sf-2 policy pol-intra-sf-2 match source-address
any
set security policies from-zone sf-2 to-zone sf-2 policy pol-intra-sf-2 match
destination-address any
set security policies from-zone sf-2 to-zone sf-2 policy pol-intra-sf-2 match application
any
set security policies from-zone sf-2 to-zone sf-2 policy pol-intra-sf-2 then permit
set security policies from-zone asia-3 to-zone asia-3 policy pol-intra-asia-3 match
source-address any
set security policies from-zone asia-3 to-zone asia-3 policy pol-intra-asia-3 match
destination-address any
set security policies from-zone asia-3 to-zone asia-3 policy pol-intra-asia-3 match
application any
set security policies from-zone asia-3 to-zone asia-3 policy pol-intra-asia-3 then permit

```

Step-by-Step Procedure

The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode* in the CLI User Guide.

To configure a three-zone configuration using MGCP ALG and NAT:

1. Configure interfaces.

```

[edit]
user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/0 unit 0 family inet address 192.168.3.10/24
user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/1 unit 0 family inet address 3.3.3.10/24
user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/2 unit 0 family inet address 10.1.1.2/24

```

2. Create security zones.

```

[edit security zones]
user@host# set security-zone sf-2 interfaces ge-0/0/0
user@host# set security-zone asia-3 interfaces ge-0/0/1
user@host# set security-zone dmz interfaces ge-0/0/2

```

3. Create address books and assign zones to them.

```

[edit security address-book book1]
user@host# set address sf-gw 192.168.3.201/32
user@host# set attach zone sf-2

[edit security address-book book2]
user@host# set address asia-gw 3.3.3.101/32
user@host# set attach zone asia-3

[edit security address-book book3]
user@host# set address west-ca 10.1.1.101/32
user@host# set attach zone dmz

```

4. Create a static NAT rule set and set the match conditions and actions for it.

```

[edit security nat static rule-set to-callagent]
user@host# set from zone asia-3
user@host# set rule phone1 match destination-address 3.3.3.101/32
user@host# set rule phone1 then static-nat prefix 10.1.1.101/32

```

5. Configure proxy ARP for address 3.3.3.101/32 on interface ge-0/0/1.0.

```
[edit security nat ]  
user@host# set proxy-arp interface ge-0/0/1.0 address 3.3.3.101/32
```
6. Create a source NAT pool.

```
[edit security nat]  
user@host# set source pool ip-phone-pool address 3.3.3.20/32
```
7. Create a source NAT rule set and set the match conditions and actions for it.

```
[edit security nat source rule-set phones]  
user@host# set from zone sf-2  
user@host# set to zone asia-3  
user@host# set rule phone1 match source-address 192.168.3.10/32  
user@host# set rule phone1 match destination-address 3.3.3.101/32  
user@host# set rule phone1 then source-nat pool ip-phone-pool
```
8. Configure proxy ARP for address 3.3.3.20/32 on interface ge-0/0/1.0.

```
[edit security nat ]  
user@host# set proxy-arp interface ge-0/0/1.0 address 3.3.3.20/32
```
9. Configure a policy to allow traffic from DMZ to Asia.

```
[edit security policies from-zone dmz to-zone asia-3 policy pol-dmz-to-asia-3]  
user@host# set match source-address west-ca  
user@host# set match destination-address asia-gw  
user@host# set match application junos-mgcp  
user@host# set then permit
```
10. Configure a policy to allow traffic from Asia to DMZ.

```
[edit security policies from-zone asia-3 to-zone dmz policy pol-asia-3-to-dmz]  
user@host# set match source-address asia-gw  
user@host# set match destination-address west-ca  
user@host# set match application junos-mgcp  
user@host# set then permit
```
11. Configure a policy to allow traffic from San Francisco to DMZ.

```
[edit security policies from-zone sf-2 to-zone dmz policy pol-sf-2-to-dmz]  
user@host# set match source-address sf-gw  
user@host# set match destination-address west-ca  
user@host# set match application junos-mgcp  
user@host# set then permit
```
12. Configure a policy to allow traffic from DMZ to San Francisco.

```
[edit security policies from-zone dmz to-zone sf-2 policy pol-dmz-to-sf-2]  
user@host# set match source-address west-ca  
user@host# set match destination-address sf-gw  
user@host# set match application junos-mgcp
```

```
user@host# set then permit
```

13. Configure a policy to allow traffic from San Francisco to Asia.

```
[edit security policies from-zone sf-2 to-zone asia-3 policy pol-sf-2-to-asia-3]
user@host# set match source-address sf-gw
user@host# set match destination-address asia-gw
user@host# set match application junos-mgcp
user@host# set then permit
```

14. Configure a policy to allow traffic from Asia to San Francisco.

```
[edit security policies from-zone asia-3 to-zone sf-2 policy pol-asia-3-to-sf-2]
user@host# set match source-address asia-gw
user@host# set match destination-address sf-gw
user@host# set match application junos-mgcp
user@host# set then permit
```

15. Configure a policy to allow traffic on devices within San Francisco.

```
[edit security policies from-zone sf-2 to-zone sf-2 policy pol-intra-sf-2]
user@host# set match source-address any
user@host# set match destination-address any
user@host# set match application any
user@host# set then permit
```

16. Configure a policy to allow traffic on devices within Asia.

```
[edit security policies from-zone asia-3 to-zone asia-3 policy pol-intra-asia-3]
user@host# set match source-address any
user@host# set match destination-address any
user@host# set match application any
user@host# set then permit
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show interfaces**, **show security zones**, **show security address-book**, **show security nat**, and **show security policies** commands. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
[edit]
user@host# show interfaces
ge-0/0/0 {
  unit 0 {
    family inet {
      address 192.168.3.10/24;
    }
  }
}
ge-0/0/1 {
  unit 0 {
    family inet {
      address 3.3.3.10/24;
    }
  }
}
```

```
    }
  }
  ge-0/0/2 {
    unit 0 {
      family inet {
        address 10.1.1.2/24;
      }
    }
  }
}
[edit]
user@host# show security zones
security-zone sf-2 {
  interfaces {
    ge-0/0/0.0;
  }
}
security-zone asia-3 {
  interfaces {
    ge-0/0/1.0;
  }
}
security-zone dmz {
  interfaces {
    ge-0/0/2.0;
  }
}
[edit]
user@host# show security address-book
book1 {
  address sf-gw 192.168.3.201/32;
  attach {
    zone sf-2;
  }
}
book2 {
  address asia-gw 3.3.3.101/32;
  attach {
    zone asia-3;
  }
}
book3 {
  address west-ca 10.1.1.101/32;
  attach {
    zone dmz;
  }
}
[edit]
user@host# show security nat
source {
  pool ip-phone-pool {
    address {
      3.3.3.20/32;
    }
  }
}
rule-set phones {
  from zone sf-2;
```

```

to zone asia-3;
rule phone1 {
  match {
    source-address 192.168.3.10/32;
    destination-address 3.3.3.101/32;
  }
  then {
    source-nat {
      pool {
        ip-phone-pool;
      }
    }
  }
}
}
static {
  rule-set to-callagent {
    from zone asia-3;
    rule phone1 {
      match {
        destination-address 3.3.3.101/32;
      }
      then {
        static-nat prefix 10.1.1.101/32;
      }
    }
  }
}
proxy-arp {
  interface ge-0/0/1.0 {
    address {
      3.3.3.101/32;
      3.3.3.20/32;
    }
  }
}
[edit]
user@host# show security policies
from-zone dmz to-zone asia-3 {
  policy pol-dmz-to-asia-3 {
    match {
      source-address west-ca;
      destination-address asia-gw;
      application junos-mgcp;
    }
    then {
      permit;
    }
  }
}
from-zone asia-3 to-zone dmz {
  policy pol-asia-3-to-dmz {
    match {
      source-address asia-gw;
      destination-address west-ca;
    }
  }
}

```

```
        application junos-mgcp;
    }
    then {
        permit;
    }
}
}
from-zone sf-2 to-zone dmz {
    policy pol-sf-2-to-dmz {
        match {
            source-address sf-gw;
            destination-address west-ca;
            application junos-mgcp;
        }
        then {
            permit;
        }
    }
}
from-zone dmz to-zone sf-2 {
    policy pol-dmz-to-sf-2 {
        match {
            source-address west-ca;
            destination-address sf-gw;
            application junos-mgcp;
        }
        then {
            permit;
        }
    }
}
from-zone sf-2 to-zone asia-3 {
    policy pol-sf-2-to-asia-3 {
        match {
            source-address sf-gw;
            destination-address asia-gw;
            application junos-mgcp;
        }
        then {
            permit;
        }
    }
}
from-zone asia-3 to-zone sf-2 {
    policy pol-asia-3-to-sf-2 {
        match {
            source-address asia-gw;
            destination-address sf-gw;
            application junos-mgcp;
        }
        then {
            permit;
        }
    }
}
from-zone sf-2 to-zone sf-2 {
```

```

policy pol-intra-sf-2 {
  match {
    source-address any;
    destination-address any;
    application any;
  }
  then {
    permit;
  }
}
}
from-zone asia-3 to-zone asia-3 {
  policy pol-intra-asia-3 {
    match {
      source-address any;
      destination-address any;
      application any;
    }
    then {
      permit;
    }
  }
}
}

```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Verification

To confirm that the configuration is working properly, perform these tasks:

- [Verifying MGCP ALG on page 215](#)
- [Verifying MGCP Calls on page 216](#)
- [Verifying MGCP ALG Statistics on page 216](#)
- [Verifying MGCP Endpoints on page 217](#)

Verifying MGCP ALG

Purpose Verify if the MGCP ALG is enabled.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security alg status | match mgcp** command.

```
user@host> show security alg status | match mgcp
```

```
MGCP      : Enabled
```

Meaning The output shows the MGCPALG status as follows:

- Enabled—Shows the MGCP ALG is enabled.
- Disabled—Shows the MGCP ALG is disabled.

Verifying MGCP Calls

Purpose Verify the MGCP calls that are currently active.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security alg mgcp calls** command.

```
user@host> show security alg mgcp calls
```

```
Endpoint@GW          Zone      Call ID          RM Group
d001@101.50.10.1      Trust     10d55b81140e0f76 512
  Connection Id> 0
  Local SDP>  o: 101.50.10.1      x_o: 101.50.10.1
                c: 101.50.10.1/32206  x_c: 101.50.10.1/32206
  Remote SDP> c: 3.3.3.5/16928   x_c: 3.3.3.5/16928
Endpoint@GW          Zone      Call ID          RM Group
d001@3.3.3.5          Untrust   3a104e9b41a7c4c9 511
  Connection Id> 0
  Local SDP>  o: 3.3.3.5      x_o: 3.3.3.5
                c: 3.3.3.5/16928  x_c: 3.3.3.5/16928
  Remote SDP> c: 101.50.10.1/32206 x_c: 101.50.10.1/32206
```

Meaning The output displays information about all MGCP calls. Verify the following information:

- Endpoint
- Zone
- Call identifier
- Resource Manager group

Verifying MGCP ALG Statistics

Purpose Verify the MGCP ALG statistics.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security alg mgcp counters** command.

```
user@host> show security alg mgcp counters
```

```
MGCP counters summary:
Packets received      :284
Packets dropped       :0
Message received      :284
Number of connections :4
Number of active connections :3
Number of calls       :4
Number of active calls :3
Number of transactions :121
Number of active transactions:52
Number of re-transmission :68
MGCP Error Counters:
Unknown-method        :0
Decoding error        :0
Transaction error     :0
```

```

Call error                :0
Connection error          :0
Connection flood drop     :0
Message flood drop        :0
IP resolve error          :0
NAT error                 :0
Resource manager error    :0
MGCP Packet Counters:
CRCX      :4      MDCX   :9      DLCX    :2
AUEP      :1      AUCX   :0      NTFY    :43
RSIP      :79     EPCF   :0      RQNT    :51
000-199   :0      200-299 :95    300-999 :0

```

Meaning The output displays information about all MGCP counters. Verify the following information:

- Summary of MGCP counters
- MGCP error counters
- MGCP packet counters

Verifying MGCP Endpoints

Purpose Verify the MGCP endpoints.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security alg mgcp endpoints** command.

```
user@host> show security alg mgcp endpoints
```

```

Gateway: 101.50.10.1 Zone: Trust IP: 101.50.10.1 -> 101.50.10.1
  Endpoint      Trans #  Call #  Notified Entity
  d001           1         1       0.0.0.0/0->0.0.0.0/0
Gateway: 3.3.3.5 Zone: Untrust IP: 3.3.3.5 -> 3.3.3.5
  Endpoint      Trans #  Call #  Notified Entity
  d001           1         1       0.0.0.0/0->0.0.0.0/0

```

Meaning The output displays information about all MGCP endpoints. Verify the following information:

- Gateway IP address and zone of both endpoints
- Endpoint identifier, transaction number, call number, and notified entity for each gateway

See Also

- *Static NAT Configuration Overview*
- *Understanding Source NAT*

Understanding MGCP ALG Call Duration and Timeouts

The call duration feature gives you control over Media Gateway Control Protocol (MGCP) call activity and helps you to manage network resources.

Typically a Delete Connection (DLCX) message will be sent out to delete a connection. The MGCP Application Layer Gateway (ALG) intercepts it and removes all media sessions for that connection.

A call can have one or more voice channels. Each voice channel has two sessions (or two media streams), one for Real-Time Transport Protocol (RTP) traffic and one for Real-Time Control Protocol (RTCP) signaling. When managing the sessions, the device considers the sessions in each voice channel as one group. Timeouts and call duration settings apply to a group as opposed to each session.

The following parameters govern MGCP call activity:

- **maximum-call-duration**—This parameter sets the absolute maximum length of a call. When a call exceeds this parameter setting, the MGCP ALG tears down the call and releases the media sessions. The default setting is 720 minutes, and the range is 3 through 720 minutes. This setting also frees up bandwidth in cases where calls fail to properly terminate.
- **inactive-media-timeout**—This parameter indicates the maximum length of time (in seconds) a call can remain active without any media (RTP or RTCP) traffic within a group. Each time an RTP or RTCP packet occurs within a call, this timeout resets. When the period of inactivity exceeds this setting, the MGCP ALG gates opened for media are closed. The default setting is 120 seconds, and the range is 10 through 2550 seconds. Note that upon timeout, while resources for media (sessions and pinholes) are removed, the call is not terminated.



NOTE: The **inactive-media-timeout** value should be less than the **maximum-call-duration** value.

- **transaction-timeout**—A transaction is a command and its mandatory response. For example, an NTFY from the gateway to the call agent or a 200 OK from the call agent to the gateway. The Juniper Networks device tracks these transactions and clears them when they time out. The timeout range for MGCP transactions is 3 through 50 seconds and the default is 30 seconds.

Example: Setting MGCP ALG Call Duration

This example shows how to set call duration for the MGCP ALG.

- [Requirements on page 219](#)
- [Overview on page 219](#)
- [Configuration on page 219](#)
- [Verification on page 219](#)

Requirements

Before you begin, determine the type of parameter used to control the MGCP call activity and manage its network resources. See [“Understanding MGCP ALG Call Duration and Timeouts” on page 218](#).

Overview

The **maximum-call-duration** parameter governs MGCP call activity and sets the absolute maximum length of a call. When a call exceeds this parameter setting, the MGCP ALG tears down the call and releases the media sessions. The default setting is 720 minutes, and the range is 3 through 720 minutes. This setting also frees up bandwidth in cases where calls fail to properly terminate. In this example, the call duration is set to 600 minutes.

Configuration

GUI Step-by-Step Procedure

To set call duration for the MGCP ALG:

1. Select **Configure > Security > ALG**.
2. Select the **MGCP** tab.
3. In the Maximum call duration box, enter **600**.
4. Click **OK** to check your configuration and save it as a candidate configuration.
5. If you are done configuring the device, click **Commit Options > Commit**.

Step-by-Step Procedure

To set call duration for the MGCP ALG:

1. Configure the MGCP ALG call duration.

[edit]
user@host# **set security alg mgcp maximum-call-duration 600**
2. If you are done configuring the device, commit the configuration.

[edit]
user@host# **commit**

Verification

To verify the configuration is working properly, enter the **show security alg mgcp** command.

Example: Setting MGCP ALG Inactive Media Timeout

This example shows how to set the inactive media timeout value for the MGCP ALG.

- [Requirements on page 220](#)
- [Overview on page 220](#)
- [Configuration on page 220](#)
- [Verification on page 221](#)

Requirements

Before you begin, determine the type of parameter used to control the MGCP call activity and manage its network resources. See “[Understanding MGCP ALG Call Duration and Timeouts](#)” on page 218.

Overview

The **inactive-media-timeout** parameter governs MGCP call activity and indicates the maximum length of time (in seconds) a call can remain active without any media (RTP or RTCP) traffic within a group. Each time an RTP or RTCP packet occurs within a call, this timeout resets. When the period of inactivity exceeds this setting, the MGCP ALG gates opened for media are closed. The default setting is 120 seconds, and the range is from 10 to 2550 seconds. Note that upon timeout, while resources for media (sessions and pinholes) are removed, the call is not terminated. In this example, the inactive media timeout is set to 90 seconds.

Configuration

GUI Step-by-Step Procedure

To set the inactive media timeout for the MGCP ALG:

1. Select **Configure>Security>ALG**.
2. Select the **MGCP** tab.
3. In the Inactive Media Timeout box, enter **90**.
4. Click **OK** to check your configuration and save it as a candidate configuration.
5. If you are done configuring the device, click **Commit Options>Commit**.

Step-by-Step Procedure

To set the inactive media timeout for the MGCP ALG:

1. Configure the MGCP ALG inactive media timeout value.

[edit]
user@host# **set security alg mgcp inactive-media-timeout 90**
2. If you are done configuring the device, commit the configuration.

```
[edit]
user@host# commit
```

Verification

To verify the configuration is working properly, enter the **show security alg mgcp** command.

Example: Setting MGCP ALG Transaction Timeout

This example shows how to set the transaction timeout for the MGCP ALG.

- [Requirements on page 221](#)
- [Overview on page 221](#)
- [Configuration on page 221](#)
- [Verification on page 222](#)

Requirements

Before you begin, determine the type of parameter used to control the MGCP call activity and manage its network resources. See “[Understanding MGCP ALG Call Duration and Timeouts](#)” on page 218.

Overview

The **transaction-timeout** parameter governs MGCP call activity and is a signaling message; for example, a NOTIFY from the gateway to the call agent or a 200 OK from the call agent to the gateway. The Juniper Networks device tracks these transactions, and clears them when they time out. The timeout range for MGCP transactions is from 3 to 50 seconds, and the default is 30 seconds. In this example, the transaction timeout is set to 20 seconds.

Configuration

GUI Step-by-Step Procedure

To set the transaction timeout for the MGCP ALG:

1. Select **Configure>Security>ALG**.
2. Select the **MGCP** tab.
3. In the Transaction Timeout box, enter **20**.
4. Click **OK** to check your configuration and save it as a candidate configuration.
5. If you are done configuring the device, click **Commit Options>Commit**.

Step-by-Step Procedure

To set the transaction timeout for the MGCP ALG:

1. Configure the MGCP ALG transaction timeout value.

```
[edit]
user@host# set security alg mgcp transaction-timeout 20
```

2. If you are done configuring the device, commit the configuration.

```
[edit]
user@host# commit
```

Verification

To verify the configuration is working properly, enter the **show security alg mgcp** command.

Example: Configuring MGCP ALG DoS Attack Protection

This example shows how to configure connection flood protection for the MGCP ALG.

- [Requirements on page 222](#)
- [Overview on page 222](#)
- [Configuration on page 223](#)
- [Verification on page 223](#)

Requirements

Before you begin, determine whether to protect the MGCP media gateway from DoS flood attacks.

Overview

You can protect the Media Gateway Control Protocol (MGCP) media gateway from denial-of-service (DoS) flood attacks by limiting the number of remote access service (RAS) messages and connections per second it will attempt to process.

When you configure MGCP message flood protection, the MGCP Application Layer Gateway (ALG) drops any messages exceeding the threshold you set. The range is 2 to 50,000 messages per second per media gateway, and the default is 1000 messages per second per media gateway.

When you configure MGCP connection flood protection, the MGCP ALG drops any connection request exceeding the threshold you set. This limits the rate of processing of **CreateConnection (CRCX)** commands, thereby indirectly limiting pinhole creation. The range is 2 to 10,000 connection requests per second per media gateway, the default is 200.

In this example, you configure the MGCP ALG to drop any message requests exceeding 10,000 requests per second and to drop any connection requests exceeding 4000 per second.

Configuration

GUI Step-by-Step Procedure

To configure connection flood protection for the MGCP ALG:

1. Select **Configure>Security>ALG**.
2. Select the **MGCP** tab.
3. In the Message flood gatekeeper threshold box, type **10000**.
4. In the Connection flood threshold box, type **4000**.
5. Click **OK** to check your configuration and save it as a candidate configuration.
6. If you are done configuring the device, click **Commit Options>Commit**.

Step-by-Step Procedure

To configure connection flood protection for the MGCP ALG:

1. Configure the connection flood threshold value.

```
[edit]
user@host# set security alg mgcp application-screen message-flood threshold
10000
user@host# set security alg mgcp application-screen connection-flood threshold
4000
```
2. If you are done configuring the device, commit the configuration.

```
[edit]
user@host# commit
```

Verification

To verify the configuration is working properly, enter the **show security alg mgcp** command.

Example: Allowing Unknown MGCP ALG Message Types

This example shows how to configure the MGCP ALG to allow unknown MGCP message types in both NAT mode and route mode.

- [Requirements on page 224](#)
- [Overview on page 224](#)
- [Configuration on page 224](#)
- [Verification on page 225](#)

Requirements

Before you begin, determine whether to accommodate new and unknown MGCP message types for the device.

Overview

To accommodate on-going development of the Media Gateway Control Protocol (MGCP), you might want to allow traffic containing new MGCP message types. The unknown MGCP message type feature enables you to configure the Juniper Networks device to accept MGCP traffic containing unknown message types in both Network Address Translation (NAT) mode and route mode.

This feature enables you to specify how unidentified MGCP messages are handled by the Juniper Networks device. The default is to drop unknown (unsupported) messages. Unknown messages can compromise security. However, in a secure test or production environment, this command can be useful for resolving interoperability issues with disparate vendor equipment. Permitting unknown MGCP messages can help you get your network operational so that you can later analyze your voice-over-IP (VoIP) traffic to determine why some messages were being dropped.

Note that this command applies only to received packets identified as supported VoIP packets. If a packet cannot be identified, it is always dropped. If a packet is identified as a supported protocol and you have configured the device to permit unknown message types, the message is forwarded without processing.

Configuration

GUI Step-by-Step Procedure

To configure the MGCP ALG to allow unknown message types:

1. Select **Configure>Security>ALG**.
2. Select the **MGCP** tab.
3. Select the **Enable Permit NAT applied** check box.
4. Select the **Enable Permit routed** check box.
5. Click **OK** to check your configuration and save it as a candidate configuration.
6. If you are done configuring the device, click **Commit Options>Commit**.

Step-by-Step Procedure

To configure the MGCP ALG to allow unknown message types:

1. Allow unknown message types to pass if the session is in either NAT mode or in route mode.

[edit]

```
user@host# set security alg mgcp application-screen unknown-message
permit-nat-applied permit-routed
```

2. If you are done configuring the device, commit the configuration.

```
[edit]
user@host# commit
```

Verification

To verify the configuration is working properly, enter the **show security alg mgcp** command.

Related Documentation

- [Understanding VoIP ALG Types on page 149](#)
- [VoIP DSCP Rewrite Rules on page 150](#)
- [SIP ALG on page 248](#)

SCCP ALG

The Skinny Client Control Protocol (SCCP) is a simple and lightweight protocol requiring relatively little computer processing. SCCP clients use TCP/IP to communicate with Call Manager applications in a cluster. For more information, see the following topics

- [Understanding SCCP ALGs on page 225](#)
- [SCCP ALG Configuration Overview on page 231](#)
- [Example: Setting SCCP ALG Inactive Media Timeouts on page 231](#)
- [Example: Allowing Unknown SCCP ALG Message Types on page 232](#)
- [Example: Configuring SCCP ALG DoS Attack Protection on page 234](#)
- [Example: Configuring the SCCP ALG Call Manager or TFTP Server in the Private Zone on page 235](#)
- [Verifying SCCP ALG Configurations on page 245](#)

Understanding SCCP ALGs

Skinny Client Control Protocol (SCCP) is a Cisco proprietary protocol for call signaling. Skinny is based on a call-agent-based call-control architecture. The control protocol uses binary-coded frames encoded on TCP frames sent to well-known TCP port number destinations to set up and tear down RTP media sessions.

The SCCP protocol, in the same way as other call control protocols, negotiates media endpoint parameters—specifically the Real-Time Transport Protocol (RTP) port number and the IP address of media termination—by embedding information in the control packets. The SCCP Application Layer Gateway (ALG) parses these control packets and facilitates media and control packets to flow through the system.

The SCCP ALG also implements rate limiting of calls and helps protect critical resources from overloading and denial-of-service (DoS) attacks.

The following functions are implemented by the SCCP ALG in Junos OS:

- Validation of SCCP protocol data units
- Translation of embedded IP address and port numbers
- Allocation of firewall resources (pinholes and gates) to pass media
- Aging out idle calls
- Configuration API for SCCP ALG parameters
- Operational mode API for displaying counters, status and statistics

In the SCCP architecture, a proxy, known as the Call Manager, does most of the processing. IP phones, also called End Stations, run the SCCP client and connect to a primary (and, if available, a secondary) Call Manager over TCP on port 2000 and register with the primary Call Manager. This connection is then used to establish calls coming to or from the client.

The SCCP ALG supports the following:

- Call flow from a SCCP client, through the Call Manager, to another SCCP client.
- Seamless failover—Switches over all calls in process to the standby firewall during failure of the primary.
- Voice-over-IP (VoIP) signaling payload inspection—Fully inspects the payload of incoming VoIP signaling packets. Any malformed packet attack is blocked by the ALG.
- SCCP signaling payload inspection—Fully inspects the payload of incoming SCCP signaling packets. Any malformed-packet attack is blocked by the ALG.
- Stateful processing—Invokes the corresponding VoIP-based state machines to process the parsed information. Any out-of-state or out-of-transaction packet is identified and properly handled.
- Network Address Translation (NAT)—Translates any embedded IP address and port information in the payload, based on the existing routing information and network topology, with the translated IP address and port number, if necessary.
- Pinhole creation and management for VoIP traffic—Identifies IP address and port information used for media or signaling and dynamically opens (and closes) pinholes to securely stream the media.

This topic includes the following sections:

- [SCCP Security on page 227](#)
- [SCCP Components on page 227](#)
- [SCCP Transactions on page 228](#)
- [SCCP Version on page 229](#)
- [SCCP Control Messages and RTP Flow on page 229](#)
- [SCCP Messages on page 229](#)

SCCP Security

The SCCP ALG includes the following security features:

- Stateful inspection of SCCP control messages over TCP and validation of the message format, and message validity for the current call state. Invalid messages are dropped.
- Security policy enforcement between Cisco IP phones and Cisco Call Manager.
- Protect against call flooding by rate limiting the number of calls processed by the ALG.
- Seamless failover of calls, including the ones in progress in case of device failure in a clustered deployment.

SCCP Components

The principal components of the SCCP VoIP architecture include the following:

- [SCCP Client on page 227](#)
- [Call Manager on page 227](#)
- [Cluster on page 227](#)

SCCP Client

The SCCP client runs on an IP phone, also called an *End Station*, which uses SCCP for signaling and for making calls. For an SCCP client to make a call, it must first register with a Primary Call Manager (and a secondary, if available). The connection between the client and the Call Manager is over TCP on port 2000. This connection is then used to establish calls to or from the client. Transmission of media is over RTP, UDP, and IP.

Call Manager

The Call Manager implements SCCP call control server software and has overall control of all devices and communication in the SCCP VoIP network. Its functions include defining, monitoring and controlling SCCP groups, regions of numbers, and route plans; providing initialization, admission, and registration of devices on the network; providing a redundant database that contains addresses, phone numbers, and number formats; and initiating contact with called devices or their agents to establish logical sessions in which voice communication can flow.

Cluster

A *cluster* is a collection of SCCP clients and a Call Manager. The Call Manager in the cluster detects all SCCP clients in the cluster. There can be more than one Call Manager for backup in a cluster. Call Manager behavior varies in each of the following cluster scenarios:

- Intra-Cluster, in which the Call Manager detects each SCCP client, and the call is between SCCP clients of the same cluster.
- Inter-Cluster, in which the Call Manager needs to communicate with another Call Manager using H.323 for call setup.
- Inter-Cluster calls using the gatekeeper for admission control and address resolution.

Call Manager behavior also varies with calls between an SCCP client and a phone in a public switched telephone network (PSTN), and with calls between an SCCP client and a phone in another administrative domain that is using H.323.

SCCP Transactions

SCCP transactions are the processes that need to take place in order for an SCCP call to proceed. SCCP transactions include the following processes:

- [Client Initialization on page 228](#)
- [Client Registration on page 228](#)
- [Call Setup on page 228](#)
- [Media Setup on page 228](#)

Client Initialization

To initialize, the SCCP client needs to determine the IP address of the Call Manager, its own IP address, and other information about the IP gateway and DNS servers. Initialization takes place on the local LAN. The client sends a Dynamic Host Control Protocol (DHCP) request to get an IP address, the DNS server address, and the TFTP server name and address. The client needs the TFTP server name to download the configuration file called `sepmacaddr.cnf`. If the TFTP name is not given, the client uses the default filename in the IP phone. The client then downloads the `.cnf` (xml) configuration file from TFTP server. CNF files contain the IP address or addresses of the primary and secondary Cisco Call Manager. With this information, the client contacts the Call Manager to register.

Client Registration

The SCCP client, after initialization, registers with the Call Manager over a TCP connection on well-known default port 2000. The client registers by providing the Call Manager with its IP address, the MAC address of the phone, and other information, such as protocol and version. The client cannot initiate or receive calls until it is registered. Keepalive messages keep this TCP connection open between the client and Call Manager so that the client can initiate or receive calls at any time, provided that a policy on the device allows this.

Call Setup

IP phone-to-IP phone call setup using SCCP is always handled by the Call Manager. Messages for call setup are sent to the Call Manager, which returns messages appropriate to the status of the call. If call setup is successful, and a policy on the device allows the call, the Call Manager sends the media setup messages to the client.

Media Setup

The Call Manager sends the IP address and port number of the called party to the calling party. The Call Manager also sends the media IP address and port number of the calling party to the called party. After media setup, media is transmitted directly between clients. When the call ends, the Call Manager is informed and terminates the media streams. At no time during this process does the Call Manager hand over call-setup function to the client. Media is streamed directly between clients through RTP/UDP/IP.

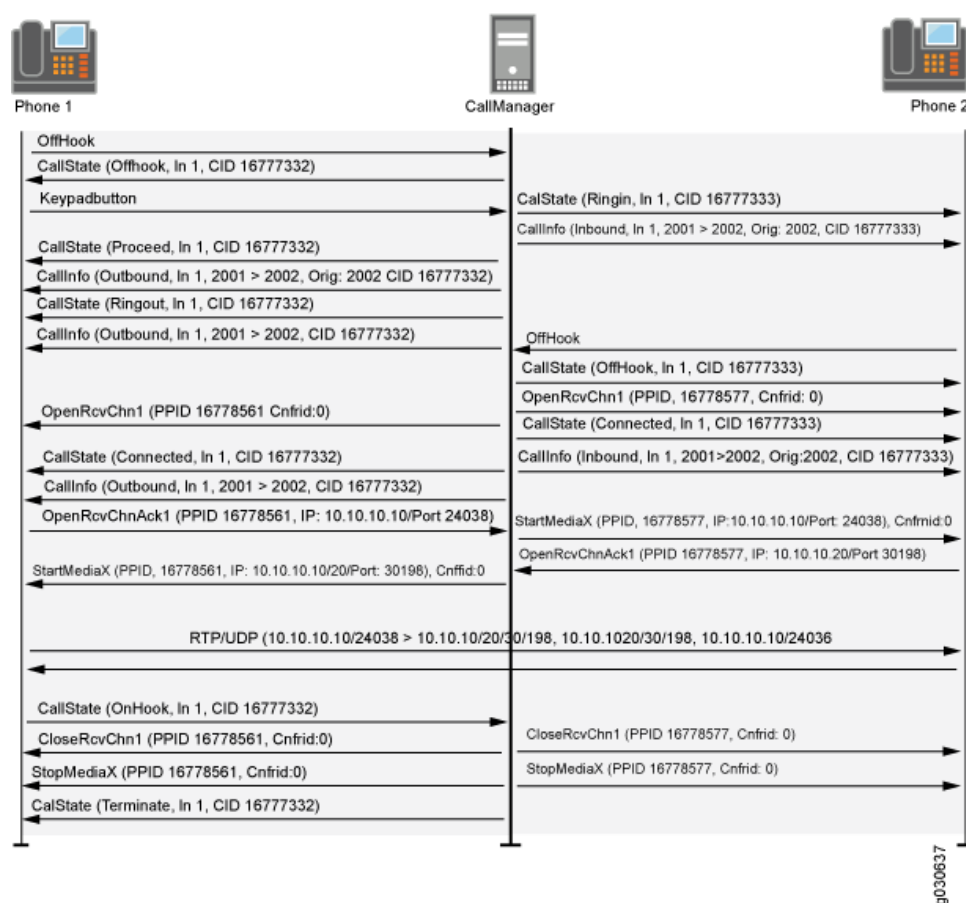
SCCP Version

Starting in Junos OS Release 12.1X46-D10 and Junos OS Release 17.3R1, the SCCP ALG supports SCCP versions 16, 17, and 20 and several SCCP messages have been updated with a new format. Cisco Call Manager (CM) version 7 uses SCCP version 20.

SCCP Control Messages and RTP Flow

Figure 23 on page 229 shows the SCCP control messages used to set up and tear down a simple call between Phone 1 and Phone 2. Except for the OffHook message initiating the call from Phone 1 and the OnHook message signaling the end of the call, all aspects of the call are controlled by the Call Manager.

Figure 23: Call Setup and Teardown



SCCP Messages

Table 17 on page 229, Table 18 on page 230, Table 19 on page 230, and Table 20 on page 230 list the SCCP call message IDs in the four intervals allowed by the device.

Table 17: Station to Call Manager Messages

#define STATION_REGISTER_MESSAGE	0x00000001
----------------------------------	------------

Table 17: Station to Call Manager Messages (continued)

#define STATION_IP_PORT_MESSAGE	0x00000002
#define STATION_ALARM_MESSAGE	0x00000020
#define STATION_OPEN_RECEIVE_CHANNEL_ACK	0x00000022

Table 18: Call Manager to Station Messages

#define STATION_START_MEDIA_TRANSMISSION	0x00000001
#define STATION_STOP_MEDIA_TRANSMISSION	0x00000002
#define STATION_CALL_INFO_MESSAGE	0x00000020
#define STATION_OPEN_RECEIVE_CHANNEL_ACK	0x00000022
#define STATION_CLOSE_RECEIVE_CHANNEL	0x00000106

Table 19: Call Manager 4.0 Messages and Post Sccp 6.2

#define STATION_REGISTER_TOKEN_REQ_MESSAGE	0x00000029
#define STATION_MEDIA_TRANSMISSION_FAILURE	0x0000002A
#define STATION_OPEN_MULTIMEDIA_RECEIVE_CHANNEL_ACK	0x00000031

Table 20: Call Manager to Station

#define STATION_OPEN_MULTIMEDIA_RECEIVE_CHANNEL	0x00000131
#define STATION_START_MULTIMEDIA_TRANSMISSION	0x00000132
#define STATION_STOP_MULTIMEDIA_TRANSMISSION	0x00000133
#define STATION_CLOSE_MULTIMEDIA_RECEIVE_CHANNEL	0x00000136

SCCP ALG Limitations

- The SCCP is a Cisco proprietary protocol. So, any changes to the protocol by Cisco cause the SCCP ALG implementation to break. However, workarounds are provided to bypass strict decoding and allow any protocol changes to be handled gracefully.
- Any changes to the policies will drop the sessions and impact already established SCCP calls.

- The SCCP ALG opens pinholes that are collapsed during traffic or media inactivity. This means that during a temporary loss of connectivity, media sessions are not reestablished.
- Call Manager (CM) version 6.x and later does not support TCP probe packets in chassis cluster mode. As a result, the existing SCCP sessions will break when there is a failover. You can still create new SCCP sessions during failover.

Understanding SCCP ALG Inactive Media Timeouts

The inactive media timeout feature helps you to conserve network resources and maximize throughput.

This parameter indicates the maximum length of time (in seconds) a call can remain active without any media traffic within a group. Each time a Real-Time Transport Protocol (RTP) or Real-Time Control Protocol (RTCP) packet occurs within a call, this timeout resets. When the period of inactivity exceeds this setting, the gates the Skinny Client Control Protocol (SCCP) opened for media are closed. The default setting is 120 seconds, and the range is from 10 to 2550 seconds. Note that upon timeout, while resources for media (sessions and pinholes) are removed, the call is not terminated.

SCCP ALG Configuration Overview

The Skinny Client Control Protocol Application Layer Gateway (SCCP ALG) is enabled by default on the device—no action is required to enable it. However, you might choose to fine-tune SCCP ALG operations by using the following instructions:

1. Conserve network resources and maximize throughput. For instructions, see [“Example: Setting SCCP ALG Inactive Media Timeouts” on page 231](#).
2. Enable unknown messages to pass when the session is in Network Address Translation (NAT) mode and route mode. For instructions, see [“Example: Allowing Unknown SCCP ALG Message Types” on page 232](#).
3. Protect the SCCP clients from denial-of-service (DoS) flood attacks. For instructions, see [“Example: Configuring SCCP ALG DoS Attack Protection” on page 234](#).

Example: Setting SCCP ALG Inactive Media Timeouts

This example shows how to set the inactive media timeout value for the SCCP ALG.

- [Requirements on page 231](#)
- [Overview on page 232](#)
- [Configuration on page 232](#)
- [Verification on page 232](#)

Requirements

Before you begin, review the parameter used to indicate the maximum length of time (in seconds) a call can remain active without any media traffic within a group. See [“Understanding SCCP ALG Inactive Media Timeouts” on page 231](#).

Overview

Each time an RTP or RTCP packet occurs within a call, this timeout resets. When the period of inactivity exceeds this setting, the gates the SCCP opened for media are closed. This example sets the media inactivity timeout to 90 seconds.

Configuration

GUI Step-by-Step Procedure

To set the inactive media timeout for the SCCP ALG:

1. Select **Configure>Security>ALG**.
2. Select the **SCCP** tab.
3. In the Inactive Media Timeout box, enter **90**.
4. Click **OK** to check your configuration and save it as a candidate configuration.
5. If you are done configuring the device, click **Commit Options>Commit**.

Step-by-Step Procedure

To set the inactive media timeout for the SCCP ALG:

1. Configure the SCCP ALG inactive media timeout value.

[edit]
user@host# **set security alg sccp inactive-media-timeout 90**
2. If you are done configuring the device, commit the configuration.

[edit]
user@host# **commit**

Verification

To verify the configuration is working properly, enter the **show security alg sccp** command.

Example: Allowing Unknown SCCP ALG Message Types

This example shows how to configure the SCCP ALG to allow unknown SCCP message types in both NAT mode and route mode.

- [Requirements on page 233](#)
- [Overview on page 233](#)
- [Configuration on page 233](#)
- [Verification on page 234](#)

Requirements

Before you begin, determine whether to accommodate new and unknown SCCP message types for the device.

Overview

To accommodate on-going development of the Skinny Client Control Protocol (SCCP), you might want to allow traffic containing new SCCP message types. The unknown SCCP message type feature enables you to configure the device to accept SCCP traffic containing unknown message types in both Network Address Translation (NAT) mode and route mode.

The default is to drop unknown (unsupported) messages. We do not recommend permitting unknown messages because they can compromise security. However, in a secure test or production environment, the unknown SCCP message type command can be useful for resolving interoperability issues with disparate vendor equipment. Permitting unknown SCCP messages can help you get your network operational so that you can later analyze your voice-over-IP (VoIP) traffic to determine why some messages were being dropped.

Note that the unknown SCCP message type command applies only to received packets identified as supported VoIP packets. If a packet cannot be identified, it is always dropped. If a packet is identified as a supported protocol and you have configured the device to permit unknown message types, the message is forwarded without processing.

Configuration

GUI Step-by-Step Procedure

To configure the SCCP ALG to allow unknown message types:

1. Select **Configure>Security>ALG**.
2. Select the **SCCP** tab.
3. Select the **Enable Permit NAT applied** check box.
4. Select the **Enable Permit routed** check box.
5. Click **OK** to check your configuration and save it as a candidate configuration.
6. If you are done configuring the device, click **Commit Options>Commit**.

Step-by-Step Procedure

To configure the SCCP ALG to allow unknown message types:

1. Allow unknown message types to pass if the session is in either NAT mode or in route mode.

[edit]

```
user@host# set security alg sccp application-screen unknown-message  
permit-nat-applied permit-routed
```

2. If you are done configuring the device, commit the configuration.

```
[edit]  
user@host# commit
```

Verification

To verify the configuration is working properly, enter the **show security alg sccp** command.

Example: Configuring SCCP ALG DoS Attack Protection

This example shows how to configure connection flood protection for the SCCP ALG.

- [Requirements on page 234](#)
- [Overview on page 234](#)
- [Configuration on page 234](#)
- [Verification on page 235](#)

Requirements

Before you begin, determine whether to protect the SCCP media gateway from DoS flood attacks.

Overview

You can protect Skinny Client Control Protocol Application Layer Gateway (SCCP ALG) clients from denial-of-service (DoS) flood attacks by limiting the number of calls they attempt to process.

When you configure SCCP call flood protection, the SCCP ALG drops any calls exceeding the threshold you set. The range is 2 to 1000 calls per second per client, the default is 20.

In this example, the device is configured to drop any calls exceeding 500 per second per client.

Configuration

GUI Step-by-Step Procedure

To configure call flood protection for the SCCP ALG:

1. Select **Configure>Security>ALG**.
2. Select the **SCCP** tab.
3. In the Call flood threshold box, type **500**.

4. Click **OK** to check your configuration and save it as a candidate configuration.
5. If you are done configuring the device, click **Commit Options>Commit**.

Step-by-Step Procedure

To configure call flood protection for the SCCP ALG:

1. Configure the DoS attack protection:

```
[edit]
user@host# set security alg sccp application-screen call-flood threshold 500
```

2. If you are done configuring the device, commit the configuration.

```
[edit]
user@host# commit
```

Verification

To verify the configuration is working properly, enter the **show security alg sccp** command.

Example: Configuring the SCCP ALG Call Manager or TFTP Server in the Private Zone

This example shows how to configure static NAT on the outgoing interface of a Juniper Networks device to allow callers in a public zone to register with an SCCP ALG Call Manager or a TFTP server located in a private zone.

- [Requirements on page 235](#)
- [Overview on page 235](#)
- [Configuration on page 237](#)
- [Verification on page 242](#)

Requirements

Before you begin, understand NAT support with SCCP ALG. See "[Understanding SCCP ALGs](#)" on page 225.

Overview

In this example (see [Figure 24 on page 237](#)), a single device is serving as a Call Manager or a TFTP server. The Call Manager or TFTP server and phone1 are attached to the private zone, and phone2 is attached to the public zone. You configure a static NAT rule set for the Call Manager or TFTP server so that when phone2 boots up it contacts the TFTP server and obtains the IP address of the Call Manager. You then create a policy called in-pol to allow SCCP traffic from the public to the private zone and a policy called out-pol to allow phone1 to call out.



.....

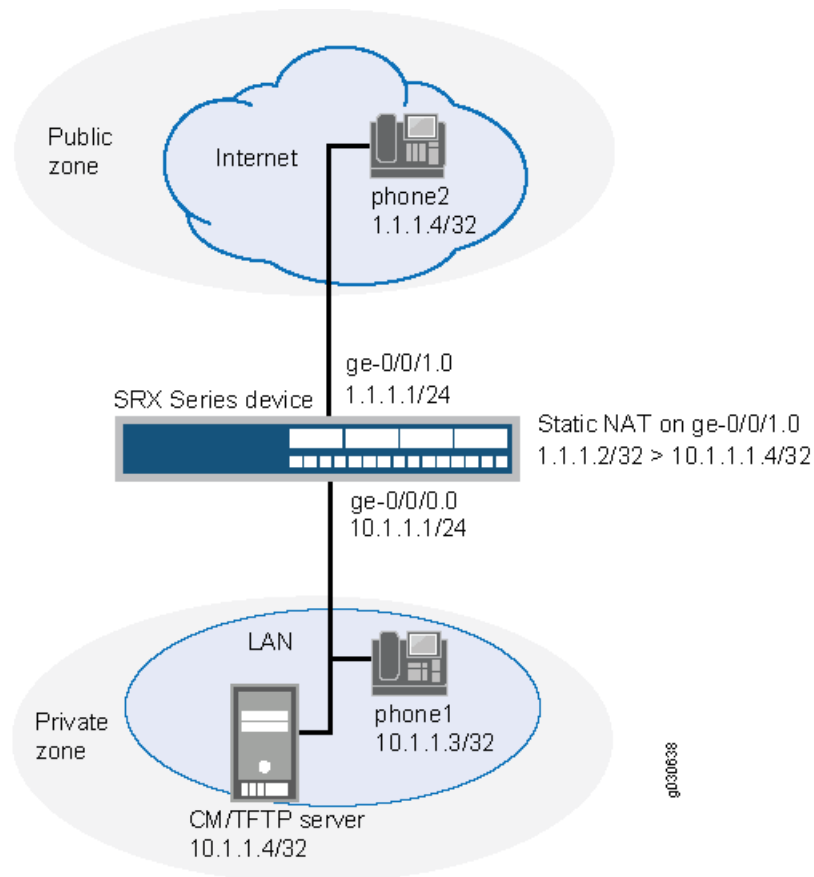
NOTE: We recommend that you change the IP address of the Call Manager, which resides in the TFTP server configuration file (`sep <mac_addr>.cnf`), to the NAT IP address of the Call Manager.

.....

Topology

Figure 24 on page 237 shows call manager or TFTP server in the private zone.

Figure 24: Call Manager or TFTP Server in the Private Zone



In this example, you configure NAT as follows:

- Create a static NAT rule set called to-proxy with a rule called phone2 to match packets from the public zone with the destination address 1.1.1.2/32. For matching packets, the destination IP address is translated to the private address 10.1.1.4/32.
- Configure proxy ARP for the address 1.1.1.2/32 on interface ge-0/0/1.0. This allows the system to respond to ARP requests received on the interface for these addresses.
- Configure a second rule set called phones with a rule called phone1 to enable interface NAT for communication from phone1 to phone2.

Configuration

CLI Quick Configuration

To quickly configure this section of the example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```

set interfaces ge-0/0/0 unit 0 family inet address 10.1.1.1/24
set interfaces ge-0/0/1 unit 0 family inet address 1.1.1.1/24
set security zones security-zone private interfaces ge-0/0/0.0
set security zones security-zone public interfaces ge-0/0/1.0
set security address-book book1 address phone1 10.1.1.3/32
set security address-book book1 address cm-tftp_server 10.1.1.4/32
set security address-book book1 attach zone private
set security address-book book2 address phone2 1.1.1.4/32
set security address-book book2 attach zone public
set security nat source rule-set phones from zone private
set security nat source rule-set phones to zone public
set security nat source rule-set phones rule phone1 match source-address 10.1.1.3/32
set security nat static rule-set to-proxy from zone public
set security nat static rule-set to-proxy rule phone2 match destination-address 1.1.1.2/32
set security nat static rule-set to-proxy rule phone2 then static-nat prefix 10.1.1.4/32
set security nat proxy-arp interface ge-0/0/1.0 address 1.1.1.2/32
set security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy in-pol match source-address
    phone2
set security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy in-pol match
    destination-address cm-tftp_server
set security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy in-pol match
    destination-address phone1
set security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy in-pol match application
    junos-sccp
set security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy in-pol then permit
set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy out-pol match source-address
    any
set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy out-pol match
    destination-address phone2
set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy out-pol match application
    junos-sccp
set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy out-pol then permit
set security policies from-zone private to-zone private policy tftp-pol match
    source-address any
set security policies from-zone private to-zone private policy tftp-pol match
    destination-address any
set security policies from-zone private to-zone private policy tftp-pol match application
    junos-tftp
set security policies from-zone private to-zone private policy tftp-pol then permit

```

Step-by-Step Procedure

The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode* in the CLI User Guide.

To configure NAT for an SCCP ALG Call Manager or a TFTP server located in a private zone:

1. Configure interfaces.

[edit]

```
user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/0 unit 0 family inet address 10.1.1.1/24
```

```
user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/1 unit 0 family inet address 1.1.1.1/24
```

2. Create security zones.


```
[edit security zones]
user@host# set security-zone private interfaces ge-0/0/0.0
user@host# set security-zone public interfaces ge-0/0/1.0
```
3. Create address books and attach zones to them.


```
[edit security address-book book1]
user@host# set address phone1 10.1.1.3/32
user@host# set address cm-tftp_server 10.1.1.4/32
user@host# set attach zone private

[edit security address-book book2]
user@host# set address phone2 1.1.1.4/32
user@host# set attach zone public
```
4. Create a rule set for static NAT and assign a rule to it.


```
[edit security nat static rule-set to-proxy]
user@host# set from zone public
user@host# set rule phone2 match destination-address 1.1.1.2/32
user@host# set rule phone2 then static-nat prefix 10.1.1.4/32
```
5. Configure proxy ARP.


```
[edit security nat]
user@host# set proxy-arp interface ge-0/0/1.0 address 1.1.1.2/32
```
6. Configure interface NAT for communication from phone1 to phone2.


```
[edit security nat source rule-set phones]
user@host# set from zone private
user@host# set to zone public
user@host# set rule phone1 match source-address 10.1.1.3/32
user@host# set rule phone1 then source-nat interface
```
7. Configure a policy to allow traffic from the public zone to the private zone.


```
[edit security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy in-pol]
user@host# set match source-address phone2
user@host# set match destination-address cm-tftp_server
user@host# set match destination-address phone1
user@host# set match application junos-sccp
user@host# set then permit
```
8. Configure a policy to allow traffic from the private zone to the public zone.


```
[edit security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy out-pol]
user@host# set match source-address any
user@host# set match destination-address phone2
user@host# set match application junos-sccp
user@host# set then permit
```

9. Configure a policy to allow traffic from phone1 to the CM/TFTP server.

```
[edit security policies from-zone private to-zone private policy tftp-pol]
user@host# set match source-address any
user@host# set match destination-address any
user@host# set match application junos-tftp
user@host# set then permit
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show interfaces**, **show security zones**, **show security address-book**, **show security nat**, and **show security policies** commands. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
[edit]
user@host# show interfaces
ge-0/0/0 {
  unit 0 {
    family inet {
      address 10.1.1.1/24;
    }
  }
}
ge-0/0/1 {
  unit 0 {
    family inet {
      address 1.1.1.1/24;
    }
  }
}
[edit]
user@host# show security zones
security-zone private {
  interfaces {
    ge-0/0/0.0;
  }
}
security-zone public {
  interfaces {
    ge-0/0/1.0;
  }
}
[edit]
user@host# show security address-book
book1 {
  address phone1 10.1.1.3/32;
  address cm-tftp_server 10.1.1.4/32;
  attach {
    zone private;
  }
}
book2 {
  address phone2 1.1.1.4/32;
  attach {
    zone public;
  }
}
```

```

    }
  }
[edit]
user@host# show security nat
source {
  rule-set phones {
    from zone private;
    to zone public;
    rule phone1 {
      match {
        source-address 10.1.1.3/32;
      }
      then {
        source-nat {
          interface;
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
static {
  rule-set to-proxy {
    from zone public;
    rule phone2 {
      match {
        destination-address 1.1.1.2/32;
      }
      then {
        static-nat prefix 10.1.1.4/32;
      }
    }
  }
}
proxy-arp {
  interface ge-0/0/1.0 {
    address {
      1.1.1.2/32;
    }
  }
}
[edit]
user@host# show security policies
from-zone public to-zone private {
  policy in-pol {
    match {
      source-address phone2;
      destination-address cm-tftp_server;
      destination-address phone1;
      application junos-sccp;
    }
    then {
      permit;
    }
  }
}
from-zone private to-zone public {

```

```

policy out-pol {
  match {
    source-address any;
    destination-address phone2;
    application junos-sccp;
  }
  then {
    permit;
  }
}
}
from-zone private to-zone private {
  policy tftp-pol {
    match {
      source-address any;
      destination-address any;
      application junos-tftp;
    }
    then {
      permit;
    }
  }
}
}

```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Verification

To confirm that the configuration is working properly, perform these tasks:

- [Verifying Source NAT Rule Usage on page 242](#)
- [Verifying Static NAT Configuration on page 243](#)
- [Verifying Static NAT Configuration on page 243](#)
- [Verifying SCCP ALG on page 244](#)
- [Verifying the Security Policies of SIP ALG on page 244](#)

Verifying Source NAT Rule Usage

Purpose Verify that there is traffic matching the source NAT rule.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security nat source rule all** command.

```
user@host> show security nat source rule all
```

```

Total rules: 2
Total referenced IPv4/IPv6 ip-prefixes: 3/0
source NAT rule: r1                Rule-set: rs1
  Rule-Id                          : 1
  Rule position                     : 1
  From interface                    : ge-0/0/5.0
                                   : ge-0/0/6.0
  To interface                      : ge-0/0/2.0
  Match
    Source addresses                : 30.0.0.0      - 30.0.0.255

```

```

40.0.0.0      - 40.0.0.255
Destination port : 0      - 0
Action          : interface
Persistent NAT type : N/A
Persistent NAT mapping type : address-port-mapping
Inactivity timeout : 0
Max session number : 0
Translation hits : 0
source NAT rule: phone1      Rule-set: phones
Rule-Id                  : 3
Rule position            : 2
From zone                : private
To zone                  : public
Match
  Source addresses       : 10.1.1.3      - 10.1.1.3
  Destination port      : 0              - 0
Action                  : interface
Persistent NAT type      : N/A
Persistent NAT mapping type : address-port-mapping
Inactivity timeout      : 0
Max session number      : 0
Translation hits        : 0

```

Meaning The **Translation hits** field shows that, there is no traffic matching the source NAT rule.

Verifying Static NAT Configuration

Purpose Verify that there is traffic matching the static NAT rule set.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security nat static rule phone1** command.

```

user@host> show security nat static rule phone1

source NAT rule: phone1      Rule-set: phones
Rule-Id                    : 3
Rule position              : 2
From zone                  : private
To zone                    : public
Match
  Source addresses         : 10.1.1.3      - 10.1.1.3
  Destination port        : 0              - 0
Action                    : interface
Persistent NAT type        : N/A
Persistent NAT mapping type : address-port-mapping
Inactivity timeout        : 0
Max session number        : 0
Translation hits           : 0

```

Meaning The **Translation hits** field shows that, there is no traffic matching the source NAT rule set.

Verifying Static NAT Configuration

Purpose Verify that there is traffic matching the static NAT rule set.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security nat static rule phone2** command.

```
user@host> show security nat static rule phone2
```

```
Static NAT rule: phone2                Rule-set: to-proxy
Rule-Id                               : 1
Rule position                           : 1
From zone                              : public
Destination addresses                   : 1.1.1.2
Host addresses                         : 10.1.1.4
Netmask                                : 32
Host routing-instance                   : N/A
Translation hits                        : 0
```

Meaning The **Translation hits** field shows that, there is no traffic matching the source NAT rule set.

Verifying SCCP ALG

Purpose Verify that the SCCP ALG is enabled.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security alg status | match sccp** command.

```
user@host> show security alg status | match sccp
```

```
SCCP      : Enabled
```

Meaning The output shows the SCCP ALG status as follows:

- Enabled—Shows the SCCP ALG is enabled.
- Disabled—Shows the SCCP ALG is disabled.

Verifying the Security Policies of SIP ALG

Purpose Verify that the static NAT between public zone and private zone is set.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security policies** command.

```
user@host> show security policies
```

```
from-zone private to-zone public {
  policy out-pol {
    match {
      source-address any;
      destination-address phone2;
      application junos-sccp;
    }
    then {
      permit;
    }
  }
}
```

```

from-zone public to-zone private {
  policy in-pol {
    match {
      source-address phone2;
      destination-address [ cm-tftp_server phone1 ];
      application junos-sccp;
    }
    then {
      permit;
    }
  }
}
from-zone private to-zone private {
  policy tftp-pol {
    match {
      source-address any;
      destination-address any;
      application junos-tftp;
    }
    then {
      permit;
    }
  }
}

```

Meaning The sample output shows that the static NAT between public zone and private zone is set.

Verifying SCCP ALG Configurations

- [Verifying SCCP ALG on page 245](#)
- [Verifying SCCP ALG Calls on page 246](#)
- [Verifying SCCP ALG Call Details on page 246](#)
- [Verifying SCCP ALG Counters on page 247](#)

Verifying SCCP ALG

Purpose Display SCCP verification options.

Action From the CLI, enter the **show security alg sccp** command.

```

user@host> show security alg sccp ?
Possible completions:
  calls          Show SCCP calls
  counters       Show SCCP counters

```

Meaning The output shows a list of all SCCP verification parameters. Verify the following information:

- All SCCP calls
- Counters for all SCCP calls

See Also • *Application Layer Gateways Feature Guide for Security Devices*

Verifying SCCP ALG Calls

Purpose Display a list of all SCCP calls

Action From the CLI, enter the **show security alg sccp calls** command.

```
user@host> show security alg sccp calls
Possible completions:
  calls           Show SCCP calls
  counters        Show SCCP counters
  endpoints       Show SCCP endpoints
```

Meaning The output shows a list of all SCCP verification parameters. Verify the following information:

- All SCCP calls
- Counters for all SCCP calls
- Information about all SCCP endpoints

Verifying SCCP ALG Call Details

Purpose Display details about all SCCP calls.

Action From the CLI, enter the **show security alg sccp calls detail** command.

```
user@host> show security alg sccp calls detail
Client IP address: 11.0.102.91
Client zone: 7
Call Manager IP: 13.0.99.226
Conference ID: 16789504
Resource manager group: 2048
SCCP channel information:
  Media transmit channel address (IP address/Port): 0.0.0.0:0
  Media transmit channel translated address (IP address/Port): 0.0.0.0:0
  Media transmit channel pass-through party ID (PPID): 0
  Media transmit channel resource ID: 0
  Media receive channel address (IP address/Port): 11.0.102.91:20060
  Media receive channel translated address (IP address/Port): 25.0.0.1:1032
  Media receive channel pass-through party ID (PPID): 16934451
  Media receive channel resource ID: 8185
  Multimedia transmit channel address (IP address/Port): 0.0.0.0:0
  Multimedia transmit channel translated address (IP address/Port): 0.0.0.0:0
  Multimedia transmit channel pass-through party ID (PPID): 0
  Multimedia transmit channel resource ID: 0
  Multimedia receive channel address (IP address/Port): 0.0.0.0:0
  Multimedia receive channel translated address (IP address/Port): 0.0.0.0:0
  Multimedia receive channel pass-through party ID (PPID): 0
```

```
Multimedia receive channel resource ID: 0
Total number of calls = 1
```

Meaning The output shows a list of all SCCP verification parameters. Verify the following information:

- Client zone
- Call Manager IP address: 13.0.99.226
- Conference ID
- Resource manager group
- SCCP channel information
- Total number of calls

Verifying SCCP ALG Counters

Purpose Display a list of all SCCP counters

Action From the J-Web interface, select **Monitor>ALGs>SCCP>Counters**. Alternatively, from the CLI, enter the **show security alg sccp counters** command.

```
user@host> show security alg sccp counters
```

```
SCCP call statistics:
```

```
Active client sessions      : 0
Active calls                : 0
Total calls                 : 0
Packets received           : 0
PDUs processed              : 0
Current call rate           : 0
```

```
Error counters:
```

```
Packets dropped             : 0
Decode errors               : 0
Protocol errors             : 0
Address translation errors   : 0
Policy lookup errors        : 0
Unknown PDUs                : 0
Maximum calls exceeded      : 0
Maximum call rate exceeded   : 0
Initialization errors       : 0
Internal errors              : 0
Nonspecific error           : 0
No active calls to delete    : 0
No active client sessions to delete : 0
Session cookie create errors : 0
Invalid NAT cookie detected  : 0
```

Meaning The output shows a list of all SCCP verification parameters. Verify the following information:

- SCCP call statistics

- Error counters

Release History Table

Release	Description
12.1X46-D10	Starting in Junos OS Release 12.1X46-D10 and Junos OS Release 17.3R1, the SCCP ALG supports SCCP versions 16, 17, and 20 and several SCCP messages have been updated with a new format.

Related Documentation

- [Understanding VoIP ALG Types on page 149](#)
- [VoIP DSCP Rewrite Rules on page 150](#)
- [H.323 ALG on page 152](#)

SIP ALG

The Session Initiation Protocol (SIP) is a signaling protocol for initiating, modifying, and terminating multimedia sessions over the internet. SIP supports single-media and multi-media sessions. For more information, see the following topics:

- [Understanding the SIP ALG on page 248](#)
- [Understanding SIP ALG Hold Resources on page 257](#)
- [Understanding the SIP ALG and NAT on page 258](#)
- [Example: Setting SIP ALG Call Duration and Timeouts on page 269](#)
- [Example: Configuring SIP ALG DoS Attack Protection on page 270](#)
- [Example: Allowing Unknown SIP ALG Message Types on page 271](#)
- [Example: Configuring Interface Source NAT for Incoming SIP Calls on page 272](#)
- [Decreasing Network Complexity by Configuring a Source NAT Pool for Incoming SIP Calls on page 278](#)
- [Example: Configuring Static NAT for Incoming SIP Calls on page 287](#)
- [Example: Configuring the SIP Proxy in the Private Zone and NAT in the Public Zone on page 294](#)
- [Example: Configuring a Three-Zone SIP ALG and NAT Scenario on page 300](#)

Understanding the SIP ALG

Session Initiation Protocol (SIP) is an Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF)-standard protocol for initiating, modifying, and terminating multimedia sessions over the Internet. Such sessions might include conferencing, telephony, or multimedia, with features such as instant messaging and application-level mobility in network environments.

Junos OS supports SIP as a service, allowing and denying it based on a policy that you configure. SIP is a predefined service in Junos OS and uses port 5060 as the destination port.

One of SIP's function is to distribute session-description information, and during the session, to negotiate and modify the parameters of the session. SIP is also used to terminate a multimedia session, signal a call establishment, provide failure indication, and provide methods for endpoint registration.

Session-description information is included in INVITE and 200-OK messages or 200-OK and ACK messages and indicates the multimedia type of the session; for example, whether it is voice or video. Although SIP can use different description protocols to describe the session, the Juniper Networks SIP Application Layer Gateway (ALG) supports only the Session Description Protocol (SDP).

SDP provides information that a system can use to join a multimedia session. SDP might include information such as IP addresses, port numbers, times, and dates. Note that the IP address and port number in the SDP header (the c= and m= fields, respectively) are the address and port where the client wants to receive the media streams and not the IP address and port number from which the SIP request originates (although they can be the same).

SIP messages consist of requests from a client to a server and responses to the requests from a server to a client with the purpose of establishing a session (or a call). A user agent (UA) is an application that runs at the endpoints of the call and consists of two parts:

- user agent client (UAC), which sends SIP requests on behalf of the user
- user agent server (UAS), which listens to the responses and notifies the user when they arrive

UAC and UAS are defined in relation to the role a particular agent is playing in a negotiation.

Examples of UAs are SIP proxy servers and phones.

This topic contains the following sections:

- [SIP ALG Operation on page 249](#)
- [SDP Session Descriptions on page 250](#)
- [Pinhole Creation on page 251](#)

SIP ALG Operation

There are two types of SIP traffic, the signaling and the media stream. SIP signaling traffic consists of request and response messages between client and server and uses transport protocols such as UDP or TCP. The media stream carries the data (audio data, for example) using transport protocols.

Starting in Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D25 and Junos OS Release 17.3R1, the SIP ALG supports TCP. TCP support over the SIP ALG reduces traffic to the server by eliminating the need to reregister or refresh the server frequently.

By default, Junos OS supports SIP signaling messages on port 5060. You can configure the port by creating a policy that permits SIP service, and the software filters SIP signaling traffic like any other type of traffic, permitting or denying it. The media stream, however,

uses dynamically assigned port numbers that can change several times during the course of a call. Without fixed ports, it is insecure to create a static policy to control media traffic. In this case, the device invokes the SIP ALG. The device transport ports used for the media sessions are not known in advance; however, the ports used for the SIP negotiation are well-known (or predefined). The ALG registers interest in packets from the control session, which it can easily distinguish from the other packets, and inspects the negotiation for the transport information used for the media session (both IP addresses and ports).



NOTE: The SIP ALG creates a pinhole when it determines a matching IP, port, transport address, and protocol, which are identified with whatever information is known at the time when the pinhole is opened.

The SIP ALG monitors SIP transactions and dynamically creates and manages pinholes based on the information it extracts from these transactions. The Juniper Networks SIP ALG supports all SIP methods and responses. You can allow SIP transactions to traverse the Juniper Networks firewall by creating a static policy that permits SIP service. If the policy is configured to inspect SIP traffic (or, more appropriately, if the policy sends some traffic to the SIP ALG for inspection), the allowed actions are to permit the traffic (in which case the appropriate pinholes are opened) or to deny the traffic.

The SIP ALG intercepts SIP messages that contain SDP and, using a parser, extracts the information it requires to create pinholes. The SIP ALG examines the SDP portion of the packet, and a parser extracts information such as IP addresses and port numbers, which the SIP ALG records in a pinhole table. The SIP ALG uses the IP addresses and port numbers recorded in the pinhole table to open pinholes and allow media streams to traverse the device.



NOTE: When the device is performing NAT, the transport addresses that the UAs employ are incorrect. The SIP ALG modifies the transport addresses based on the translated ports and addresses allocated by the device translating network addresses. When SDP is encrypted, the device cannot either extract or modify the contents of the message and therefore cannot correct the transport addresses. To provide a workaround, the STUN protocol has been deployed (requiring NAT devices to do some form of cone-NAT), which allows the clients to determine the translated addresses and use those newly discovered addresses in the SDP messages.

NEC SIP products are conditionally supported.

SDP Session Descriptions

An SDP session description is a well-defined format for conveying sufficient information to discover and participate in a multimedia session. A session is described by a series of attribute/value pairs, one per line. The attribute names are single characters, followed by =, and a value. Optional values are specified with =*. Values are either an ASCII string, or a sequence of specific types separated by spaces. Attribute names are only unique within the associated syntactic construct, such as within the session, time, or media only.



NOTE: In the SDP session description, the media-level information begins with the `m=` field.

Of the many fields in the SDP description, two are particularly useful to the SIP ALG because they contain Transport Layer information.

- **c=** for connection information

This field can appear at the session or media level. It appears in this format:

`c=<network-type><address-type><connection-address>`

Junos OS supports only “IN” (for Internet) as the network type, “IPv4” as the address type, and a unicast IP address or domain name as the destination (connection) IP address. Starting in Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D40 and Junos OS Release 17.3R1, the “IPv6” address type is also supported.

If the destination IP address is a unicast IP address, the SIP ALG creates pinholes using the IP address and port numbers specified in the media description field `m=`.

- **m=** for media announcement

This field appears at the media level and contains the description of the media. It appears in this format:

`m=<media><port><transport><fmt list>`

Currently, Junos OS supports “RTP” as the Application Layer transport protocol. The port number indicates the destination port of the media stream (the origin is allocated by the remote UA). The format list (fmt list) provides information on the Application Layer protocol that the media uses.

The software opens ports only for RTP and Real-Time Control Protocol (RTCP). Every RTP session has a corresponding RTCP session. Therefore, whenever a media stream uses RTP, the SIP ALG must reserve ports (create pinholes) for both RTP and RTCP traffic. By default, the port number for RTCP is one higher than the RTP port number.

Pinhole Creation

Each pinhole (one for RTP traffic and the other for RTCP traffic) share the same destination IP address. The IP address comes from the `c=` field in the SDP session description. Because the `c=` field can appear in either the session-level or the media-level portion of the SDP session description, the parser determines the IP address based on the following rules (in accordance with SDP conventions):

- First, the SIP ALG parser looks for a `c=` field containing an IP address in the media level. If there is such a field, the parser extracts that IP address, and the SIP ALG uses that address to create a pinhole for the media.
- If there is no `c=` field in the media level, the SIP ALG parser extracts the IP address from the `c=` field in the session level, and the SIP ALG uses that IP address to create a pinhole for the media. If the session description does not contain a `c=` field in either level, this

indicates an error in the protocol stack, and the device drops the packet and logs the event.

The SIP ALG also opens pinholes for signal traffic. These signal pinholes are useful after the previous signal session timeout, and they are also useful for the signal traffic sent to a third-party address that does not match with the previous signal session. The SIP ALG signal pinholes never age out, unlike RTP or RTCP pinholes, where only the destination IP and destination port are specified.

The SIP ALG opens signal pinholes for following headers, if needed:

- VIA
- CONTACT
- ROUTE
- RECORD-ROUTE

The SIP ALG needs the following information to create a pinhole. This information either comes from the SDP session description or from the SIP headers (as listed above).

- Protocol—UDP or TCP.
- Source IP—Unknown.
- Source port—Unknown.
- Destination IP—The parser extracts the destination IP address from the c= field at the media or session level.
- Destination port—The parser extracts the destination port number for RTP from the m= field in the media level and calculates the destination port number for RTCP using the following formula:

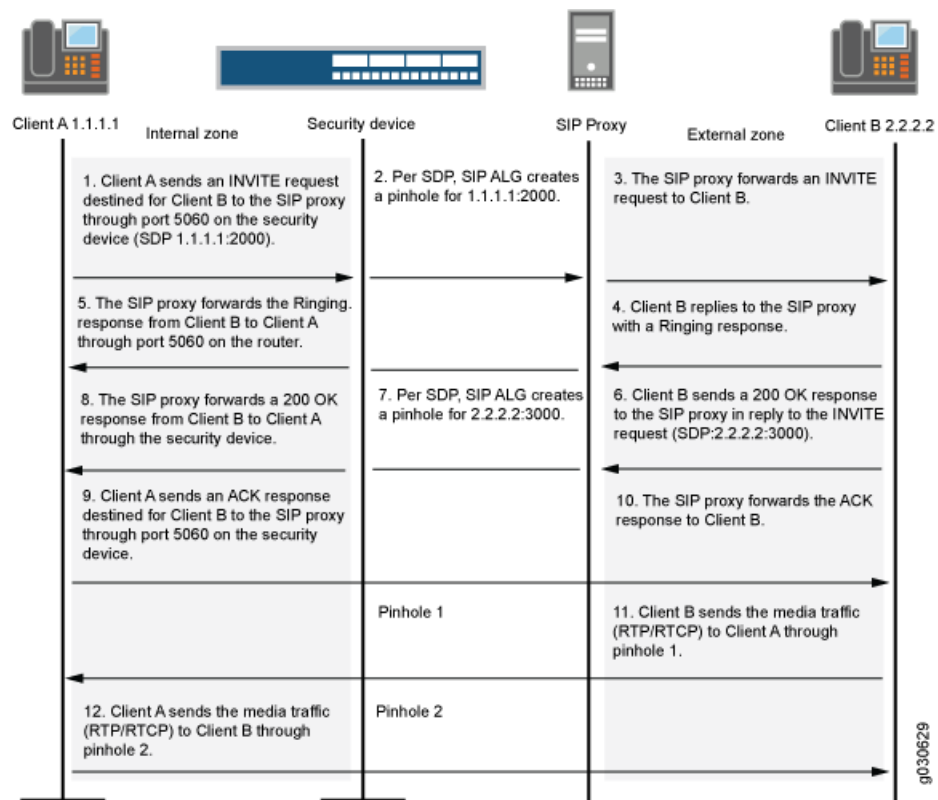
RTP port number + one

- Lifetime—This value indicates the length of time (in seconds) during which a pinhole is open to allow a packet through. A packet must go through the pinhole before the lifetime expires. When the lifetime expires, the SIP ALG removes the pinhole.

When a packet goes through the pinhole within the lifetime period, immediately afterwards the SIP ALG removes the pinhole for the direction from which the packet came.

[Figure 25 on page 253](#) describes a call setup between two SIP clients and how the SIP ALG creates pinholes to allow RTP and RTCP traffic. The illustration assumes that the device has a policy that permits SIP, thus opening port 5060 for SIP signaling messages.

Figure 25: SIP ALG Call Setup



NOTE: The SIP ALG does not create pinholes for RTP and RTCP traffic when the destination IP address is 0.0.0.0, which indicates that the session is on hold. To put a session on hold during a telephone communication, for example, Client A sends Client B a SIP message in which the destination IP address is 0.0.0.0. Doing so indicates to Client B that it should not send any media until further notice. If Client B sends media anyway, the device drops the packets.

Understanding IPv6 Support for SIP ALG

IPv6 is supported on the SIP ALG along with NAT-PT mode and NAT64 address translation.

The SIP ALG processes the IPv6 address in the same way it processes the IPv4 address for updating the payload if NAT is configured and opening pinholes for future traffic.

Special processing occurs for the following formats:

- IPv6 in SIP URIs**—The SIP URI looks the same as a URI with IPv4 addresses. As in all URIs, an IPv6 address is enclosed in square brackets. The IPv6 address blocks are separated by colons. In many notations, a colon separates the hostname or IP address from the protocol port. To parse the full IPv6 address and separate the port, the address is encapsulated within square brackets

- **IPv6 in SDP**—IPv6 addresses in the Session Description Protocol (SDP) have the IP6 marker.
- The SIP ALG with IPv6 support has the following limitation:
 - When NAT64 with persistent NAT is implemented, the SIP ALG adds the NAT translation to the persistent NAT binding table if NAT is configured on the Address of Record (AOR). Because persistent NAT cannot duplicate the address configured, coexistence of NAT66 and NAT64 configured on the same address is not supported. Only one binding is created for the same source IP address.

Understanding Scaling Busy Lamp Field Support for the UDP-Based SIP ALG

Busy lamp field (BLF) is a light on an IP phone that indicates whether another extension connected to the same private branch exchange (PBX) is busy or not. You can manually configure the BLF by using a Web interface. When BLF is configured, the phone subscribes to a resource list available on the IP PBX to be notified of status information for other extensions. BLF works through the Session Initiation Protocol (SIP) and uses the SUBSCRIBE and NOTIFY messages. Usually, the phone is the subscriber and the IP PBX is the notifier.

When a phone is registered to the IP PBX, the IP PBX notifies the phone of the state of the resource list. For example, if the resource list is huge, the body of the NOTIFY message will also be huge. Because the SIP ALG supports only 3000-byte SIP messages, it bypasses the huge NOTIFY message. If there are too many instances of BLF in the message body, the payload will not be changed and the gate will not be opened.

Starting with Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D15 and Junos OS Release 17.3R1, the SIP ALG supports 65,000-byte SIP messages on the UDP protocol. In the scaling BLF application, if every instance is around 500 bytes, the SIP ALG supports 100 instances in one SIP UDP message.

BLF support for the UDP-based SIP ALG includes the following features:

- The device can send and receive 65,000-byte SIP messages.
- The SIP ALG can parse the 65,000-byte SIP messages and open the pinhole, if required.
- The SIP ALG regenerates the new jumbo SIP message if NAT is configured and the payload is changed.

Understanding SIP ALG Request Methods

The Session Initiation Protocol (SIP) transaction model includes a number of request and response messages, each of which contains a *method* field that denotes the purpose of the message.

Junos OS supports the following method types and response codes:

- INVITE—A user sends an INVITE request to invite another user to participate in a session. The body of an INVITE request can contain the description of the session.
- ACK—The user from whom the INVITE originated sends an ACK request to confirm reception of the final response to the INVITE request. If the original INVITE request did not contain the session description, the ACK request must include it.
- OPTIONS—The User Agent (UA) obtains information about the capabilities of the SIP proxy. A server responds with information about what methods, session description protocols, and message encoding it supports.
- BYE—A user sends a BYE request to abandon a session. A BYE request from either user automatically terminates the session.
- CANCEL—A user sends a CANCEL request to cancel a pending INVITE request. A CANCEL request has no effect if the SIP server processing the INVITE had sent a final response for the INVITE before it received the CANCEL.
- REGISTER—A user sends a REGISTER request to a SIP registrar server to inform it of the current location of the user. A SIP registrar server records all the information it receives in REGISTER requests and makes this information available to any SIP server attempting to locate a user.
- Info—Used to communicate mid-session signaling information along the signaling path for the call.
- Subscribe—Used to request current state and state updates from a remote node.
- Notify—Sent to inform subscribers of changes in state to which the subscriber has a subscription.
- Refer—Used to refer the recipient (identified by the Request-URI) to a third party by the contact information provided in the request.

For example, if user A in a private network refers user B, in a public network, to user C, who is also in the private network, the SIP Application Layer Gateway (ALG) allocates a new IP address and port number for user C so that user C can be contacted by user B. If user C is registered with a registrar, however, its port mapping is stored in the ALG Network Address Translation (NAT) table and is reused to perform the translation.

- Update—Used to open pinhole for new or updated SDP information. The Via:, From:, To:, Call-ID:, Contact:, Route:, and Record-Route: header fields are modified.
- 1xx, 202, 2xx, 3xx, 4xx, 5xx, 6xx Response Codes—Used to indicate the status of a transaction. Header fields are modified.

SIP ALG Configuration Overview

The Session Initiation Protocol Application Layer Gateway (SIP ALG) is disabled by default on SRX device—it should be enabled using the CLI if required. On other devices, it is enabled by default. To fine-tune SIP ALG operations use the following instructions:

1. Control SIP call activity. For instructions, see [“Example: Setting SIP ALG Call Duration and Timeouts” on page 269](#).

2. Protect the SIP proxy server from denial-of-service (DoS) flood attacks. For instructions, see [“Example: Configuring SIP ALG DoS Attack Protection” on page 270](#).
3. Enable unknown messages to pass when the session is in Network Address Translation (NAT) mode and route mode. For instructions, see [“Example: Allowing Unknown SIP ALG Message Types” on page 271](#).
4. Accommodate proprietary SIP call flows. For instructions, see *Retaining SIP ALG Hold Resources (CLI Procedure)*

Understanding SIP ALG DoS Attack Protection

The ability of the Session Initiation Protocol (SIP) proxy server to process calls can be impacted by repeat SIP INVITE requests—requests that it initially denied. The denial-of-service (DoS) protection feature enables you to configure the device to monitor INVITE requests and proxy server replies to them. If a reply contains a 3xx, 4xx, or 5xx response code other than 401, 407, 487, and 488 that are not real failure responses, then the request should not be blocked. See [“Understanding the SIP ALG and NAT” on page 258](#). The ALG stores the source IP address of the request and the IP address of the proxy server in a table. Subsequently, the device checks all INVITE requests against this table and, for a configurable number of seconds (the default is 3), discards any packets that match entries in the table. You can configure the device to monitor and deny repeat INVITE requests to all proxy servers, or you can protect a specific proxy server by specifying the destination IP address. SIP attack protection is configured globally.

Understanding SIP ALG Unknown Message Types

This feature enables you to specify how unidentified Session Initiation Protocol (SIP) messages are handled by the device. The default is to drop unknown (unsupported) messages.

We do not recommend permitting unknown messages because they can compromise security. However, in a secure test or production environment, this command can be useful for resolving interoperability issues with disparate vendor equipment. Permitting unknown SIP messages can help you get your network operational so you can later analyze your voice-over-IP (VoIP) traffic to determine why some messages were being dropped. The unknown SIP message type feature enables you to configure the device to accept SIP traffic containing unknown message types in both Network Address Translation (NAT) mode and route mode.



NOTE: This option applies only to received packets identified as supported VoIP packets. If a packet cannot be identified, it is always dropped. If a packet is identified as a supported protocol and you have configured the device to permit unknown message types, the message is forwarded without processing.

Understanding SIP ALG Call Duration and Timeouts

The call duration and timeout features give you control over Session Initiation Protocol (SIP) call activity and help you to manage network resources.

Typically a call ends when one of the clients sends a BYE or CANCEL request. The SIP Application Layer Gateway (ALG) intercepts the BYE or CANCEL request and removes all media sessions for that call. There could be reasons or problems preventing clients in a call from sending BYE or CANCEL requests, for example, a power failure. In this case, the call might go on indefinitely, consuming resources on the device.

A call can have one or more voice channels. Each voice channel has two sessions (or two media streams), one for Real-Time Transport Protocol (RTP) traffic and one for Real-Time Control Protocol (RTCP) signaling. When managing the sessions, the device considers the sessions in each voice channel as one group. Timeouts and call duration settings apply to a group as opposed to each session.

The following parameters govern SIP call activity:

- **inactive-media-timeout**—This parameter indicates the maximum length of time (in seconds) a call can remain active without any media (RTP or RTCP) traffic within a group. Each time an RTP or RTCP packet occurs within a call, this timeout resets. When the period of inactivity exceeds this setting, the temporary openings (pinholes) in the firewall the SIP ALG opened for media are closed. The default setting is 120 seconds, and the range is 10 through 2550 seconds. Note that upon timeout, resources for media (sessions and pinholes) are removed and SIP calls on the device will also be terminated if all the media resources of this call are removed.
- **maximum-call-duration**—This parameter sets the absolute maximum length of a call. When a call exceeds this parameter setting, the SIP ALG tears down the call and releases the media sessions. The default setting is 720 minutes, and the range is 3 through 720 minutes.
- **t1-interval**—This parameter specifies the roundtrip time estimate, in seconds, of a transaction between endpoints. The default is 500 milliseconds. Because many SIP timers scale with the t1-interval (as described in RFC 3261), when you change the value of the t1-interval timer, those SIP timers also are adjusted.
- **t4-interval**—This parameter specifies the maximum time a message remains in the network. The default is 5 seconds and the range is 5 through 10 seconds. Because many SIP timers scale with the t4-interval (as described in RFC 3261), when you change the value of the t4-interval timer, those SIP timers also are adjusted.
- **c-timeout**—This parameter specifies the INVITE transaction timeout at the proxy, in minutes; the default is 3. Because the SIP ALG is in the middle, instead of using the INVITE transaction timer value B (which is $(64 * T1) = 32$ seconds), the SIP ALG gets its timer value from the proxy.

Understanding SIP ALG Hold Resources

When a user puts a call on hold, the Session Initiation Protocol Application Layer Gateway (SIP ALG) releases Session Description Protocol (SDP) media resources, such as pinholes and translation contexts. When the user resumes the call, an INVITE request message negotiates a new SDP offer and answer and the SIP ALG reallocates resources for the media stream. This can result in new translated IP address and port numbers for the media description even when the media description is the same as the previous

description. This is compliant with *RFC 3264 An Offer/Answer Model with the Session Description Protocol (SDP)*.

Some proprietary SIP implementations have designed call flows so that the User Agent (UA) module ignores the new SDP INVITE offer and continues to use the SDP offer of the previous negotiation. To accommodate this functionality, you must configure the device to retain SDP media resources when a call is put on hold for reuse when the call is resumed.

Retaining SIP ALG Hold Resources (CLI Procedure)

To accommodate proprietary SIP call flows:

```
user@host# set security alg sip retain-hold-resource
```

Understanding the SIP ALG and NAT

The Network Address Translation (NAT) protocol enables multiple hosts in a private subnet to share a single public IP address to access the Internet. For outgoing traffic, NAT replaces the private IP address of the host in the private subnet with the public IP address. For incoming traffic, the public IP address is converted back into the private address, and the message is routed to the appropriate host in the private subnet.

Using NAT with the Session Initiation Protocol (SIP) service is more complicated because SIP messages contain IP addresses in the SIP headers as well as in the SIP body. When using NAT with the SIP service, the SIP headers contain information about the caller and the receiver, and the device translates this information to hide it from the outside network. The SIP body contains the Session Description Protocol (SDP) information, which includes IP addresses and port numbers for transmission of the media. The device translates SDP information for allocating resources to send and receive the media.

How IP addresses and port numbers in SIP messages are replaced depends on the direction of the message. For an outgoing message, the private IP address and port number of the client are replaced with the public IP address and port number of the Juniper Networks firewall. For an incoming message, the public address of the firewall is replaced with the private address of the client.

When an INVITE message is sent out across the firewall, the SIP Application Layer Gateway (ALG) collects information from the message header into a call table, which it uses to forward subsequent messages to the correct endpoint. When a new message arrives, for example an ACK or 200 OK, the ALG compares the "From:", "To:", and "Call-ID:" fields against the call table to identify the call context of the message. If a new INVITE message arrives that matches the existing call, the ALG processes it as a REINVITE.

When a message containing SDP information arrives, the ALG allocates ports and creates a NAT mapping between them and the ports in the SDP. Because the SDP requires sequential ports for the Real-Time Transport Protocol (RTP) and Real-Time Control Protocol (RTCP) channels, the ALG provides consecutive even-odd ports. If it is unable to find a pair of ports, it discards the SIP message.

IPv6 is supported on the SIP ALG along with NAT-PT mode and NAT64 address translation.

This topic contains the following sections:

- [Outgoing Calls on page 259](#)
- [Incoming Calls on page 259](#)
- [Forwarded Calls on page 260](#)
- [Call Termination on page 260](#)
- [Call Re-INVITE Messages on page 260](#)
- [Call Session Timers on page 260](#)
- [Call Cancellation on page 261](#)
- [Forking on page 261](#)
- [SIP Messages on page 261](#)
- [SIP Headers on page 261](#)
- [SIP Body on page 263](#)
- [SIP NAT Scenario on page 264](#)
- [Classes of SIP Responses on page 265](#)
- [NAT Mode in Pure IPv6 Mode \(NAT66\) for SIP IPv6 ALG on page 266](#)
- [NAT-PT on page 266](#)
- [NAT64 on page 267](#)
- [STUN and SIP ALG on page 267](#)

Outgoing Calls

When a SIP call is initiated with a SIP request message from the internal to the external network, NAT replaces the IP addresses and port numbers in the SDP and binds the IP addresses and port numbers to the Juniper Networks firewall. Via, Contact, Route, and Record-Route SIP header fields, if present, are also bound to the firewall IP address. The ALG stores these mappings for use in retransmissions and for SIP response messages.

The SIP ALG then opens pinholes in the firewall to allow media through the device on the dynamically assigned ports negotiated based on information in the SDP and the Via, Contact, and Record-Route header fields. The pinholes also allow incoming packets to reach the Contact, Via, and Record-Route IP addresses and ports. When processing return traffic, the ALG inserts the original Contact, Via, Route, and Record-Route SIP fields back into packets.

Incoming Calls

Incoming calls are initiated from the public network to public static NAT addresses or to interface IP addresses on the device. Static NATs are statically configured IP addresses that point to internal hosts; interface IP addresses are dynamically recorded by the ALG as it monitors REGISTER messages sent by internal hosts to the SIP registrar. When the device receives an incoming SIP packet, it sets up a session and forwards the payload of the packet to the SIP ALG.

The ALG examines the SIP request message (initially an INVITE) and, based on information in the SDP, opens gates for outgoing media. When a 200 OK response message arrives,

the SIP ALG performs NAT on the IP addresses and ports and opens pinholes in the outbound direction. (The opened gates have a short time-to-live, and they time out if a 200 OK response message is not received quickly.)

When a 200 OK response arrives, the SIP proxy examines the SDP information and reads the IP addresses and port numbers for each media session. The SIP ALG on the device performs NAT on the addresses and port numbers, opens pinholes for outbound traffic, and refreshes the timeout for gates in the inbound direction.

When the ACK arrives for the 200 OK, it also passes through the SIP ALG. If the message contains SDP information, the SIP ALG ensures that the IP addresses and port numbers are not changed from the previous INVITE—if they are, the ALG deletes old pinholes and creates new pinholes to allow media to pass through. The ALG also monitors the Via, Contact, and Record-Route SIP fields and opens new pinholes if it determines that these fields have changed.

Forwarded Calls

A forwarded call is when, for example, user A outside the network calls user B inside the network, and user B forwards the call to user C outside the network. The SIP ALG processes the INVITE from user A as a normal incoming call. But when the ALG examines the forwarded call from B to C outside the network and notices that B and C are reached using the same interface, it does not open pinholes in the firewall, because media will flow directly between user A and user C.

Call Termination

The BYE message terminates a call. When the device receives a BYE message, it translates the header fields just as it does for any other message. But because a BYE message must be acknowledged by the receiver with a 200 OK, the ALG delays call teardown for 5 seconds to allow time for transmission of the 200 OK.

Call Re-INVITE Messages

Re-INVITE messages add new media sessions to a call and remove existing media sessions. When new media sessions are added to a call, new pinholes are opened in the firewall and new address bindings are created. The process is identical to the original call setup. When all the media sessions or media pinholes are removed from a call, the call is removed when a BYE message is received.

Call Session Timers

As a precautionary measure, the SIP ALG uses hard timeout values to set the maximum amount of time a call can exist. This ensures that the device is protected should one of the following events occur:

- End systems crash during a call and a BYE message is not received.
- Malicious users never send a BYE in an attempt to attack a SIP ALG.
- Poor implementations of SIP proxy fail to process Record-Route and never send a BYE message.
- Network failures prevent a BYE message from being received.

Call Cancellation

Either party can cancel a call by sending a CANCEL message. Upon receiving a CANCEL message, the SIP ALG closes pinholes through the firewall—if any have been opened—and releases address bindings. Before releasing the resources, the ALG delays the control channel age-out for approximately 5 seconds to allow time for the final 200 OK to pass through. The call is terminated when the 5-second timeout expires, regardless of whether a 487 or non-200 response arrives.

Forking

Forking enables a SIP proxy to send a single INVITE message to multiple destinations simultaneously. When the multiple 200 OK response messages arrive for the single call, the SIP ALG parses but updates call information with the first 200 OK messages it receives.

SIP Messages

The SIP message format consists of a SIP header section and the SIP body. In request messages, the first line of the header section is the request line, which includes the method type, request-URI, and protocol version. In response messages, the first line is the status line, which contains a status code. SIP headers contain IP addresses and port numbers used for signaling. The SIP body, separated from the header section by a blank line, is reserved for session description information, which is optional. Junos OS currently supports the SDP only. The SIP body contains IP addresses and port numbers used to transport the media.

SIP Headers

In the following sample SIP request message, NAT replaces the IP addresses in the header fields to hide them from the outside network.

```
INVITE bob@10.150.20.5 SIP/2.0
Via: SIP/2.0/UDP 10.150.20.3:5434
From: alice@10.150.20.3
To: bob@10.150.20.5
Call-ID: a12abcde@10.150.20.3
Contact: alice@10.150.20.3:5434
Route: <sip:netscreen@10.150.20.3:5060>
Record-Route: <sip:netscreen@10.150.20.3:5060>
```

How IP address translation is performed depends on the type and direction of the message. A message can be any of the following:

- Inbound request
- Outbound response
- Outbound request
- Inbound response

[Table 21 on page 262](#) shows how NAT is performed in each of these cases. Note that for several of the header fields the ALG determine more than just whether the messages

comes from inside or outside the network. It must also determine what client initiated the call, and whether the message is a request or response.

Table 21: Requesting Messages with NAT Table

Inbound Request (from public to private)	To:	Replace domain with local address
	From:	None
	Call-ID:	None
	Via:	None
	Request-URI:	Replace ALG address with local address
	Contact:	None
	Record-Route:	None
	Route:	None
Outbound Response (from private to public)	To:	Replace ALG address with local address
	From:	None
	Call-ID:	None
	Via:	None
	Request-URI:	N/A
	Contact:	Replace local address with ALG address
	Record-Route:	Replace local address with ALG address
	Route:	None

Table 21: Requesting Messages with NAT Table (continued)

Outbound Request (from private to public)	To:	None
	From:	Replace local address with ALG address
	Call-ID:	None
	Via:	Replace local address with ALG address
	Request-URI:	None
	Contact:	Replace local address with ALG address
	Record-Route:	Replace local address with ALG address
	Route:	Replace local address with ALG address
Outbound Response (from public to private)	To:	None
	From:	Replace ALG address with local address
	Call-ID:	None
	Via:	Replace ALG address with local address
	Request-URI:	N/A
	Contact:	None
	Record-Route:	Replace ALG address with local address
	Route:	Replace ALG address with local address

SIP Body

The SDP information in the SIP body includes IP addresses the ALG uses to create channels for the media stream. Translation of the SDP section also allocates resources, that is, port numbers to send and receive the media.

The following excerpt from a sample SDP section shows the fields that are translated for resource allocation.

```
o=user 2344234 55234434 IN IP4 10.150.20.3
c=IN IP4 10.150.20.3
m=audio 43249 RTP/AVP 0
```

SIP messages can contain more than one media stream. The concept is similar to attaching multiple files to an e-mail message. For example, an INVITE message sent from a SIP client to a SIP server might have the following fields:

```
c=IN IP4 10.123.33.4
```

```

m=audio 33445 RTP/AVP 0
c=IN IP4 10.123.33.4
m=audio 33447 RTP/AVP 0
c=IN IP4 10.123.33.4
m=audio 33449 RTP/AVP 0

```

Junos OS supports up to 6 SDP channels negotiated for each direction, for a total of 12 channels per call. For more information, see [“Understanding the SIP ALG” on page 248](#).

SIP NAT Scenario

Figure 26 on page 264 and Figure 27 on page 265 show a SIP call INVITE and 200 OK. In Figure 26 on page 264, ph1 sends a SIP INVITE message to ph2. Note how the IP addresses in the header fields—shown in bold font—are translated by the device.

The SDP section of the INVITE message indicates where the caller is willing to receive media. Note that the Media Pinhole contains two port numbers, 52002 and 52003, for RTCP and RTP. The Via/Contact Pinhole provides port number 5060 for SIP signaling.

Observe how, in the 200 OK response message in Figure 27 on page 265, the translations performed in the INVITE message are reversed. The IP addresses in this message, being public, are not translated, but gates are opened to allow the media stream access to the private network.

Figure 26: SIP NAT Scenario 1

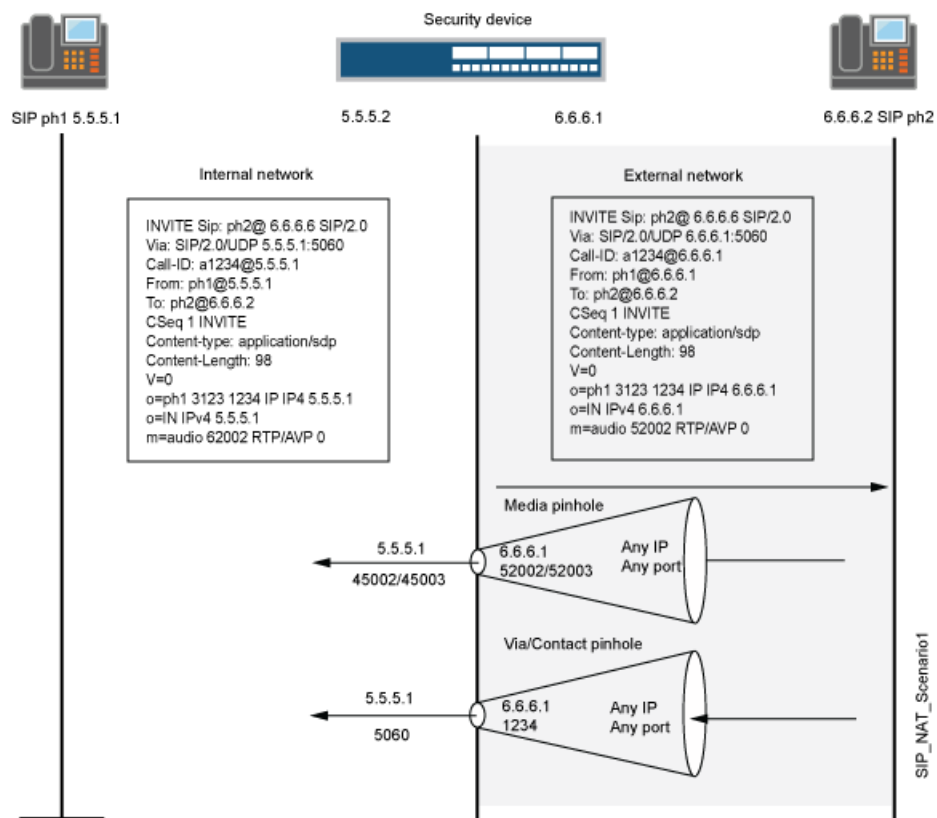
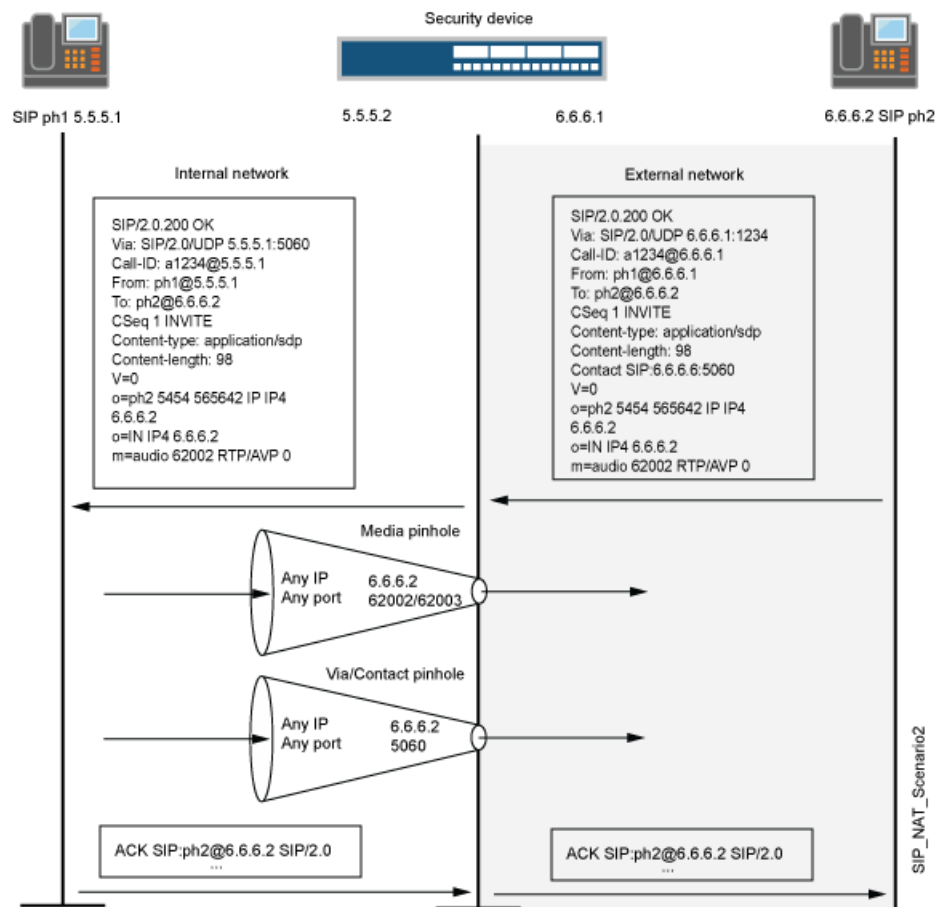


Figure 27: SIP NAT Scenario 2



Classes of SIP Responses

SIP responses provide status information about SIP transactions and include a response code and a reason phrase. SIP responses are grouped into the following classes:

- Informational (100 to 199)—Request received, continuing to process the request.
- Success (200 to 299)—Action successfully received, understood, and accepted.
- Redirection (300 to 399)—Further action required to complete the request.
- Client Error (400 to 499)—Request contains bad syntax or cannot be fulfilled at this server.
- Server Error (500 to 599)—Server failed to fulfill an apparently valid request.
- Global Failure (600 to 699)—Request cannot be fulfilled at any server.

Table 22 on page 266 provides a complete list of current SIP responses.

Table 22: SIP Responses

Informational	100 Trying	180 Ringing	181 Call is being forwarded
	182 Queued	183 Session progress	
Success	200 OK	202 Accepted	
Redirection	300 Multiple choices	301 Moved permanently	302 Moved temporarily
	305 Use proxy	380 Alternative service	
Client Error	400 Bad request	401 Unauthorized	402 Payment required
	403 Forbidden	404 Not found	405 Method not allowed
	406 Not acceptable	407 Proxy authentication required	408 Request time-out
	409 Conflict	410 Gone	411 Length required
	413 Request entity too large	414 Request URL too large	415 Unsupported media type
	420 Bad extension	480 Temporarily not available	481 Call leg/transaction does not exist
	482 Loop detected	483 Too many hops	484 Address incomplete
	485 Ambiguous	486 Busy here	487 Request canceled
	488 Not acceptable here		
Server Error	500 Server internal error	501 Not implemented	502 Bad gateway
	502 Service unavailable	504 Gateway time-out	505 SIP version not supported
Global Failure	600 Busy everywhere	603 Decline	604 Does not exist anywhere
	606 Not acceptable		

NAT Mode in Pure IPv6 Mode (NAT66) for SIP IPv6 ALG

The SIP IPv6 ALG supports NAT66 just like NAT44. NAT66 (IPv6 NAT) provides source NAT and static NAT functions similar to NAT44 (IPv4 NAT).

NAT-PT

Network Address Translation Protocol Translation (NAT-PT) (RFC 2766) is a protocol translation mechanism that allows communication between IPv6-only and IPv4-only nodes through protocol-independent translation of IPv4 and IPv6 datagrams, requiring no state information for the session.

NAT-PT is implemented by normal NAT from IPv6 address to IPv4 address and vice versa. The SIP ALG processes those address translations in the payload just as the addresses are processed in normal NAT.

NAT-PT binds the addresses in the IPv6 network with addresses in the IPv4 network and vice versa to provide transparent routing for the datagrams traversing between address realms.

The main advantage of NAT-PT is that the end devices and networks can run either IPv4 addresses or IPv6 addresses and traffic can be started from any side.

NAT64

NAT64 is a mechanism to allow IPv6 hosts to communicate with IPv4 servers. NAT64 is required to keep the IPv6 to IPv4 address mapping. Such address mapping is either statically configured by the system administrator (stateless translation), or more frequently, created automatically when the first packet from the IPv6 network reaches NAT64 to be translated (stateful).

On SRX Series devices, NAT64 is implemented by persistent NAT. When the first SIP request message (first packet should be only from IPv6) transverses the DUT, address binding is created and then the packets can flow in both directions.

The NAT64 mechanism translates IPv6 packets to IPv4 packets and vice versa, which allows IPv6 clients to contact to the IPv4 servers using unicast UDP, TCP, or ICMP. The NAT-PT and NAT64 behavior seems similar, but these mechanisms are implemented differently.

When NAT64 with persistent NAT is implemented, the SIP ALG with IPv6 support adds the NAT translation to the persistent NAT binding table if NAT is configured on the address of record. Because persistent NAT cannot duplicate the address configured, coexistence of NAT66 and NAT64 configured on the same address is not supported.

Only one binding is created for the same source IP address.

STUN and SIP ALG

Session Traversal Utilities for NAT (STUN) is a solution to make VoIP work through NAT and firewall.

Previously STUN worked without the SIP ALG. This means that the SIP ALG was not involved when persistent NAT was configured.

STUN can coexist with the SIP ALG and SIP ALG is involved when persistent NAT is configured.

Understanding Incoming SIP ALG Call Support Using the SIP Registrar and NAT

Session Initiation Protocol (SIP) registration provides a discovery capability by which SIP proxies and location servers can identify the location or locations where users want to be contacted. A user registers one or more contact locations by sending a REGISTER message to the registrar. The To and Contact fields in the REGISTER message contain the address-of-record Uniform Resource Identifier (URI) and one or more contact URIs,

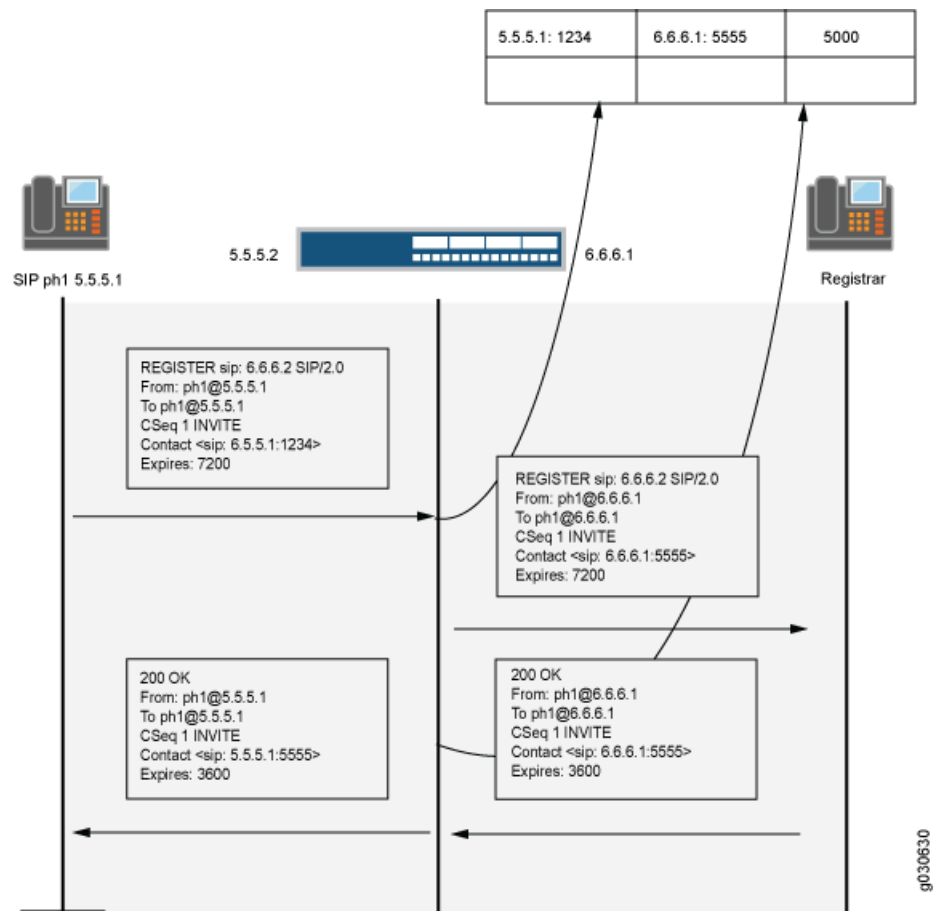
as shown in [Figure 28 on page 268](#). Registration creates bindings in a location service that associates the address-of-record with the contact address or addresses.

The device monitors outgoing REGISTER messages, performs Network Address Translation (NAT) on these addresses, and stores the information in an Incoming NAT table. Then, when an INVITE message is received from outside the network, the device uses the Incoming NAT table to identify which internal host to route the INVITE message to. You can take advantage of SIP proxy registration service to allow incoming calls by configuring interface source NAT or NAT pools on the egress interface of the device. Interface source NAT is adequate for handling incoming calls in a small office, whereas we recommend setting up source NAT pools for larger networks or an enterprise environment.



NOTE: Incoming call support using interface source NAT or a source NAT pool is supported for SIP and H.323 services only. For incoming calls, Junos OS currently supports UDP and TCP only. Domain name resolution is also currently not supported; therefore, URIs must contain IP addresses, as shown in [Figure 28 on page 268](#).

Figure 28: Using the SIP Registrar



Example: Setting SIP ALG Call Duration and Timeouts

This example shows how to set the call duration and the media inactivity timeout.

Requirements

Before you begin, review the call duration and timeout features used to control SIP call activity. See *Understanding SIP ALG Call Duration and Timeouts*.

Overview

The call duration and inactivity media timeout features help you to conserve network resources and maximize throughput.

The **maximum-call-duration** parameter sets the maximum allowable length of time a call can be active. When the duration is exceeded, the SIP ALG tears down the call and releases the media sessions. The default setting is 720 minutes, and the range is 3 through 720 minutes. This setting also frees up bandwidth in cases where calls fail to properly terminate.

The **inactive-media-timeout** parameter indicates the maximum length of time (in seconds) a call can remain active without any media (RTP or RTCP) traffic within a group. Each time an RTP or RTCP packet occurs within a call, this timeout resets. When the period of inactivity exceeds this setting, the SIP ALG temporary openings (pinholes) for media in the firewall are closed. The default setting is 120 seconds, and the range is 10 through 2550 seconds. Upon timeout, while resources for media (sessions and pinholes) are removed, the call is not terminated.

In this example, the call duration is set to 36000 seconds and the media inactivity timeout is set to 90 seconds.

Configuration

GUI Step-by-Step Procedure

To set the SIP ALG call duration and the media inactivity timeout:

1. Select **Configure >Security >ALG**.
2. Select the **SIP** tab.
3. In the Maximum call duration field, type **600**.
4. In the Inactive media timeout field, enter **90**.
5. Click **OK** to check your configuration and save it as a candidate configuration.
6. If you are done configuring the device, click **Commit Options >Commit**.

**Step-by-Step
Procedure**

To set the SIP ALG call duration and the media inactivity timeout:

1. Configure the SIP ALG call duration.

[edit]
user@host# **set security alg sip maximum-call-duration 600**
2. Configure the SIP ALG inactivity media timeout.

[edit]
user@host# **set security alg sip inactive-media-timeout 90**
3. If you are done configuring the device, commit the configuration.

[edit]
user@host# **commit**

Verification

To verify the configuration is working properly, enter the **show security alg sip** command.

Example: Configuring SIP ALG DoS Attack Protection

This example shows how to configure the DoS attack protection feature.

Requirements

Before you begin, review the DoS attack protection feature used to control SIP call activity. See *Understanding SIP ALG DoS Attack Protection*.

Overview

The ability of the SIP proxy server to process calls can be impacted by repeat SIP INVITE requests—requests that the server initially denied. The DoS protection feature enables you to configure the device to monitor INVITE requests and proxy server replies to them.

In this example, the device is configured to protect a single SIP proxy server (1.1.1.3) from repeat INVITE requests to which it has already been denied service. Packets are dropped for a period of 5 seconds, after which the device resumes forwarding INVITE requests from those sources.

Configuration**GUI Step-by-Step
Procedure**

To configure SIP ALG DoS attack protection:

1. Select **Configure>Security>ALG**.
2. Select the **SIP** tab.
3. In the Enable attack protection area, click the **Selected servers** option.
4. In the Destination IP box, enter **1.1.1.3** and click **Add**.

5. Click **OK** to check your configuration and save it as a candidate configuration.

6. If you are done configuring the device, click **Commit Options>Commit**.

Step-by-Step Procedure

To configure SIP ALG DoS attack protection:

1. Configure the device to protect a single SIP proxy server.

[edit]

```
user@host# set security alg sip application-screen protect deny destination-ip 1.1.1.3
```



NOTE: IPv6 is supported on the SIP ALG along with Network Address Translation Protocol Translation (NAT-PT) mode and NAT64 address translation.

The type of the <destination-ip-address> is changed from IPv4 address to IP prefix to support all kinds of IP addresses, and correspondingly a prefix is supported to allow multiple IP addresses.

2. Configure the device for the deny timeout period.

[edit]

```
user@host# set security alg sip application-screen protect deny timeout 5
```

3. If you are done configuring the device, commit the configuration.

[edit]

```
user@host# commit
```

Verification

To verify the configuration is working properly, enter the **show security alg sip** command.

Example: Allowing Unknown SIP ALG Message Types

This example shows how to allow unknown message types.

Requirements

Before you begin, review how unidentified SIP messages are handled by the device. See *Understanding SIP ALG Unknown Message Types*.

Overview

In this example, you configure the device to allow unknown message types in SIP traffic in both NAT mode and route mode. The default is to drop unknown (unsupported) messages.

Configuration

GUI Step-by-Step Procedure

To allow unknown SIP ALG message types:

1. Select **Configure>Security>ALG**.
2. Select the **SIP** tab.
3. Select the **Enable Permit NAT applied** check box.
4. Select the **Enable Permit routed** check box.
5. Click **OK** to check your configuration and save it as a candidate configuration.
6. If you are done configuring the device, click **Commit Options>Commit**.

Step-by-Step Procedure

To allow unknown SIP ALG message types:

1. Configure the device to allow unknown message types in SIP traffic.

[edit]
user@host# **set security alg sip application-screen unknown-message permit-nat-applied permit-routed**
2. If you are done configuring the device, commit the configuration.

[edit]
user@host# **commit**

Verification

To verify the configuration is working properly, enter the **show security alg sip** command.

Example: Configuring Interface Source NAT for Incoming SIP Calls

This example shows how to configure a source NAT rule on a public zone interface allowing NAT to be used for incoming SIP calls.

- [Requirements on page 272](#)
- [Overview on page 273](#)
- [Configuration on page 274](#)
- [Verification on page 277](#)

Requirements

Before you begin, understand how NAT works with the SIP ALG. See [“Understanding the SIP ALG and NAT” on page 258](#).

Overview

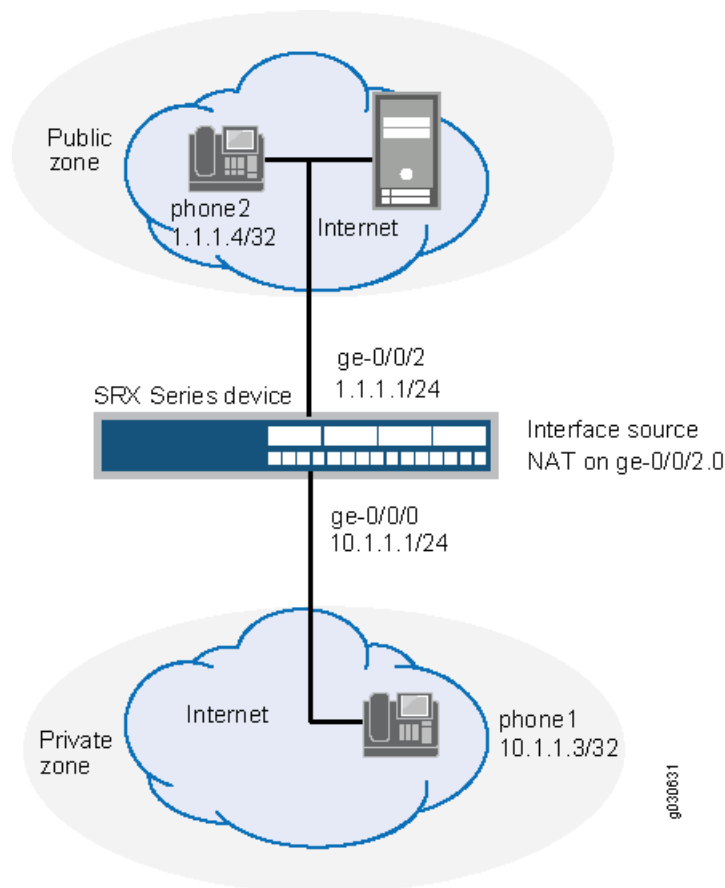
In a two-zone scenario with the SIP proxy server in an external zone, you can use NAT for incoming calls by configuring a source NAT rule on the interface in the public or external zone.

In this example (see [Figure 29 on page 273](#)), phone1 is on the ge-0/0/0 interface in the private zone, and phone2 and the proxy server are on the ge-0/0/2 interface in the public zone. You configure a source NAT rule on the public interface ge-0/0/2.0.

Topology

[Figure 29 on page 273](#) shows source NAT for incoming SIP calls.

Figure 29: Source NAT for Incoming SIP Calls



In this example, after creating zones called private and public and assigning them to interfaces, you configure address books to be used in the source NAT rule set. Then you configure source NAT by defining a rule set called sip-phones and a rule called phone1 that matches any packets from the source address 10.1.1.3/32.

Finally, you create security policies to allow all SIP traffic between the private and public zones.

Configuration

CLI Quick Configuration To quickly configure this section of the example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set interfaces ge-0/0/0 unit 0 family inet address 10.1.1.1/24
set interfaces ge-0/0/2 unit 0 family inet address 1.1.1.1/24
set security zones security-zone private address-book address phone1 10.1.1.3/32
set security zones security-zone private interfaces ge-0/0/0.0
set security zones security-zone public address-book address proxy 1.1.1.3/32
set security zones security-zone public address-book address phone2 1.1.1.4/32
set security zones security-zone public interfaces ge-0/0/2.0
set security nat source rule-set sip-phones from zone private
set security nat source rule-set sip-phones to zone public
set security nat source rule-set sip-phones rule phone1 match source-address 10.1.1.3/32
set security nat source rule-set sip-phones rule phone1 then source-nat interface
set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy outgoing match
  source-address phone1
set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy outgoing match
  destination-address phone2
set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy outgoing match
  destination-address proxy
set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy outgoing match application
  junos-sip
set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy outgoing then permit
set security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy incoming match
  source-address phone2
set security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy incoming match
  destination-address phone1
set security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy incoming match
  source-address proxy
set security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy incoming match application
  junos-sip
set security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy incoming then permit
```

Step-by-Step Procedure The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode* in the CLI User Guide.

To configure a source NAT rule on a public zone interface:

1. Configure interfaces.

```
[edit]
user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/0 unit 0 family inet address 10.1.1.1/24
user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/2 unit 0 family inet address 1.1.1.1/24
```

2. Configure zones and assign them to the interfaces.

```
[edit security zones]
user@host# set security-zone private interfaces ge-0/0/0.0
user@host# set security-zone public interfaces ge-0/0/2.0
```

3. Configure address books and create addresses.

```
[edit security zones]
user@host# set security-zone private address-book address phone1 10.1.1.3/32
user@host# set security-zone public address-book address proxy 1.1.1.3/32
user@host# set security-zone public address-book address phone2 1.1.1.4/32
```

4. Configure a source NAT rule set.

```
[edit security nat source]
user@host# set rule-set sip-phones from zone private
user@host# set rule-set sip-phones to zone public
user@host# set rule-set sip-phones rule phone1 match source-address 10.1.1.3/32
user@host# set rule-set sip-phones rule phone1 then source-nat interface
```

5. Enable persistent source NAT translation.

```
[edit security nat source]
user@host# set address-persistent
```

6. Configure a security policy to allow outgoing SIP traffic.

```
[edit security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy outgoing]
user@host# set match source-address phone1
user@host# set match destination-address phone2
user@host# set match destination-address proxy
user@host# set match application junos-sip
user@host# set then permit
```

7. Configure a security policy to allow incoming SIP traffic.

```
[edit security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy incoming]
user@host# set match source-address phone2
user@host# set match destination-address phone1
user@host# set match source-address proxy
user@host# set match application junos-sip
user@host# set then permit
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show interfaces**, **show security zones**, **show security policies**, and **show security nat** commands. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
[edit]
user@host# show interfaces
ge-0/0/0 {
  unit 0 {
    family inet {
      address 10.1.1.1/24;
    }
  }
}
ge-0/0/2 {
```

```
    unit 0 {
        family inet {
            address 1.1.1.1/24;
        }
    }
}

[edit]
user@host# show security zones
security-zone private {
    address-book {
        address phone1 10.1.1.3/32;
    }
    interfaces {
        ge-0/0/0.0;
    }
}
security-zone public {
    address-book {
        address proxy 1.1.1.3/32;
        address phone2 2.2.2.4/32;
    }
    interfaces {
        ge-0/0/2.0;
    }
}

[edit]
user@host# show security nat
source {
    rule-set sip-phones {
        from zone private;
        to zone public;
        rule phone1 {
            match {
                source-address 10.1.1.3/32;
            }
            then {
                source-nat {
                    interface;
                }
            }
        }
    }
}

[edit]
user@host# show security policies
from-zone private to-zone public {
    policy outgoing {
        match {
            source-address phone1;
            destination-address [ phone2 proxy ];
            application junos-sip;
        }
        then {
            permit;
        }
    }
}
```

```

    }
  }
  from-zone public to-zone private {
    policy incoming {
      match {
        source-address [ phone2 proxy ];
        destination-address phone1 ;
        application junos-sip;
      }
      then {
        permit;
      }
    }
  }
}

```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Verification

To confirm that the configuration is working properly, perform these tasks:

- [Verifying Source NAT Rule Usage on page 277](#)
- [Verifying SIP ALG Status on page 278](#)

Verifying Source NAT Rule Usage

Purpose Verify that there is traffic matching the source NAT rule.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security nat source rule all** command. View the Translation hits field to check for traffic that matches the rule.

```

user@host> show security nat source rule all
source NAT rule: phone1      Rule-set: sip-phones
  Rule-Id                    : 1
  Rule position              : 1
  From zone                  : private
  To zone                    : public
  Match
    Source addresses         : 0.0.0.0          - 255.255.255.255
    Destination port         : 0                - 0
  Action                     : interface
  Persistent NAT type        : N/A
  Persistent NAT mapping type : address-port-mapping
  Inactivity timeout         : 0
  Max session number         : 0
  Translation hits           : 0
  Successful sessions        : 0
  Failed sessions           : 0
  Number of sessions         : 0

```

Meaning The **Translation hits** field shows that, there is no traffic matching the source NAT rule.

Verifying SIP ALG Status

Purpose Verify that SIP ALG is enabled on your system.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security alg status** command.

```
user@host> show security alg status
ALG Status :
  DNS      : Enabled
  FTP      : Enabled
  H323     : Disabled
  MGCP     : Disabled
  MSRPC    : Enabled
  PPTP     : Enabled
  RSH      : Disabled
  RTSP     : Disabled
  SCCP     : Disabled
  SIP      : Enabled
  SQL      : Enabled
  SUNRPC   : Enabled
  TALK     : Enabled
  TFTP     : Enabled
  IKE-ESP  : Disabled
```

Meaning The output shows the SIP ALG status as follows:

- Enabled—Shows the SIP ALG is enabled.
- Disabled—Shows the SIP ALG is disabled.

Decreasing Network Complexity by Configuring a Source NAT Pool for Incoming SIP Calls

This example shows how to decrease network complexity by configuring a source NAT pool on an external interface to enable NAT for incoming SIP calls.

- [Requirements on page 278](#)
- [Overview on page 278](#)
- [Configuration on page 280](#)
- [Verification on page 284](#)

Requirements

Before you begin, understand how NAT works with the SIP ALG. See “[Understanding the SIP ALG and NAT](#)” on page 258.

Overview

In a two-zone scenario with the SIP proxy server in an external or public zone, you can use NAT for incoming calls by configuring a NAT pool on the interface to the public zone.

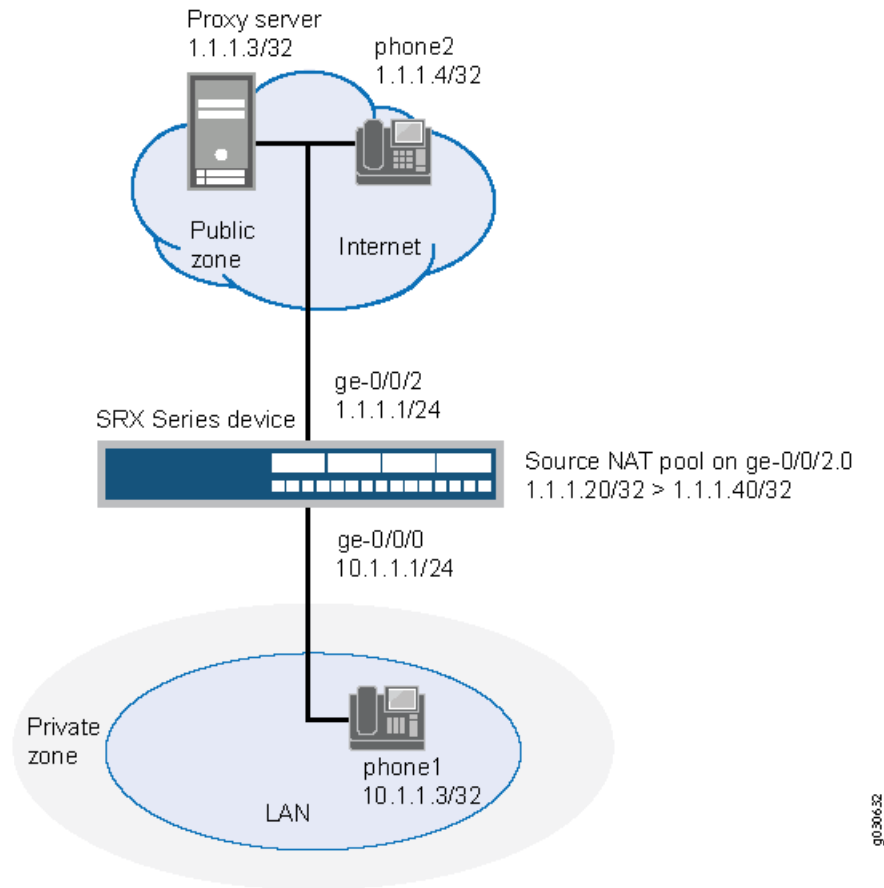
In this example (see [Figure 30 on page 280](#)), phone1 is in the private zone, and phone2 and the proxy server are in the public zone. You configure a source NAT pool to do NAT. You

also create a policy that permits SIP traffic from the private to the public zone. This enables phone1 in the private zone to register with the proxy server in the public zone, and it also enables incoming calls from the public zone to the private zone.

Topology

Figure 30 on page 280 shows source NAT pool for incoming calls.

Figure 30: Source NAT Pool for Incoming SIP Calls



In this example, you configure source NAT as follows:

- Define source NAT pool called sip-nat-pool to contain the IP address range from 1.1.1.20/32 through 1.1.1.40/32.
- Create a source NAT rule set called sip-nat with a rule sip-r1 to match packets from the private zone to the public zone with the source IP address 10.1.1.3/24. For matching packets, the source address is translated to one of the IP address in sip-nat-pool.
- Configure proxy ARP for the addresses 1.1.1.20/32 through 1.1.1.40/32 on interface ge-0/0/2.0. This allows the system to respond to ARP requests received on the interface for these addresses.

Configuration

CLI Quick Configuration

To quickly configure this section of the example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your

network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```

set interfaces ge-0/0/0 unit 0 family inet address 10.1.1.1/24
set interfaces ge-0/0/2 unit 0 family inet address 1.1.1.1/24
set security zones security-zone private address-book address phone1 10.1.1.3/32
set security zones security-zone private interfaces ge-0/0/0.0
set security zones security-zone public address-book address proxy 1.1.1.3/32
set security zones security-zone public address-book address phone2 1.1.1.4/32
set security zones security-zone public interfaces ge-0/0/2.0
set security nat source pool sip-nat-pool address 1.1.1.20/32 to 1.1.1.40/32
set security nat source address-persistent
set security nat source rule-set sip-nat from zone private
set security nat source rule-set sip-nat to zone public
set security nat source rule-set sip-nat rule sip-r1 match source-address 10.1.1.3/24
set security nat source rule-set sip-nat rule sip-r1 then source-nat pool sip-nat-pool
set security nat proxy-arp interface ge-0/0/2.0 address 1.1.1.20/32 to 1.1.1.40/32
set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy outgoing match
    source-address phone1
set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy outgoing match
    destination-address any
set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy outgoing match application
    junos-sip
set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy outgoing then permit
set security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy incoming match
    source-address phone2
set security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy incoming match
    destination-address phone1
set security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy incoming match application
    junos-sip
set security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy incoming then permit

```

Step-by-Step Procedure The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode* in the CLI User Guide.

To configure a source NAT pool for incoming calls:

1. Configure interfaces.

```

[edit]
user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/0 unit 0 family inet address 10.1.1.1/24
user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/2 unit 0 family inet address 1.1.1.1/24

```

2. Configure zones and assign interfaces to them.

```

[edit security zones]
user@host# set security-zone private interfaces ge-0/0/0.0
user@host# set security-zone public interfaces ge-0/0/2.0

```

3. Configure address books.

```

[edit security zones]
user@host# set security-zone private address-book address phone1 10.1.1.3/32
user@host# set security-zone public address-book address proxy 1.1.1.3/32

```

```
user@host# set security-zone public address-book address phone2 1.1.1.4/32
```

4. Configure a source NAT pool.

```
[edit security nat]
user@host# set source pool sip-nat-pool address 1.1.1.20/32 to 1.1.1.40/32
```

5. Configure a source NAT rule set with a rule.

```
[edit security nat source rule-set sip-nat]
user@host# set from zone private
user@host# set to zone public
user@host# set rule sip-r1 match source-address 10.1.1.3/24
user@host# set rule sip-r1 then source-nat pool sip-nat-pool
```

6. Enable persistent NAT.

```
[edit security nat]
user@host# set source address-persistent
```

7. Configure proxy ARP.

```
[edit security nat]
user@host# set proxy-arp interface ge-0/0/2.0 address 1.1.1.20/32 to 1.1.1.40/32
```

8. Configure a security policy to allow outgoing SIP traffic.

```
[edit security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy outgoing]
set match source-address phone1
set match destination-address any
set match application junos-sip
set then permit
```

9. Configure a security policy to allow incoming SIP traffic.

```
[edit security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy incoming]
set match source-address phone2
set match destination-address phone1
set match application junos-sip
set then permit
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show interfaces**, **show security zones**, **show security nat**, and **show security policies** commands. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
[edit]
user@host# show interfaces
ge-0/0/0 {
  unit 0 {
    family inet {
      address 10.1.1.1/24;
```

```

    }
  }
}
ge-0/0/2 {
  unit 0 {
    family inet {
      address 1.1.1.1/24;
    }
  }
}
[edit]
user@host# show security zones
security-zone private {
  address-book {
    address phone1 10.1.1.3/32;
  }
  interfaces {
    ge-0/0/0.0;
  }
}
security-zone public {
  address-book {
    address proxy 1.1.1.3/32;
    address phone2 1.1.1.4/32;
  }
  interfaces {
    ge-0/0/2.0;
  }
}
user@host# show security nat
source {
  pool sip-nat-pool {
    address {
      1.1.1.20/32 to 1.1.1.40/32;
    }
  }
  address-persistent;
  rule-set sip-nat {
    from zone private;
    to zone public;
    rule sip-r1 {
      match {
        source-address 10.1.1.3/24;
      }
      then {
        source-nat {
          pool {
            sip-nat-pool;
          }
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
}
proxy-arp {
  interface ge-0/0/2.0 {

```

```
        address {
            1.1.1.20/32 to 1.1.1.40/32;
        }
    }
}
[edit]
user@host# show security policies
from-zone private to-zone public {
    policy outgoing {
        match {
            source-address phone1;
            destination-address any;
            application junos-sip;
        }
        then {
            permit;
        }
    }
}
from-zone public to-zone private {
    policy incoming {
        match {
            source-address phone2;
            destination-address phone1;
            application junos-sip;
        }
        then {
            permit;
        }
    }
}
```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Verification

To confirm that the configuration is working properly, perform these tasks:

- [Verifying Source NAT Pool Usage on page 284](#)
- [Verifying Source NAT Rule Usage on page 285](#)
- [Verifying SIP ALG Status on page 285](#)
- [Verifying the Security Polices of SIP ALG on page 286](#)

Verifying Source NAT Pool Usage

Purpose Verify that there is traffic using IP addresses from the source NAT pool.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security nat source pool all** command.

```
user@host> show security nat source pool all
```

```
Total pools: 1
Pool name      : sip-nat-pool
Pool id        : 4
```

```

Routing instance : default
Host address base : 0.0.0.0
Port : [1024, 63487]
port overloading : 1
Total addresses : 21
Translation hits : 0
Address range      1.1.1.20 - 1.1.1.40      Single Ports  Twin Ports
                                           0              0

```

Meaning The **Translation hits** field shows that there is no traffic used by IP addresses from the source NAT pool.

Verifying Source NAT Rule Usage

Purpose Verify that there is traffic matching the source NAT rule.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security nat source rule all** command.

```
user@host> show security nat source rule all
```

```

source NAT rule: sip-r1      Rule-set: sip-nat
Rule-Id                     : 1
Rule position                : 1
From zone                    : private
To zone                      : public
Match
  Source addresses           : 0.0.0.0        - 255.255.255.255
  Destination port           : 0              - 0
Action                       : interface
Persistent NAT type          : N/A
Persistent NAT mapping type  : address-port-mapping
Inactivity timeout           : 0
Max session number           : 0
Translation hits             : 0
Successful sessions          : 0
Failed sessions              : 0
Number of sessions           : 0

```

Meaning The **Translation hits** field shows that, there is no traffic matching the source NAT rule.

Verifying SIP ALG Status

Purpose Verify that SIP ALG is enabled on your system.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security alg status** command.

```
user@host> show security alg status
```

```

ALG Status :
DNS         : Enabled
FTP         : Enabled
H323        : Disabled

```

```
MGCP      : Disabled
MSRPC     : Enabled
PPTP      : Enabled
RSH       : Disabled
RTSP      : Disabled
SCCP      : Disabled
SIP       : Enabled
SQL       : Enabled
SUNRPC    : Enabled
TALK      : Enabled
TFTP      : Enabled
IKE-ESP   : Disabled
```

Meaning The output shows the SIP ALG status as follows:

- Enabled—Shows the SIP ALG is enabled.
- Disabled—Shows the SIP ALG is disabled.

Verifying the Security Policies of SIP ALG

Purpose Verify that the source NAT between public zone and private zone is set.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security policies** command.

```
user@host> show security policies

from-zone private to-zone public {
  policy outgoing {
    match {
      source-address phone1;
      destination-address any;
      application junos-sip;
    }
    then {
      permit;
    }
  }
}

from-zone public to-zone private {
  policy incoming {
    match {
      source-address phone2;
      destination-address phone1;
      application junos-sip;
    }
    then {
      permit;
    }
  }
}
```

Meaning The sample output shows that the source NAT between public zone and private zone is set.

Example: Configuring Static NAT for Incoming SIP Calls

This example shows how to configure a static NAT mapping that allows callers in the private zone to register with the proxy server in the public zone.

- [Requirements on page 287](#)
- [Overview on page 287](#)
- [Configuration on page 288](#)
- [Verification on page 292](#)

Requirements

Before you begin, understand how NAT works with the SIP ALG. See “[Understanding the SIP ALG and NAT](#)” on page 258.

Overview

When a SIP proxy server is located in an external or public zone, you can configure static NAT on the public interface to enable callers in the private zone to register with the proxy server.

In this example (see [Figure 31 on page 288](#)), phone1 is on the ge-0/0/0 interface in the private zone, and phone2 and the proxy server are on the ge-0/0/2 interface in the public zone. You create a static NAT rule set called incoming-sip with a rule called phone1 to match packets from the public zone with the destination address 1.1.1.3/32. For matching packets, the destination IP address is translated to the private address 10.1.1.3/32. You also create proxy ARP for the address 1.1.1.3/32 on interface ge-0/0/2.0. This allows the system to respond to ARP requests received on the interface for these addresses. Finally, you create a security policy called incoming that allows SIP traffic from the public zone to the private zone.

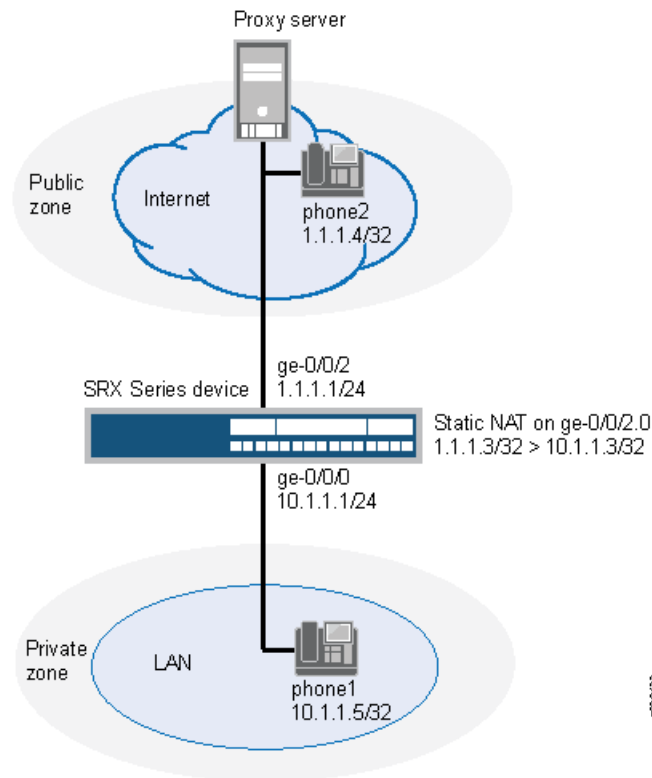


NOTE: When configuring static NAT for incoming SIP calls, make sure to configure one public address for each private address in the private zone.

Topology

Figure 31 on page 288 shows static NAT for incoming calls.

Figure 31: Static NAT for Incoming Calls



Configuration

CLI Quick Configuration

To quickly configure this section of the example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set interfaces ge-0/0/0 unit 0 family inet address 10.1.1.1/24
set interfaces ge-0/0/2 unit 0 family inet address 1.1.1.1/24
set security zones security-zone private interfaces ge-0/0/0.0
set security zones security-zone private address-book address phone1 10.1.1.5/32
set security zones security-zone public interfaces ge-0/0/2.0
set security zones security-zone public address-book address proxy 1.1.1.3/32
set security zones security-zone public address-book address phone2 1.1.1.4/32
set security nat static rule-set incoming-sip from zone public
set security nat static rule-set incoming-sip rule phone1 match destination-address
  1.1.1.3/32
set security nat static rule-set incoming-sip rule phone1 then static-nat prefix 10.1.1.3/32
set security nat proxy-arp interface ge-0/0/2.0 address 1.1.1.3/32
set security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy incoming match
  source-address phone2
```

```

set security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy incoming match
  source-address proxy
set security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy incoming match
  destination-address phone1
set security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy incoming match application
  junos-sip
set security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy incoming then permit
set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy outgoing match
  source-address phone1
set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy outgoing match
  destination-address phone2
set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy outgoing match
  destination-address proxy
set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy outgoing match application
  junos-sip
set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy outgoing then permit

```

Step-by-Step Procedure

The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode* in the CLI User Guide.

To configure static NAT for incoming calls:

1. Configure interfaces.

```

[edit]
user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/0 unit 0 family inet address 10.1.1.1/24
user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/2 unit 0 family inet address 1.1.1.1/24

```

2. Create security zones.

```

[edit security zones]
user@host# set security-zone private interfaces ge-0/0/0.0
user@host# set security-zone public interfaces ge-0/0/2.0

```

3. Assign addresses to the security zones.

```

[edit security zones]
user@host# set security-zone private address-book address phone1 10.1.1.5/32
user@host# set security-zone public address-book address proxy 1.1.1.3/32
user@host# set security-zone public address-book address phone2 1.1.1.4/32

```

4. Create a static NAT rule set with a rule.

```

[edit security nat static rule-set incoming-sip]
user@host# set from zone public
user@host# set rule phone1 match destination-address 1.1.1.3/32
user@host# set rule phone1 then static-nat prefix 10.1.1.3/32

```

5. Configure proxy ARP.

```

[edit security nat]
user@host# set proxy-arp interface ge-0/0/2.0 address 1.1.1.3/32

```

6. Define a security policy to allow incoming SIP traffic.

```
[edit security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy incoming]
user@host# set match source-address phone2
user@host# set match source-address proxy
user@host# set match destination-address phone1
user@host# set match application junos-sip
user@host# set then permit
```

7. Define a security policy to allow outgoing SIP traffic.

```
[edit security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy outgoing]
user@host# set match source-address phone1
user@host# set match destination-address phone2
user@host# set match destination-address proxy
user@host# set match application junos-sip
user@host# set then permit
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show interfaces**, **show security zones**, **show security nat**, and **show security policies** commands. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
[edit]
user@host# show interfaces
ge-0/0/0 {
  unit 0 {
    family inet {
      address 10.1.1.1/24;
    }
  }
}
ge-0/0/2 {
  unit 0 {
    family inet {
      address 1.1.1.1/24;
    }
  }
}

[edit]
user@host# show security zones
security-zone private {
  address-book {
    address phone1 10.1.1.5/32;
  }
  interfaces {
    ge-0/0/0.0;
  }
}
security-zone public {
  address-book {
    address proxy 1.1.1.3/32;
    address phone2 1.1.1.4/32;
  }
}
```

```

    }
    interfaces {
        ge-0/0/2.0;
    }
}

[edit]
user@host# show security nat
static {
    rule-set incoming-sip {
        from zone public;
        rule phone1 {
            match {
                destination-address 1.1.1.3/32;
            }
            then {
                static-nat prefix 10.1.1.3/32;
            }
        }
    }
}

proxy-arp {
    interface ge-0/0/2.0 {
        address {
            1.1.1.3/32;
        }
    }
}

[edit]
user@host# show security policies
from-zone public to-zone private {
    policy incoming {
        match {
            source-address phone2;
            destination-address phone1;
            application junos-sip;
        }
        then {
            permit;
        }
    }
}

from-zone private to-zone public {
    policy outgoing {
        match {
            source-address phone1;
            destination-address [phone2 proxy];
            application junos-sip;
        }
        then {
            permit;
        }
    }
}

```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Verification

To confirm that the configuration is working properly, perform these tasks:

- [Verifying Static NAT Configuration on page 292](#)
- [Verifying SIP ALG Status on page 292](#)
- [Verifying the Security Policies of SIP ALG on page 293](#)

Verifying Static NAT Configuration

Purpose Verify that there is traffic matching the static NAT rule set.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security nat static rule all** command.

```
user@host> show security nat static rule all
```

```
Static NAT rule: phone1 Rule-set: incoming-sip
Rule-Id : 1
Rule position : 1
From zone : trust
Source addresses : 40.10.10.0 - 40.10.10.3
                  : addr1
Source ports : 200 - 300
Destination addresses : 20.1.1.0
Host addresses : 3.3.3.0
Netmask : 24
Host routing-instance : N/A
Translation hits : 4
Successful sessions : 4
Failed sessions : 0
Number of sessions : 4
```

Meaning The **Translation hits** field shows that there is traffic matching the static NAT rule set.

Verifying SIP ALG Status

Purpose Verify that SIP ALG is enabled on your system.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security alg status** command.

```
user@host> show security alg status
```

```
ALG Status :
DNS       : Enabled
FTP       : Enabled
H323     : Disabled
MGCP     : Disabled
MSRPC    : Enabled
PPTP     : Enabled
RSH      : Disabled
RTSP     : Disabled
SCCP     : Disabled
SIP      : Enabled
```

```

SQL       : Enabled
SUNRPC    : Enabled
TALK      : Enabled
TFTP      : Enabled
IKE-ESP   : Disabled

```

Meaning The output shows the SIP ALG status as follows:

- Enabled—Shows the SIP ALG is enabled.
- Disabled—Shows the SIP ALG is disabled.

Verifying the Security Policies of SIP ALG

Purpose Verify that the static NAT between public zone and private zone is set.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security policies** command.

```

user@host> show security policies

from-zone public to-zone private {
  policy incoming {
    match {
      source-address [ phone2 proxy ];
      destination-address phone1;
      application junos-sip;
    }
    then {
      permit;
    }
  }
}
from-zone private to-zone public {
  policy outgoing {
    match {
      source-address phone1;
      destination-address [ phone2 proxy ];
      application junos-sip;
    }
    then {
      permit;
    }
  }
}

```

Meaning The sample output shows that the static NAT between public zone and private zone is set.

Example: Configuring the SIP Proxy in the Private Zone and NAT in the Public Zone

This example shows how to configure a SIP proxy server in a private zone and static NAT in a public zone to allow callers in the public zone to register with the proxy server.

- [Requirements on page 294](#)
- [Overview on page 294](#)
- [Configuration on page 295](#)
- [Verification on page 299](#)

Requirements

Before you begin, understand how NAT works with the SIP ALG. See [“Understanding the SIP ALG and NAT” on page 258](#).

Overview

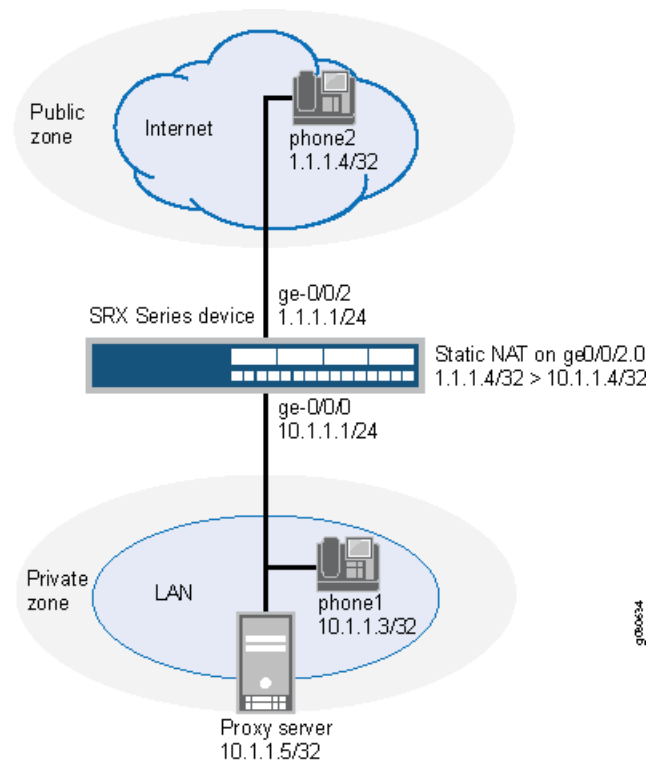
With the SIP proxy server in the private zone, you can configure static NAT on the external, or public, interface to allow callers in the public zone to register with the proxy server.

In this example (see [Figure 32 on page 295](#)), phone1 and the SIP proxy server are on the ge-0/0/0 interface in the private zone, and phone2 is on the ge-0/0/2 interface in the public zone. You configure a static NAT rule for the proxy server to allow phone2 to register with the proxy server, and then create a policy called outgoing that allows SIP traffic from the public to the private zone to enable callers in the public zone to register with the proxy server. You also configure a policy called incoming from the private to the public zone to allow phone1 to call out.

Topology

[Figure 32 on page 295](#) shows configuring SIP proxy in the private zone and NAT in a public zone.

Figure 32: Configuring SIP Proxy in the Private Zone and NAT in a Public Zone



In this example, you configure NAT as follows:

- Configure static NAT on the ge-0/0/2 interface to the proxy server with a rule set called incoming-sip with a rule called proxy to match packets from the public zone with the destination address 1.1.1.4/32. For matching packets, the destination IP address is translated to the private address 10.1.1.4/32.
- Configure a second rule set called sip-phones with a rule called phone1 to enable interface NAT for communication from phone1 to phone2.

Configuration

CLI Quick Configuration

To quickly configure this section of the example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set interfaces ge-0/0/0 unit 0 family inet address 10.1.1.1/24
set interfaces ge-0/0/2 unit 0 family inet address 1.1.1.1/24
set security zones security-zone private address-book address phone1 10.1.1.3/32
set security zones security-zone private address-book address proxy 10.1.1.5/32
set security zones security-zone private interfaces ge-0/0/0.0
set security zones security-zone public address-book address phone2 1.1.1.4/32
set security zones security-zone public interfaces ge-0/0/2.0
set security nat source rule-set sip-phones from zone private
set security nat source rule-set sip-phones to zone public
```

```
set security nat source rule-set sip-phones rule phone1 match source-address 10.1.1.3/32
set security nat source rule-set sip-phones rule phone1 then source-nat interface
set security nat static rule-set incoming-sip from zone public
set security nat static rule-set incoming-sip rule proxy match destination-address 1.1.1.4/32
set security nat static rule-set incoming-sip rule proxy then static-nat prefix 10.1.1.4/32
set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy outgoing match
    source-address any
set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy outgoing match
    destination-address phone2
set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy outgoing match application
    junos-sip
set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy outgoing then permit
set security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy incoming match
    source-address phone2
set security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy incoming match
    destination-address proxy
set security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy incoming match application
    junos-sip
set security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy incoming then permit
```

**Step-by-Step
Procedure**

The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode* in the CLI User Guide.

To configure static NAT for incoming calls:

1. Configure interfaces.

```
[edit]
user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/0 unit 0 family inet address 10.1.1.1/24
user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/2 unit 0 family inet address 1.1.1.1/24
```

2. Configure security zones.

```
[edit security zones]
user@host# set security-zone private interfaces ge-0/0/0.0
user@host# set security-zone public interfaces ge-0/0/2.0
```

3. Assign addresses to the security zones.

```
[edit security zones]
user@host# set security-zone private address-book address phone1 10.1.1.3/32
user@host# set security-zone private address-book address proxy 10.1.1.5/32
user@host# set security-zone public address-book address phone2 1.1.1.4/32
```

4. Create a rule set for static NAT and assign a rule to it.

```
[edit security nat static rule-set incoming-sip]
user@host# set from zone public
user@host# set rule proxy match destination-address 1.1.1.4/32
user@host# set rule proxy then static-nat prefix 10.1.1.4/32
```

5. Configure the second rule set and assign a rule to it.

```
[edit security nat source rule-set sip-phones]
user@host# set from zone private
user@host# set to zone public
user@host# set rule phone1 match source-address 10.1.1.3/32
user@host# set rule phone1 then source-nat interface
```

6. Configure a security policy for outgoing traffic.

```
[edit security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy outgoing]
user@host# set match source-address any
user@host# set match destination-address phone2
user@host# set match application junos-sip
user@host# set then permit
```

7. Configure a security policy for incoming traffic.

```
[edit security policies from-zone public to-zone private policy incoming]
user@host# set match source-address phone2
user@host# set match destination-address proxy
user@host# set match application junos-sip
user@host# set then permit
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show interfaces**, **show security zones**, **show security nat**, and **show security policies** commands. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
[edit]
user@host# show interfaces
ge-0/0/0 {
  unit 0 {
    family inet {
      address 10.1.1.1/24;
    }
  }
}
ge-0/0/2 {
  unit 0 {
    family inet {
      address 1.1.1.1/24;
    }
  }
}
[edit]
user@host# show security zones
security-zone private {
  address-book {
    address phone1 10.1.1.3/32;
    address proxy 10.1.1.5/32;
  }
  interfaces {
    ge-0/0/0.0;
  }
}
```

```
}
security-zone public {
  address-book {
    address phone2 1.1.1.4/32;
  }
  interfaces {
    ge-0/0/2.0;
  }
}
[edit]
user@host# show security nat
source {
  rule-set sip-phones {
    from zone private;
    to zone public;
    rule phone1 {
      match {
        source-address 10.1.1.3/32;
      }
      then {
        source-nat {
          interface;
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
static {
  rule-set incoming-sip {
    from zone public;
    rule proxy {
      match {
        destination-address 1.1.1.4/32;
      }
      then {
        static-nat prefix 10.1.1.4/32;
      }
    }
  }
}
[edit]
user@host# show security policies
from-zone private to-zone public {
  policy outgoing {
    match {
      source-address any;
      destination-address phone2;
      application junos-sip;
    }
    then {
      permit;
    }
  }
}
from-zone public to-zone private {
  policy incoming {
```

```

        match {
            source-address phone2;
            destination-address proxy;
            application junos-sip;
        }
        then {
            permit;
        }
    }
}

```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Verification

To confirm that the configuration is working properly, perform these tasks:

- [Verifying Static NAT Configuration on page 299](#)
- [Verifying SIP ALG Status on page 299](#)

Verifying Static NAT Configuration

Purpose Verify that there is traffic matching the static NAT rule set.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security nat static rule all** command. View the Translation hits field to check for traffic that matches the rule.

```

user@host> show security nat source rule all
source NAT rule: phone1      Rule-set: sip-phones
  Rule-Id                    : 1
  Rule position              : 1
  From zone                  : private
  To zone                    : public
  Match
    Source addresses         : 0.0.0.0      - 255.255.255.255
    Destination port         : 0            - 0
  Action                     : interface
  Persistent NAT type        : N/A
  Persistent NAT mapping type : address-port-mapping
  Inactivity timeout         : 0
  Max session number         : 0
  Translation hits           : 0
    Successful sessions      : 0
    Failed sessions          : 0
  Number of sessions         : 0

```

Meaning The **Translation hits** field shows that, there is no traffic matching the source NAT rule.

Verifying SIP ALG Status

Purpose Verify that SIP ALG is enabled on your system.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security alg status** command.

```
user@host> show security alg status
ALG Status :
  DNS      : Enabled
  FTP      : Enabled
  H323     : Disabled
  MGCP     : Disabled
  MSRPC    : Enabled
  PPTP     : Enabled
  RSH      : Disabled
  RTSP     : Disabled
  SCCP     : Disabled
  SIP      : Enabled
  SQL      : Enabled
  SUNRPC   : Enabled
  TALK     : Enabled
  TFTP     : Enabled
  IKE-ESP  : Disabled
```

Meaning The output shows the SIP ALG status as follows:

- Enabled—Shows the SIP ALG is enabled.
- Disabled—Shows the SIP ALG is disabled.

Example: Configuring a Three-Zone SIP ALG and NAT Scenario

This example shows how to configure a SIP proxy server in a private zone and static NAT in a public zone to allow callers in the public zone to register with the proxy server.

- [Requirements on page 300](#)
- [Overview on page 300](#)
- [Configuration on page 301](#)
- [Verification on page 306](#)

Requirements

Before you begin, understand how NAT works with the SIP ALG. See [“Understanding the SIP ALG and NAT” on page 258](#).

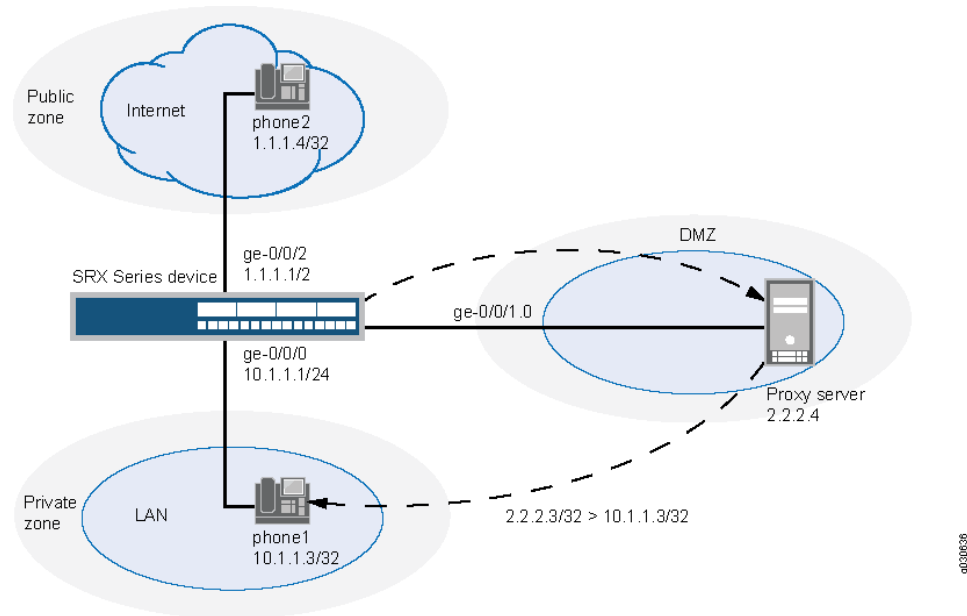
Overview

In a three-zone SIP configuration, the SIP proxy server is typically in a different zone from the calling and called systems. Such a scenario requires additional address and zone configuration, and policies to ensure that all systems have access to each other and to the proxy server.

In this example, phone1 is on the ge-0/0/0.0 interface in the private zone, phone2 is on the ge-0/0/2.0 interface in the public zone, and the proxy server is on the ge-0/0/1.0 interface in the DMZ. You configure static NAT rule for phone1 in the private zone. You then create policies for traffic traversing from the private zone to the DMZ and from the DMZ to the private zone, from the public zone to the DMZ and from the DMZ to the public

zone, and from the private zone to the public zone. The arrows in [Figure 33 on page 301](#) show the flow of SIP signaling traffic when phone2 in the public zone places a call to phone1 in the private zone. After the session is initiated, the data flows directly between phone1 and phone2.

Figure 33: Three-Zone SIP Configuration with Proxy in the DMZ



In this example, you configure NAT as follows:

- Configure a static NAT rule set called `incoming-sip` with a rule `phone1` to match packets from the public zone with the destination address `2.2.2.3/32`. For matching packets, the destination IP address is translated to the private address `10.1.1.3/32`.
- Configure proxy ARP for the address `2.2.2.3/32` on interface `ge-0/0/1.0` allowing the system to respond to ARP requests received on the interface for this address.
- Configure a second rule set called `sip-phones` with a rule `r1` to enable interface NAT for communication from phone1 to the proxy server and from phone1 to phone2.

Configuration

CLI Quick Configuration

To quickly configure this section of the example, copy the following commands, paste them into a text file, remove any line breaks, change any details necessary to match your network configuration, copy and paste the commands into the CLI at the **[edit]** hierarchy level, and then enter **commit** from configuration mode.

```
set interfaces ge-0/0/0 unit 0 family inet address 10.1.1/24
set interfaces ge-0/0/1 unit 0 family inet address 2.2.2.2/24
set interfaces ge-0/0/2 unit 0 family inet address 1.1.1/24
set security zones security-zone private address-book address phone1 10.1.1.3/32
set security zones security-zone private interfaces ge-0/0/0.0
set security zones security-zone public address-book address phone2 1.1.1.4/32
set security zones security-zone public interfaces ge-0/0/2.0
```

```

set security zones security-zone dmz address-book address proxy 2.2.2.4/32
set security zones security-zone dmz interfaces ge-0/0/1.0
set security nat source rule-set sip-phones from zone private
set security nat source rule-set sip-phones to zone dmz
set security nat source rule-set sip-phones rule r1 match source-address 10.1.1.3/32
set security nat source rule-set sip-phones rule r1 then source-nat interface
set security policies from-zone private to-zone dmz policy private-to-proxy match
    source-address phone1
set security policies from-zone private to-zone dmz policy private-to-proxy match
    destination-address proxy
set security policies from-zone private to-zone dmz policy private-to-proxy match
    application junos-sip
set security policies from-zone private to-zone dmz policy private-to-proxy then permit
set security policies from-zone public to-zone dmz policy public-to-proxy match
    source-address phone2
set security policies from-zone public to-zone dmz policy public-to-proxy match
    destination-address proxy
set security policies from-zone public to-zone dmz policy public-to-proxy match application
    junos-sip
set security policies from-zone public to-zone dmz policy public-to-proxy then permit
set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy private-to-public match
    source-address phone1
set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy private-to-public match
    destination-address phone2
set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy private-to-public match
    application junos-sip
set security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy private-to-public then permit
set security policies from-zone dmz to-zone private policy proxy-to-private match
    source-address proxy
set security policies from-zone dmz to-zone private policy proxy-to-private match
    destination-address phone1
set security policies from-zone dmz to-zone private policy proxy-to-private match
    application junos-sip
set security policies from-zone dmz to-zone private policy proxy-to-private then permit
set security policies from-zone dmz to-zone public policy proxy-to-public match
    source-address proxy
set security policies from-zone dmz to-zone public policy proxy-to-public match
    destination-address phone2
set security policies from-zone dmz to-zone public policy proxy-to-public match application
    junos-sip
set security policies from-zone dmz to-zone public policy proxy-to-public then permit

```

Step-by-Step Procedure

The following example requires you to navigate various levels in the configuration hierarchy. For instructions on how to do that, see *Using the CLI Editor in Configuration Mode* in the CLI User Guide.

To configure a SIP proxy server in a private zone and static NAT in a public zone:

1. Configure interfaces.

```

[edit]
user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/0 unit 0 family inet address 10.1.1.1/24
user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/1 unit 0 family inet address 2.2.2.2/24
user@host# set interfaces ge-0/0/2 unit 0 family inet address 1.1.1.1/24

```

2. Configure security zones.

```
[edit security zones]  
user@host# set security-zone private interfaces ge-0/0/0.0  
user@host# set security-zone public interfaces ge-0/0/2.0  
user@host# set security-zone dmz interfaces ge-0/0/1.0
```
3. Assign addresses to the security zones.

```
[edit security zones]  
user@host# set security-zone private address-book address phone1 10.1.1.3/32  
user@host# set security-zone public address-book address phone2 1.1.1.4/32  
user@host# set security-zone dmz address-book address proxy 2.2.2.4/32
```
4. Configure interface NAT for communication from phone1 to proxy.

```
[edit security nat source rule-set sip-phones]  
user@host# set from zone private  
user@host# set to zone dmz  
user@host# set rule r1 match source-address 10.1.1.3/32  
user@host# set rule r1 then source-nat interface
```
5. Configure a security policy to allow traffic from zone private to zone DMZ.

```
[edit security policies from-zone private to-zone dmz policy private-to-proxy]  
user@host# set match source-address phone1  
user@host# set match destination-address proxy  
user@host# set match application junos-sip  
user@host# set then permit
```
6. Configure a security policy to allow traffic from zone public to zone DMZ.

```
[edit security policies from-zone public to-zone dmz policy public-to-proxy]  
user@host# set match source-address phone2  
user@host# set match destination-address proxy  
user@host# set match application junos-sip  
user@host# set then permit
```
7. Configure a security policy to allow traffic from zone private to zone public.

```
[edit security policies from-zone private to-zone public policy private-to-public]  
user@host# set match source-address phone1  
user@host# set match destination-address phone2  
user@host# set match application junos-sip  
user@host# set then permit
```
8. Configure a security policy to allow traffic from zone DMZ to zone private.

```
[edit security policies from-zone dmz to-zone private policy proxy-to-private]  
user@host# set match source-address proxy  
user@host# set match destination-address phone1  
user@host# set match application junos-sip  
user@host# set then permit
```

9. Configure a security policy to allow traffic from zone DMZ to zone public.

```
[edit security policies from-zone dmz to-zone public policy proxy-to-public]
user@host# set match source-address proxy
user@host# set match destination-address phone2
user@host# set match application junos-sip
user@host# set then permit
```

Results From configuration mode, confirm your configuration by entering the **show interfaces**, **show security zones**, **show security nat**, and **show security policies** commands. If the output does not display the intended configuration, repeat the configuration instructions in this example to correct it.

```
[edit]
user@host# show interfaces
ge-0/0/0 {
  unit 0 {
    family inet {
      address 10.1.1.1/24;
    }
  }
}
ge-0/0/1 {
  unit 0 {
    family inet {
      address 2.2.2.2/24;
    }
  }
}
ge-0/0/2 {
  unit 0 {
    family inet {
      address 1.1.1.1/24;
    }
  }
}

[edit]
user@host# show security zones
security-zone private {
  address-book {
    address phone1 10.1.1.3/32;
  }
  interfaces {
    ge-0/0/0.0;
  }
}
security-zone public {
  address-book {
    address phone2 1.1.1.4/32;
  }
  interfaces {
    ge-0/0/2.0;
  }
}
```

```

}
security-zone dmz {
  address-book {
    address proxy 2.2.2.4/32;
  }
  interfaces {
    ge-0/0/1.0;
  }
}
[edit]
user@host# show security nat
source {
  rule-set sip-phones {
    from zone private;
    to zone dmz;
    rule r1 {
      match {
        source-address 10.1.1.3/32;
      }
      then {
        source-nat {
          interface;
        }
      }
    }
  }
}
}
proxy-arp {
  interface ge-0/0/1.0 {
    address {
      2.2.2.3/32;
    }
  }
}
[edit]
user@host# show security policies
from-zone private to-zone dmz {
  policy private-to-proxy {
    match {
      source-address phone1;
      destination-address proxy;
      application junos-sip;
    }
    then {
      permit;
    }
  }
}
from-zone public to-zone dmz {
  policy public-to-proxy {
    match {
      source-address phone2;
      destination-address proxy;
      application junos-sip;
    }
  }
}

```

```
        then {
            permit;
        }
    }
}
from-zone private to-zone public {
    policy private-to-public {
        match {
            source-address phone1;
            destination-address phone2;
            application junos-sip;
        }
        then {
            permit;
        }
    }
}
from-zone dmz to-zone private {
    policy proxy-to-private {
        match {
            source-address proxy;
            destination-address phone2;
            application junos-sip;
        }
        then {
            permit;
        }
    }
}
```

If you are done configuring the device, enter **commit** from configuration mode.

Verification

To confirm that the configuration is working properly, perform these tasks:

- [Verifying Source NAT Rule Usage on page 306](#)
- [Verifying Static NAT Configuration on page 307](#)
- [Verifying SIP ALG Status on page 307](#)

Verifying Source NAT Rule Usage

Purpose Verify that there is traffic matching the source NAT rule.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security nat source rule all** command. View the Translation hits field to check for traffic that matches the rule.

```
user@host> show security nat source rule all
source NAT rule: r1      Rule-set: sip-phones
Rule-Id                 : 1
Rule position            : 1
From zone                : private
To zone                  : public
Match
```

```

Source addresses      : 0.0.0.0          - 255.255.255.255
Destination port     : 0                - 0
Action                : interface
Persistent NAT type   : N/A
Persistent NAT mapping type : address-port-mapping
Inactivity timeout    : 0
Max session number    : 0
Translation hits      : 0
Successful sessions   : 0
Failed sessions       : 0
Number of sessions    : 0

```

Verifying Static NAT Configuration

Purpose Verify that there is traffic matching the static NAT rule set.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security nat static rule r1** command. View the Translation hits field to check for traffic that matches the rule.

Verifying SIP ALG Status

Purpose Verify that SIP ALG is enabled on your system.

Action From operational mode, enter the **show security alg status** command.

```

user@host> show security alg status
ALG Status :
DNS        : Enabled
FTP        : Enabled
H323       : Disabled
MGCP       : Disabled
MSRPC      : Enabled
PPTP       : Enabled
RSH        : Disabled
RTSP       : Disabled
SCCP       : Disabled
SIP        : Enabled
SQL        : Enabled
SUNRPC     : Enabled
TALK       : Enabled
TFTP       : Enabled
IKE-ESP    : Disabled

```

Release History Table

Release	Description
15.1X49-D40	Starting in Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D40 and Junos OS Release 17.3R1, the "IPv6" address type is also supported.
12.3X48-D25	Starting in Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D25 and Junos OS Release 17.3R1, the SIP ALG supports TCP.
12.3X48-D15	Starting with Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D15 and Junos OS Release 17.3R1, the SIP ALG supports 65,000-byte SIP messages on the UDP protocol.

Related Documentation

- [Understanding VoIP ALG Types on page 149](#)
- [VoIP DSCP Rewrite Rules on page 150](#)
- [H.323 ALG on page 152](#)
- [MGCP ALG on page 192](#)

CHAPTER 4

Configuration Statements

- [address \(Security Destination NAT\) on page 311](#)
- [alg on page 312](#)
- [alg \(Applications\) on page 317](#)
- [alg-manager on page 318](#)
- [allow-dns-reply on page 319](#)
- [application \(Security Policies\) on page 320](#)
- [application-protocol \(Applications\) on page 321](#)
- [application-screen \(Security H323\) on page 322](#)
- [application-screen \(Security MGCP\) on page 323](#)
- [application-screen \(Security SCCP\) on page 324](#)
- [application-screen \(Security SIP\) on page 325](#)
- [alg-support-lib on page 326](#)
- [banner \(Access FTP HTTP Telnet Authentication\) on page 327](#)
- [call-flood on page 328](#)
- [c-timeout on page 328](#)
- [deny \(Security SIP\) on page 329](#)
- [destination-address \(Security Destination NAT\) on page 330](#)
- [destination-address \(Security Policies\) on page 331](#)
- [destination-address \(Security Source NAT\) on page 332](#)
- [destination-address \(Security Static NAT\) on page 332](#)
- [destination-nat on page 333](#)
- [destination-port \(Applications\) on page 334](#)
- [dns on page 338](#)
- [dns \(System Services\) on page 339](#)
- [dscp-rewrite on page 340](#)
- [endpoint-registration-timeout on page 341](#)
- [family inet \(Interfaces\) on page 342](#)
- [ftp \(Access\) on page 345](#)

- [ftp \(Security ALG\) on page 346](#)
- [gatekeeper on page 347](#)
- [h323 on page 348](#)
- [host-inbound-traffic on page 349](#)
- [ike-esp-nat on page 350](#)
- [ike \(Security\) on page 352](#)
- [inactive-media-timeout \(Security MGCP\) on page 354](#)
- [inactive-media-timeout \(Security SCCP\) on page 355](#)
- [inactive-media-timeout \(Security SIP\) on page 355](#)
- [map-entry-timeout on page 356](#)
- [maximum-call-duration \(Security\) on page 357](#)
- [maximum-message-length on page 357](#)
- [media-source-port-any on page 358](#)
- [message-flood \(Security H323\) on page 358](#)
- [mgcp on page 359](#)
- [msrpc on page 360](#)
- [nat on page 361](#)
- [nat-pat-address on page 365](#)
- [oversize-message-drop on page 366](#)
- [policy \(Security Policies\) on page 367](#)
- [pptp on page 369](#)
- [protect on page 370](#)
- [protocols \(Security Zones Interfaces\) on page 371](#)
- [retain-hold-resource on page 372](#)
- [rsh on page 373](#)
- [rtsp on page 374](#)
- [sccp on page 375](#)
- [security-zone on page 376](#)
- [sip \(Security\) on page 378](#)
- [source-address \(Security Destination NAT\) on page 379](#)
- [source-address \(Security Policies\) on page 380](#)
- [source-nat on page 381](#)
- [sql on page 382](#)
- [static-nat on page 383](#)
- [sunrpc on page 384](#)
- [system-services \(Security Zones Host Inbound Traffic\) on page 385](#)
- [t1-interval on page 387](#)

- [t4-interval](#) on page 387
- [talk](#) on page 388
- [term \(Applications\)](#) on page 389
- [tftp \(Security ALG\)](#) on page 390
- [traceoptions \(Security ALG\)](#) on page 391
- [traceoptions \(Security H323 ALG\)](#) on page 393
- [traceoptions \(Security MGCP ALG\)](#) on page 394
- [traceoptions \(Security SCCP ALG\)](#) on page 395
- [traceoptions \(Security SIP ALG\)](#) on page 396
- [traceoptions \(System Services DNS\)](#) on page 397
- [transaction-timeout](#) on page 399
- [unknown-message \(Security H323 ALG\)](#) on page 400
- [unknown-message \(Security MGCP ALG\)](#) on page 401
- [unknown-message \(Security SCCP ALG\)](#) on page 402
- [unknown-message \(Security SIP ALG\)](#) on page 403

address (Security Destination NAT)

Syntax `address <ip-address> {
 (port port-number | to ip-address);
 }`

Hierarchy Level [edit security nat destination pool *pool-name*]

Release Information Statement modified in Junos OS Release 9.6.

Description Specify a single address or an address range of the destination NAT pool.

- Options**
- *ip-address* —IP address of a pool.
 - *port port-number* —Specify the port number.
 - *to* —Specify the upper limit of the address range.

Required Privilege Level security—To view this statement in the configuration.
 security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

alg

```

Syntax  alg {
        alg-manager {
            traceoptions {
                flag {
                    all <extensive>;
                }
            }
        }
        alg-support-lib {
            traceoptions {
                flag {
                    all <extensive>;
                }
            }
        }
        dns {
            disable;
            doctoring (none | sanity-check);
            maximum-message-length number;
            traceoptions {
                flag {
                    all <extensive>;
                }
            }
        }
        ftp {
            allow-mismatch-ip-address;
            disable;
            ftps-extension;
            line-break-extension;
            traceoptions {
                flag {
                    all <extensive>;
                }
            }
        }
        h323 {
            application-screen {
                message-flood {
                    gatekeeper {
                        threshold rate;
                    }
                }
                unknown-message {
                    permit-nat-applied;
                    permit-routed;
                }
            }
            disable;
            dscp-rewrite {
                code-point string;
            }
        }
    }

```

```

    endpoint-registration-timeout value-in-seconds;
    media-source-port-any;
    traceoptions {
        flag flag <detail | extensive | terse>;
    }
}
ike-esp-nat {
    enable;
    esp-gate-timeout value-in-seconds;
    esp-session-timeout value-in-seconds;
    state-timeout value-in-seconds;
    traceoptions {
        flag {
            all <extensive>;
        }
    }
}
mgcp {
    application-screen {
        connection-flood {
            threshold rate;
        }
        message-flood {
            threshold rate;
        }
        unknown-message {
            permit-nat-applied;
            permit-routed;
        }
    }
    disable;
    dscp-rewrite {
        code-point string;
    }
    inactive-media-timeout value-in-seconds;
    maximum-call-duration value-in-minutes;
    traceoptions {
        flag flag <extensive>;
    }
    transaction-timeout value-in-seconds;
}
msrpc {
    disable;
    traceoptions {
        flag {
            all <extensive>;
        }
    }
}
pptp {
    disable;
    traceoptions {
        flag {
            all <extensive>;
        }
    }
}

```

```
}
real {
  disable;
  traceoptions {
    flag {
      all <extensive>;
    }
  }
}
rsh {
  disable;
  traceoptions {
    flag {
      all <extensive>;
    }
  }
}
rtsp {
  disable;
  traceoptions {
    flag {
      all <extensive>;
    }
  }
}
sccp {
  application-screen {
    call-flood {
      threshold rate;
    }
    unknown-message {
      permit-nat-applied;
      permit-routed;
    }
  }
  disable;
  dscp-rewrite {
    code-point string;
  }
  inactive-media-timeout value-in-seconds;
  traceoptions {
    flag flag <extensive>;
  }
}
sip {
  application-screen {
    protect {
      deny {
        all {
          timeout value-in-seconds;
        }
        destination-ip address;
        timeout value-in-seconds;
      }
    }
  }
  unknown-message {
```

```

        permit-nat-applied;
        permit-routed;
    }
}
c-timeout value-in-minutes;
disable;
dscp-rewrite {
    code-point string;
}
inactive-media-timeout value-in-seconds;
maximum-call-duration value-in-minutes;
retain-hold-resource;
t1-interval value-in-milliseconds;
t4-interval value-in-seconds;
traceoptions {
    flag flag <detail | extensive | terse>;
}
}
sql {
    disable;
    traceoptions {
        flag {
            all <extensive>;
        }
    }
}
sunrpc {
    disable;
    traceoptions {
        flag {
            all <extensive>;
        }
    }
}
talk {
    disable;
    traceoptions {
        flag {
            all <extensive>;
        }
    }
}
tftp {
    disable;
    traceoptions {
        flag {
            all <extensive>;
        }
    }
}
}
traceoptions {
    file {
        filename;
        files number;
        match regular-expression;
        (no-world-readable | world-readable);
    }
}

```

```
    size maximum-file-size;  
  }  
  level (brief | detail | extensive | verbose);  
  no-remote-trace;  
}  
twamp {  
  traceoptions {  
    flag {  
      all <extensive>;  
    }  
  }  
}
```

Hierarchy Level [edit security]

Release Information Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.
The **twamp** application protocol is introduced Junos OS Release 18.2R1.

Description Configure an Application Layer Gateway (ALG) on the device. An ALG runs as a service and can be associated in policies with specified types of traffic. ALGs are enabled by default.

Options The remaining statements are explained separately. See [CLI Explorer](#).

Required Privilege Level security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

alg (Applications)

Syntax	alg (dns ftp ftp-data gprs-gtp-c gprs-gtp-u gprs-gtp-v0 gprs-sctp http https ignore ike-esp-nat imap login mgcp-ca mgcp-ua ms-rpc none pptp q931 ras realaudio rsh rtsp sccp sip smtp sqlnet-v2 ssh sun-rpc talk telnet tftp twamp);
Hierarchy Level	[edit applications application <i>application-name</i> term <i>term-name</i>]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.
Description	<p>Define individual Application Layer Gateway (ALG).</p> <p>The twamp application protocol is introduced Junos OS Release 18.2R1.</p>
Options	<p>ALG supports the following application protocols:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • dns —Domain Name Service • ftp —File Transfer Protocol • ftp-data —Trace FTP Data Session • gprs-gtp-c —GPRS Tunneling Control Plane • gprs-gtp-u —GPRS Tunneling User Plane • gprs-gtp-v0 —GPRS Tunneling Version 0 • gprs-sctp —GPRS Stream Control Protocol • http —Hypertext Transfer Protocol • https —Hypertext Transfer Protocol • ignore —Ignore application type • ike-esp-nat —IKE ESP NAT application protocol • mgcp-ca —Media Gateway Control Protocol with Call Agent • mgcp-ua —MGCP with User Agent • ms-rpc —Microsoft RPC • none —Bypass all ALG application protocols. • pptp —Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol • q931 —ISDN connection control protocol (Q.931) • ras —Remote Access Service • realaudio —RealAudio • rsh —UNIX remote shell services • rtsp —Real-Time Streaming Protocol

- **sccp**—Skinny Client Control Protocol
- **sip**—Session Initiation Protocol
- **smtp**—Simple Mail Transfer Protocol
- **sqlnet-v2**—Oracle SQLNET v2
- **ssh**—Secure Shell Protocol
- **sun-rpc**—Sun Microsystems RPC
- **talk**—TALK program
- **telnet**—Telnet Protocol
- **tftp**—Trivial File Transfer Protocol
- **twamp**—Two-Way Active Measurement Protocol

Required Privilege Level system—To view this statement in the configuration.
 system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

Related Documentation • [term \(Applications\) on page 389](#)

alg-manager

Syntax

```
alg-manager {  
    traceoptions {  
        flag {  
            all <extensive>;  
        }  
    }  
}
```

Hierarchy Level [edit security alg]

Description Configure the Application Layer Gateway (ALG) manager.

Options The remaining statements are explained separately. See [CLI Explorer](#).


Required Privilege Level security—To view this statement in the configuration.
 security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

Related Documentation • [traceoptions \(Security ALG\) on page 391](#)

allow-dns-reply

Syntax	allow-dns-reply;
Hierarchy Level	[edit security flow]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.
Description	Allow an incoming Domain Name Service (DNS) reply packet without a matched request. By default, if an incoming UDP first-packet has dst-port 53, the device checks the DNS message packet header to verify that the query bit (QR) is 0, which denotes a query message. If the QR bit is 1, which denotes a response message, the device drops the packet, does not create a session, and increments the illegal packet flow counter for the interface. Using the allow-dns-reply directs the device to skip the check.
Required Privilege Level	security—To view this in the configuration. security-control—To add this to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Juniper Networks Devices Processing Overview</i>

application (Security Policies)

Syntax	<pre>application { [application]; any; }</pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit security policies from-zone <i>zone-name</i> to-zone <i>zone-name</i> policy <i>policy-name</i> match] [edit security policies global policy <i>policy-name</i> match]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.
Description	Specify the IP or remote procedure call (RPC) application or set of applications to be used as match criteria.
Options	<p><i>application-name-or-set</i>—Name of the predefined or custom application or application set used as match criteria.</p> <p><i>any</i>—Any predefined or custom applications or application sets.</p>
<div> NOTE: A custom application that does not use a well-known destination port for the application will not be included in the <i>any</i> option, and must be named explicitly.</div>	
Required Privilege Level	<p>security—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Security Policies Overview</i>

application-protocol (Applications)

Syntax	<code>application-protocol (dns ftp http https ignore ike-esp-nat mgcp-ca mgcp-ua ms-rpc pptp q931 ras realaudio rsh rtsp sccp sip smtp sqlnet-v2 ssh sun-rpc talk telnet tftp);</code>
Hierarchy Level	<code>[edit applications application <i>application-name</i>]</code>
Release Information	Statement modified in Junos OS Release 8.5. The ike-esp-nat option introduced in Junos OS Release 10.2.
Description	<p>Identify the application protocol name. The following protocols are supported:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • dns —Domain Name Service • ftp —File Transfer Protocol • http —Hypertext Transfer Protocol • https —Hypertext Transfer Protocol • ignore —Ignore application type • ike-esp-nat —IKE ESP NAT application protocol • mgcp-ca —Media Gateway Control Protocol with Call Agent • mgcp-ua —MGCP with User Agent • ms-rpc —Microsoft RPC • pptp —Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol • q931 —ISDN connection control protocol (Q.931) • ras —Remote Access Service • realaudio —RealAudio • rsh —UNIX remote shell services • rtsp —Real-Time Streaming Protocol • sccp —Skinny Client Control Protocol • sip —Session Initiation Protocol • smtp —Simple Mail Transfer Protocol • sqlnet-v2 —Oracle SQLNET v2 • ssh —Secure Shell Protocol • sun-rpc —Sun Microsystems RPC • talk —TALK program • telnet —Telnet Protocol • tftp —Trivial File Transfer Protocol

Default	If application-protocol is not defined, then traffic enters the ALG process as long the status for this ALG is enabled.
Required Privilege Level	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Policy Application Sets Overview</i>

application-screen (Security H323)

Syntax	<pre>application-screen { message-flood { gatekeeper { threshold rate; } } unknown-message { permit-nat-applied; permit-routed; } }</pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit security alg h323]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.
Description	Configure the security screens for the H.323 protocol Application Layer Gateway (ALG).
Options	The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer .
Required Privilege Level	security—To view this statement in the configuration. security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• h323 on page 348

application-screen (Security MGCP)

Syntax

```
application-screen {  
    connection-flood {  
        threshold rate;  
    }  
    message-flood {  
        threshold rate;  
    }  
    unknown-message {  
        permit-nat-applied;  
        permit-routed;  
    }  
}
```

Hierarchy Level [edit security alg mgcp]

Release Information Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.

Description Configure the security screens for the Media Gateway Control Protocol (MGCP) Application Layer Gateway (ALG).

Options The remaining statements are explained separately. See [CLI Explorer](#).

Required Privilege Level security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

Related Documentation

- [mgcp on page 359](#)

application-screen (Security SCCP)

Syntax	<pre>application-screen { call-flood { threshold <i>rate</i>; } unknown-message { permit-nat-applied; permit-routed; } }</pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit security alg sccp]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.
Description	Configure the security screens for the Skinny Client Control Protocol (SCCP) Application Layer Gateway (ALG).
Options	The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer .
Required Privilege Level	security—To view this statement in the configuration. security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• sccp on page 375

application-screen (Security SIP)

Syntax

```

application-screen {
  protect {
    deny {
      all {
        timeout value-in-seconds;
      }
      destination-ip address;
      timeout value-in-seconds;
    }
  }
  unknown-message {
    permit-nat-applied;
    permit-routed;
  }
}

```

Hierarchy Level [edit security alg sip]

Release Information Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.

Description Configure the security screens for the Session Initiation Protocol (SIP) Application Layer Gateway (ALG).



NOTE: IPv6 is supported on the SIP ALG along with Network Address Translation Protocol Translation (NAT-PT) mode and NAT64 address translation.

The type of the <destination-ip-address> is changed from IPv4 address to IP prefix to support all kinds of IP addresses, and correspondingly a prefix is supported to allow multiple IP addresses.

Options The remaining statements are explained separately. See [CLI Explorer](#).

Required Privilege Level security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

Related Documentation

- [sip \(Security\) on page 378](#)

alg-support-lib

Syntax	<pre>alg-support-lib { traceoptions { flag { all <extensive>; } } }</pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit security alg-support-lib]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.
Description	Configures the Application Layer Gateway (ALG) support library.
Options	The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer .
Required Privilege Level	security—To view this statement in the configuration. security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

banner (Access FTP HTTP Telnet Authentication)

Syntax	<pre> banner { fail <i>string</i>; login <i>string</i>; success <i>string</i>; } </pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit access firewall-authentication pass-through (ftp http telnet)]
Release Information	<p>Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.</p> <p>HTTPS for Web authentication is supported on SRX5400, SRX5600, and SRX5800 devices and SRX Series Services Gateways from Junos OS Release 12.1X44-D10 and on SRX300, SRX320, SRX340, SRX345, SRX550M, and SRX1500 Services Gateways from Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D40.</p>
Description	Configure the banners that appear to users during the FTP, HTTP, HTTPS, and Telnet firewall authentication process. The banners appear during login, after successful authentication, and after failed authentication.
Options	The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer .
Required Privilege Level	<p>access—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>access-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>Understanding Firewall Authentication Banner Customization</i>

call-flood

Syntax	<code>call-flood { threshold <i>rate</i>; }</code>
Hierarchy Level	[edit security alg sccp application-screen]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.
Description	Limit the number of calls per second allowed to Skinny Client Control Protocol (SCCP) client. Calls exceeding the threshold are dropped by the SCCP Application Layer Gateway (ALG).
Options	threshold <i>rate</i> —Number of calls per second per client. Range: 2 through 1000 Default: 20
Required Privilege Level	security —To view this statement in the configuration. security-control —To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• sccp on page 375

c-timeout

Syntax	<code>c-timeout <i>value-in-minutes</i>;</code>
Hierarchy Level	[edit security alg sip]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.
Description	Specify the timeout interval for Session Initiation Protocol (SIP) transactions in minutes.
Options	<i>value-in-minutes</i> —Timeout interval. Range: 3 through 10 minutes Default: 3 minutes
Required Privilege Level	security —To view this statement in the configuration. security-control —To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• sip (Security) on page 378

deny (Security SIP)

Syntax	<pre>deny { all { timeout <i>value-in-seconds</i>; } destination-ip <i>address</i>; timeout <i>value-in-seconds</i>; }</pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit security alg sip application-screen protect]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.
Description	Protect servers against INVITE attacks.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • all—Configure the Session Initiation Protocol (SIP) application screen to protect servers at all destination IP addresses against INVITE attacks. • destination-ip <i>address</i>—Configure the SIP application screen to protect the server at this destination IP address against INVITE attacks. You can include up to 16 destination IP addresses of servers to be protected. Enabling this option disables the all option. • timeout <i>value-in-seconds</i>—Amount of time (in <i>seconds</i>) to make an attack table entry for each INVITE, which is listed in the application screen. <p>Range: 1 through 3600 seconds Default: 5 seconds</p>
Required Privilege Level	<p>security—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • sip (Security) on page 378

destination-address (Security Destination NAT)

Syntax destination-address <*ip-address*>;

Hierarchy Level [edit security nat destination rule-set *rule-set-name* rule *rule-name* match]

Release Information Statement modified in Junos OS Release 9.6.

Description Specify a destination address to match the rule. You can configure one address or a subnet.



NOTE:

- If the destination address is IPv4 and the pool is an IPv6 prefix, the length of the IPv6 prefix must be 96.
 - If the destination address is an IPv6 prefix and the pool is an IPv6 prefix, their length must be the same.
-

Options *ip-address*— Destination address or a subnet.

Required Privilege Level security—To view this statement in the configuration.
 security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

destination-address (Security Policies)

Syntax	<pre>destination-address { [address]; any; any-ipv4; any-ipv6; }</pre>
Hierarchy Level	<p>[edit security policies from-zone <i>zone-name</i> to-zone <i>zone-name</i> policy <i>policy-name</i> match]</p> <p>[edit security policies global policy <i>policy-name</i> match]</p>
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5. Support for IPv6 addresses added in Junos OS Release 10.2. Support for IPv6 addresses in active/active chassis cluster configurations (in addition to the existing support of active/passive chassis cluster configurations) added in Junos OS Release 10.4. Support for wildcard addresses added in Junos OS Release 11.1.
Description	Define the matching criteria. You can specify one or more IP addresses, address sets, or wildcard addresses. You can specify wildcards any , any-ipv4 , or any-ipv6 .
Options	address —IP address (any , any-ipv4 , any-ipv6), IP address set, or address book entry, or wildcard address (represented as A.B.C.D/wildcard-mask). You can configure multiple addresses or address prefixes separated by spaces and enclosed in square brackets.
Required Privilege Level	<p>security—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Security Policies Overview</i>


destination-address (Security Source NAT)

Syntax	<code>destination-address <ip-address>;</code>
Hierarchy Level	[edit security nat source rule-set <i>rule-set-name</i> rule <i>rule-name</i> match]
Release Information	Statement modified in Junos OS Release 9.6.
Description	Specify a destination address to match the rule. You can configure multiple addresses or subnets.
Options	<i>ip-address</i> —Destination address or a subnet.
Required Privilege Level	security—To view this statement in the configuration. security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

destination-address (Security Static NAT)

Syntax	<code>destination-address <ip-address>;</code>
Hierarchy Level	[edit security nat static rule-set <i>rule-set-name</i> rule <i>rule-name</i> match]
Release Information	Statement modified in Junos OS Release 9.6.
Description	Specify a destination address to match the rule. You can configure one address or a subnet.
Options	<i>ip-address</i> —Destination address or a subnet.
Required Privilege Level	security—To view this statement in the configuration. security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

destination-nat

Syntax	<code>destination-nat (off pool <i>pool-name</i> rule-session-count-alarm (clear-threshold <i>value</i> raise-threshold <i>value</i>));</code>
Hierarchy Level	[edit security nat destination rule-set <i>rule-set-name</i> rule <i>rule-name</i> then]
Release Information	Statement modified in Junos OS Release 9.6. The rule-session-count-alarm option added in Junos OS Release 12.1X45-D10.
Description	Specify the action of the destination NAT rule.
Options	<p>off—Do not perform destination NAT operation.</p> <p>pool—Use user-defined destination NAT pool to perform destination NAT.</p> <p>rule-session-count-alarm—Define session count alarm thresholds for a specific destination NAT rule. When the session count exceeds the upper (raise) threshold or falls below the lower (clear) threshold, an SNMP trap is triggered.</p>
<div style="display: flex; align-items: center;">  <p>NOTE: If you enter a value for raise-threshold but not for clear-threshold, clear-threshold is automatically set to 80 percent of raise-threshold.</p> </div>	
Required Privilege Level	<p>security—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>

destination-port (Applications)

Syntax	<code>destination-port <i>port-identifier</i>;</code>
Hierarchy Level	<code>[edit applications application <i>application-name</i>],</code> <code>[edit applications application <i>application-name</i> term <i>term-name</i>]</code>
Release Information	Statement modified in Junos OS Release 8.5.
Description	Specify a TCP or UDP destination port number.
Options	<i>port-identifier</i> —Range of ports. You can use a numeric value or one of the text synonyms listed in Table 23 on page 335 .

Table 23: Port Supported by Services Interfaces

Port Name	Corresponding Port Number
afs	1483
bgp	179
biff	512
bootpc	68
bootps	67
cmd	514
cvspserver	2401
dhcp	67
domain	53
eklogin	2105
ekshell	2106
excc	512
finger	79
ftp	21
ftp-data	20
http	80
https	443
ident	113
imap	143
kerberos-sec	88
klogin	543
kpasswd	761
krb-prop	754
krbupdate	760

Table 23: Port Supported by Services Interfaces (continued)

Port Name	Corresponding Port Number
kshell	544
ldap	389
ldp	646
login	513
mobileip-agent	434
mobilip-mn	435
msdp	639
netbios-dgm	138
netbios-ns	137
netbios-ssn	139
nfsd	2049
nnntp	119
ntalk	518
ntp	123
pop3	110
pptp	1723
printer	515
radacct	1813
radius	1812
rip	520
rkinit	2108
smtp	25
snmp	161
snmp-trap	162

Table 23: Port Supported by Services Interfaces (continued)

Port Name	Corresponding Port Number
snpp	444
socks	1080
ssh	22
sunrpc	111
syslog	514
tacacs	49
tacacs-ds	65
talk	517
telnet	23
tftp	69
timed	525
who	513
xmcp	177

Required Privilege Level system—To view this statement in the configuration.
system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

Related Documentation • *Policy Application Sets Overview*

dns

Syntax	<pre>dns { disable; doctoring (none sanity-check); maximum-message-length <i>number</i>; oversize-message-drop traceoptions { flag { all <extensive>; } } }</pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit security alg]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.
Description	Specify the Domain Name System (DNS) Application Layer Gateway (ALG) on the device.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• disable—Disable the DNS ALG. By default, the DNS ALG is enabled. This option will enable or disable the DNS ALG for both IPv4 and IPv6 mode.• doctoring—Configure DNS ALG doctoring.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• none— Disable all DNS ALG doctoring.• sanity-check—Perform only DNS ALG sanity checks.• maximum-message-length—A limit imposed on the size of individual DNS messages.• oversize-message-drop—Configure to drop the oversized DNS packets.• traceoptions— Configure SQL ALG tracing options.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• flag—Trace operation to perform.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• all—Trace all events.• extensive—Display extensive amount of data.
Required Privilege Level	security—To view this statement in the configuration. security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>DNS Overview</i>

dns (System Services)

```

Syntax  dns {
        dns-proxy {
            cache hostname inet ip-address;
            default-domain domain-name {
                forwarders ip-address;
            }
            interface interface-name;
            propagate-setting (enable | disable);
            view view-name {
                domain domain-name {
                    forward-only;
                    forwarders ip-address;
                }
                match-clients subnet-address;
            }
        }
    }
    dnssec {
        disable;
        dlv {
            domain-name domain-name trusted-anchor trusted-anchor;
        }
        secure-domains domain-name;
        trusted-keys (key dns-key | load-key-file url);
        forwarders {
            ip-address;
        }
        max-cache-ttl seconds;
        max-ncache-ttl seconds;
        traceoptions {
            category {
                category-type;
            }
            debug-level level;
            file {
                filename;
                files number;
                size maximum-file-size;
                (world-readable | no-world-readable);
            }
            flag flag;
            level (all | error | info | notice | verbose | warning);
            no-remote-trace;
        }
    }
}

```

Hierarchy Level [edit system services]

Release Information Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 10.2.

Description Configure the DNS server.

Options	The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer .
Required Privilege Level	system—To view this statement in the configuration. system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• DNS Overview

dscp-rewrite

Syntax	<pre>dscp-rewrite { code-point <i>6 bit patterns</i>; }</pre>
Hierarchy Level	<pre>[edit security alg sip] [edit security alg h323] [edit security alg mgcp] [edit security alg sccp]</pre>
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 10.4.
Description	Specify a rewrite-rule for the traffic that passes through a voice over IP Application Layer Gateway (VoIP ALG).
Options	6-bit patterns —Value of the code point in binary form.
Required Privilege Level	security—To view this statement in the configuration. security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Understanding VoIP DSCP Rewrite Rules on page 150

endpoint-registration-timeout

Syntax	endpoint-registration-timeout <i>value-in-seconds</i> ;
Hierarchy Level	[edit security alg h323]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.
Description	Specify the timeout value in seconds for entries in the NAT table.
Options	<p><i>value-in-seconds</i>—Timeout value.</p> <p>Range: 10 through 50,000 seconds</p> <p>Default: 3600 seconds</p>
Required Privilege Level	<p>security—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• h323 on page 348

family inet (Interfaces)

```
Syntax  inet {
    accounting {
        destination-class-usage;
        source-class-usage {
            input;
            output;
        }
    }
    address (source-address/prefix) {
        arp destination-address {
            (mac mac-address | multicast-mac multicast-mac-address);
            publish publish-address;
        }
        broadcast address;
        preferred;
        primary;
        vrrp-group group-id {
            (accept-data | no-accept-data);
            advertise-interval seconds;
            advertisements-threshold number;
            authentication-key key-value;
            authentication-type (md5 | simple);
            fast-interval milliseconds;
            inet6-advertise-interval milliseconds
            (preempt <hold-time seconds> | no-preempt );
            priority value;
            track {
                interface interface-name {
                    bandwidth-threshold bandwidth;
                    priority-cost value;
                }
                priority-hold-time seconds;
                route route-address{
                    routing-instance routing-instance;
                    priority-cost value;
                }
            }
            virtual-address [address];
            virtual-link-local-address address;
            vrrp-inherit-from {
                active-group value;
                active-interface interface-name;
            }
        }
        web-authentication {
            http;
            https;
            redirect-to-https;
        }
    }
    dhcp {
        client-identifier {
```

```

        (ascii string | hexadecimal string);
    }
    lease-time (length | infinite);
    retransmission-attempt value;
    retransmission-interval seconds;
    server-address server-address;
    update-server;
    vendor-id vendor-id ;
}
dhcp-client {
    client-identifier {
        prefix {
            host-name;
            logical-system-name;
            routing-instance-name;
        }
        use-interface-description (device | logical);
        user-id (ascii string| hexadecimal string);
    }
    lease-time (length | infinite);
    retransmission-attempt value;
    retransmission-interval seconds;
    server-address server-address;
    update-server;
    vendor-id vendor-id ;
}
filter {
    group number;
    input filter-name;
    input-list [filter-name];
    output filter-name;
    output-list [filter-name];
}
mtu value;
no-neighbor-learn;
no-redirects;
policer {
    arp arp-name;
    input input-name;
    output output-name;
}
primary;
rpf-check {
    fail-filter filter-name;
    mode {
        loose;
    }
}
sampling {
    input;
    output;
    simple-filter;
}
targeted-broadcast {
    (forward-and-send-to-re | forward-only);
}

```

```
unnumbered-address {  
    interface-name;  
    preferred-source-address preferred-source-address;  
}  
}
```

Hierarchy Level [edit interfaces *interface* unit *unit*]

Release Information Statement supported in Junos 10.2 for SRX Series devices.

Description Assign an IP address to a logical interface.

Options *ipaddress*—Specify the IP address for the interface. The remaining statements are explained separately.



NOTE: You use family inet to assign an IPv4 address. You use family inet6 to assign an IPv6 address. An interface can be configured with both an IPv4 and IPv6 address.

Required Privilege Level **interface**—To view this statement in the configuration.
interface-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

Related Documentation

- *Understanding Interfaces*

ftp (Access)

Syntax ftp {
 banner {
 fail *string*;
 login *string*;
 success *string*;
 }
 }

Hierarchy Level [edit access firewall-authentication pass-through]

Release Information Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.

Description Configure banners for the FTP login prompt, successful authentication, and failed authentication.

Options The remaining statements are explained separately.

Required Privilege Level access—To view this statement in the configuration.
 access-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

ftp (Security ALG)

Syntax

```
ftp {
  allow-mismatch-ip-address;
  disable;
  ftps-extension;
  line-break-extension;
  traceoptions {
    flag {
      all <extensive>;
    }
  }
}
```

Hierarchy Level [edit security alg]

Release Information Statement modified in Junos OS Release 11.4.

Description Specify the FTP ALG on the device.

- Options**
- **disable**—Disable the FTP ALG. By default, the FTP ALG is enabled. This option will enable or disable FTP ALG for both IPV4 and IPV6 mode.
 - **ftps-extension**—Enable secure FTP and FTP SSL protocols.
 - **line-break-extension**—Enable line-break-extension. This option will enable the FTP ALG to recognize the LF as line break in addition to the standard CR+LF (carriage return, followed by line feed).
 - **traceoptions**—Configure FTP ALG tracing options. To specify more than one trace operation, include multiple flag statements.
 - **flag**—Trace operation to perform.
 - **all**—Trace all events.
 - **extensive**—(Optional) Display extensive amount of data.

Required Privilege Level security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

Related Documentation

- [FTP ALG Overview on page 40](#)

gatekeeper

Syntax	<pre>gatekeeper { threshold <i>rate</i>; }</pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit security alg h323 application-screen message-flood]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.
Description	Limit the rate at which remote access server (RAS) requests to the gatekeeper are processed. Messages exceeding the threshold are dropped.
Options	threshold <i>rate</i> —Threshold measured in messages per second. Range: 1 through 50,000 Default: 1000
Required Privilege Level	security —To view this statement in the configuration. security-control —To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• h323 on page 348

h323

Syntax h323 {
 application-screen {
 message-flood {
 gatekeeper {
 threshold *rate*;
 }
 }
 unknown-message {
 permit-nat-applied;
 permit-routed;
 }
 }
 disable;
 dscp-rewrite {
 code-point *string*;
 }
 endpoint-registration-timeout *value-in-seconds*;
 media-source-port-any;
 traceoptions {
 flag *flag* <detail | extensive | terse>;
 }
 }

Hierarchy Level [edit security alg]

Release Information Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.

Description Specify the H.323 Application Layer Gateway (ALG) on the device. H.323 is a control-signaling protocol used to exchange messages between H.323 endpoints.

Options **disable**—Disable the H.323 ALG. By default, H.323 ALG is enabled.

The remaining statements are explained separately. See [CLI Explorer](#).

Required Privilege Level security—To view this statement in the configuration.
 security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

Related Documentation

- [application-screen \(Security H323\) on page 322](#)
- [endpoint-registration-timeout on page 341](#)
- [dscp-rewrite on page 340](#)

host-inbound-traffic

Syntax	<pre> host-inbound-traffic { protocols protocol-name { except; } system-services <i>service-name</i> { except; } } </pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit security zones functional-zone management], [edit security zones functional-zone management interfaces <i>interface-name</i>], [edit security zones security-zone <i>zone-name</i>], [edit security zones security-zone <i>zone-name</i> interfaces <i>interface-name</i>]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.
Description	Control the type of traffic that can reach the device from interfaces bound to the zone.
Options	The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer .
Required Privilege Level	security—To view this statement in the configuration. security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Understanding How to Control Inbound Traffic Based on Traffic Types</i> • <i>Understanding How to Control Inbound Traffic Based on Protocols</i>

ike-esp-nat

Syntax ike-esp-nat {
 enable;
 esp-gate-timeout *seconds*;
 esp-session-timeout *seconds*;
 state-timeout *seconds*;
 traceoptions {
 flag {
 all <extensive>;
 }
 }
 }
 }

Hierarchy Level [edit security alg]

Release Information Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.

Description Configure Application Layer Gateway (ALG) for Internet Key Exchange (IKE) and Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) traffic with Network Address Translation (NAT).

- Options**
- **Enable** —Enable the IKE-ESP ALG.
 - **esp-gate-timeout *seconds***—Set the timeout for the ESP gates created after an IKE Phase 2 exchange has completed.
Range: 2 through 30 seconds.
Default: 5 seconds.
 - **esp-session-timeout *seconds***—Set the idle timeout for the ESP sessions created from the IPsec gates.
Range: 60 through 2400 seconds.
Default: 1800 seconds.
 - **state-timeout *seconds***—Set the timeout for the ALG state information.
Range: 180 through 86,400 seconds.
Default: 14,400 seconds.
 - **traceoptions**—Set the IKE-ESP ALG trace options.
 - **flag** —Specify which tracing operation to perform.
 - **all**—Trace all operations.
 - **extensive**—Set trace verbosity level to extensive.

Required Privilege Level security—To view this statement in the configuration.
 security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

Related Documentation • [Understanding the IKE and ESP ALG on page 47](#)

ike (Security)

```
Syntax  ike {
    gateway gateway-name {
        aaa {
            access-profile profile-name;
        }
        address [ip-address-or-hostname];
        advpn {
            suggester {
                disable;
            }
            partner {
                connection-limit <number>;
                idle-threshold <packets/sec>;
                idle-time <seconds>;
                disable;
            }
        }
        dead-peer-detection {
            (always-send | optimized | probe-idle-tunnel);
            interval seconds;
            threshold number;
        }
        dynamic {
            connections-limit number;
            (distinguished-name <container container-string> <wildcard wildcard-string> |
             hostname domain-name | inet ip-address | inet6 ipv6-address | user-at-hostname
             e-mail-address);
            ike-user-type (group-ike-id | shared-ike-id);
        }
        external-interface external-interface-name;
        fragmentation {
            enable;
            size bytes;
        }
        general-ikeid;
        ike-policy policy-name;
        local-address (ipv4-address | ipv6-address);
        local-identity {
            (distinguished-name | hostname hostname | inet ip-address | inet6 ipv6-address |
             user-at-hostname e-mail-address);
        }
        nat-keepalive seconds;
        no-nat-traversal;
        remote-identity {
            (distinguished-name <container container-string> <wildcard wildcard-string> |
             hostname hostname | inet ip-address | inet6 ipv6-address | user-at-hostname
             e-mail-address);
        }
        tcp-encap-profile profile-name;
        version (v1-only | v2-only);
    }
    policy policy-name {
```

```

certificate {
    local-certificate certificate-id;
    peer-certificate-type (pkcs7 | x509-signature);
    policy-oids [ oid ];
    trusted-ca {
        ca-profile ca-profile-name;
        trusted-ca-group trusted-ca-group-name;
    }
}
description description;
mode (aggressive | main);
pre-shared-key (ascii-text key | hexadecimal key);
proposal-set (basic | compatible | standard | suiteb-gcm-128 | suiteb-gcm-256);
proposals [proposal-name];
reauth-frequency number;
}
proposal proposal-name {
    authentication-algorithm (md5 | sha-256 | sha-384 | sha1);
    authentication-method (dsa-signatures | ecdsa-signatures-256 | ecdsa-signatures-384
        | pre-shared-keys | rsa-signatures);
    description description;
    dh-group (group1 | group14 | group19 | group2 | group20 | group24 | group5);
    encryption-algorithm (3des-cbc | aes-128-cbc | aes-192-cbc | aes-256-cbc | des-cbc);
    lifetime-seconds seconds;
}
respond-bad-spi <max-responses>;
traceoptions {
    file {
        filename;
        files number;
        match regular-expression;
        size maximum-file-size;
        (world-readable | no-world-readable);
    }
    flag flag;
    no-remote-trace;
    rate-limit messages-per-second;
}
}

```

Hierarchy Level [edit security]

Release Information Statement modified in Junos OS Release 8.5. Support for IPv6 addresses added in Junos OS Release 11.1. The **inet6** option added in Junos OS Release 11.1.

Description Define Internet Key Exchange (IKE) configuration.

Options The remaining statements are explained separately. See [CLI Explorer](#).

Required Privilege Level security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

- Related Documentation**
- [IPsec VPN Overview](#)
 - [ALG Overview on page 21](#)
 - [Understanding Logical Systems for SRX Series Services Gateways](#)

inactive-media-timeout (Security MGCP)

Syntax	inactive-media-timeout <i>value-in-seconds</i> ;
Hierarchy Level	[edit security alg mgcp]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.
Description	Specify the maximum amount of time that the temporary openings in the firewall (pinholes) remain open for media if no activity is detected.
Options	<i>value-in-seconds</i> —Maximum amount of time that the pinholes remain open. Range: 10 through 2550 seconds Default: 120 seconds
Required Privilege Level	security—To view this statement in the configuration. security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	• mgcp on page 359

inactive-media-timeout (Security SCCP)

Syntax	<code>inactive-media-timeout <i>value-in-seconds</i>;</code>
Hierarchy Level	[edit security alg sccp]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.
Description	Specify the maximum amount of time that the temporary openings in the firewall (pinholes) remain open for media if no activity is detected.
Options	<p><i>value-in-seconds</i>—Maximum amount of time that the pinholes remain open.</p> <p>Range: 10 through 600 seconds</p> <p>Default: 120 seconds</p>
Required Privilege Level	<p>security—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • sccp on page 375

inactive-media-timeout (Security SIP)

Syntax	<code>inactive-media-timeout <i>value-in-seconds</i>;</code>
Hierarchy Level	[edit security alg sip]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.
Description	Specify the maximum amount of time that the temporary openings in the firewall (pinholes) remain open for media if no activity is detected.
Options	<p><i>value-in-seconds</i>—Maximum amount of time that the pinholes remain open.</p> <p>Range: 0 through 2550 seconds</p> <p>Default: 120 seconds</p>
Required Privilege Level	<p>security—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • sip (Security) on page 378

map-entry-timeout

Syntax	<code>map-entry-timeout <i>map-entry-timeout</i>;</code>
Hierarchy Level	<code>[edit security alg msrpc]</code> <code>[edit security alg sunrpc]</code>
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D10.
Description	Configure the mapping entry timeout value. When the incoming traffic hits the mapping entry, the timeout value has been reset to configured value. The mapping entry is removed from the table when the timeout value expires. The lifetime of the mapping entry is global and applies to all entries in the table.
Options	<i>map-entry-timeout</i> —Specify the Microsoft remote procedure call Application Layer Gateway (MS-RPC ALG) or Sun RPC ALG mapping entry timeout value in hours. Range: 1 through 72 hours. Default: 32 hours.
Required Privilege Level	security —To view this statement in the configuration. security-control —To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• msrpc on page 360• sunrpc on page 384

maximum-call-duration (Security)

Syntax	maximum-call-duration <i>value-in-minutes</i> ;
Hierarchy Level	[edit security alg mgcp], [edit security alg sip]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.
Description	Specify the time at which the SIP call ends. The media session is released after the call has ended.
Options	<i>value-in-minutes</i> —Maximum amount of time at which the call ends and releases the media sessions. Range: 3 through 720 minutes Default: 720 minutes
Required Privilege Level	security—To view this statement in the configuration. security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • mgcp on page 359 • sip (Security) on page 378

maximum-message-length

Syntax	maximum-message-length <i>number</i> ;
Hierarchy Level	[edit security alg dns]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 10.1.
Description	Specify the maximum DNS message length.
Options	<i>number</i> —Maximum length in bytes of a single DNS message. Range: 512 through 8192 bytes. Default: 512 bytes.
Required Privilege Level	security—To view this statement in the configuration. security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • dns on page 338

media-source-port-any

Syntax	media-source-port-any;
Hierarchy Level	[edit security alg h323]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.
Description	Allow media traffic from any port number. By default, this feature is disabled, which allows a temporary opening in the firewall (pinhole) for media traffic to be opened.
Required Privilege Level	security—To view this statement in the configuration. security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• h323 on page 348

message-flood (Security H323)

Syntax	message-flood { gatekeeper { threshold <i>rate</i> ; } }
Hierarchy Level	[edit security alg h323 application-screen]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.
Description	Limit the rate per second at which remote access server (RAS) requests to the gatekeeper are processed. Messages exceeding the threshold are dropped. This feature is disabled by default.
Options	gatekeeper threshold <i>rate</i> —Maximum number of RAS connection requests per second allowed per gateway. Range: 1 through 65,535 Default: 1000
Required Privilege Level	security—To view this statement in the configuration. security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• h323 on page 348

mgcp

```
Syntax  mgcp {
        application-screen {
            connection-flood {
                threshold rate;
            }
            message-flood {
                threshold rate;
            }
            unknown-message {
                permit-nat-applied;
                permit-routed;
            }
        }
        disable;
        dscp-rewrite {
            code-point string;
        }
        inactive-media-timeout value-in-seconds;
        maximum-call-duration value-in-minutes;
        traceoptions {
            flag flag <extensive>;
        }
        transaction-timeout value-in-seconds;
    }
```

Hierarchy Level [edit security alg]

Release Information Statement modified in Junos OS Release 9.2.

Description Specify the Media Gateway Control Protocol (MGCP) ALG on the device. MGCP is a text-based Application Layer protocol that can be used for call setup and call control.

Options **disable**—Disable the MGCP ALG. By default, the MGCP ALG is enabled.



NOTE: By default, the MGCP ALG is disabled for SRX Series devices.

The remaining statements are explained separately. See [CLI Explorer](#).

Required Privilege Level security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

Related Documentation

- [Understanding the MGCP ALG on page 192](#)

msrpc

Syntax	<pre>msrpc { disable; map-entry-timeout <i>map-entry-timeout</i>; traceoptions { flag { all <extensive>; } } }</pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit security alg]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.0.
Description	Specify the Microsoft remote procedure call Application Layer Gateway (MS-RPC ALG) on the device.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• disable—Disable the MS-RPC ALG. By default, the MS-RPC ALG is enabled.• map-entry-timeout <i>map-entry-timeout</i>—Specify the MS-RPC ALG mapping entry timeout value in hours. Range: 1 through 72 hours. Default: 32 hours.• traceoptions—Configure MS-RPC ALG tracing options.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• flag—Trace operation to perform.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• all—Trace all events.• extensive—Display extensive amount of data.
Required Privilege Level	security—To view this statement in the configuration. security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Understanding Microsoft RPC ALGs on page 75

nat

```

Syntax  nat {
        destination {
            pool pool-name {
                address ip-address {
                    (port port-number | to ip-address);
                }
                description text;
                routing-instance routing-instance-name;
            }
        }
        rule-set rule-set-name {
            description text;
            from {
                interface [interface-name];
                routing-instance [routing-instance-name];
                zone [zone-name];
            }
            rule rule-name {
                description text;
                match {
                    (destination-address <ip-address> | destination-address-name <address-name>);
                    destination-port port-number;
                    protocol [protocol-name-or-number];
                    source-address [ip-address];
                    source-address-name [address-name];
                }
                then {
                    destination-nat (off | pool pool-name);
                }
            }
        }
    }
    proxy-arp {
        interface interface-name {
            address ip-address {
                to ip-address;
            }
        }
    }
    proxy-ndp {
        interface interface-name {
            address ip-address {
                to ip-address;
            }
        }
    }
    source {
        address-persistent;
        interface {
            port-overloading {
                off;
            }
        }
    }
}

```

```

pool pool-name {
    address ip-address {
        to ip-address;
    }
    description text;
    host-address-base ip-address;
    overflow-pool (interface | pool-name);
    port {
        (no-translation | port-overloading-factor number | range port-low <to port-high>);
    }
    routing-instance routing-instance-name;
}
pool-default-port-range lower-port-range to upper-port-range;
pool-utilization-alarm {
    clear-threshold value;
    raise-threshold value;
}
port-randomization {
    disable;
}
port-round-robin {
    disable;
}
rule-set rule-set-name {
    description text;
    from {
        interface [interface-name];
        routing-instance [routing-instance-name];
        zone [zone-name];
    }
    rule rule-name {
        description text;
        match {
            (destination-address <ip-address> | destination-address-name <address-name>);
            destination-port port-number;
            protocol [protocol-name-or-number];
            source-address [ip-address];
            source-address-name [address-name];
        }
        then {
            source-nat {
                interface {
                    persistent-nat {
                        address-mapping;
                        inactivity-timeout seconds;
                        max-session-number value;
                        permit (any-remote-host | target-host | target-host-port);
                    }
                }
            }
            off;
            pool {
                persistent-nat {
                    address-mapping;
                    inactivity-timeout seconds;
                    max-session-number number;
                    permit (any-remote-host | target-host | target-host-port);
                }
            }
        }
    }
}

```


Hierarchy Level [edit security]

Release Information Statement modified in Junos OS Release 9.6. The **description** option added in Junos OS Release 12.1.

Description Configure Network Address Translation (NAT) for SRX Series devices.

Options The remaining statements are explained separately. See [CLI Explorer](#).

Required Privilege Level security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

Related Documentation

- *Introduction to NAT*
- *Understanding Logical System Network Address Translation*

nat-pat-address

Syntax	<pre>nat-pat-address { maximum <i>amount</i>; reserved <i>amount</i>; }</pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit system security-profile <i>security-profile-name</i>]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 11.2.
Description	<p>Specify the number of NAT with port address translation (PAT) configurations that user logical system administrators and master logical system administrators can configure for their logical systems if the security profile is bound to the logical systems.</p> <p>The master administrator:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • uses security profiles to provision logical systems with resources. • binds security profiles to user logical systems and the master logical system. • can configure more than one security profile, specifying different amounts of resource allocations in various profiles. <p>Only the master administrator can create security profiles and bind them to logical systems.</p>
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • maximum <i>amount</i>—A maximum allowed quota. If a logical system requires more of a resource than its reserved amount allows it can utilize resources configured for the global maximum amount if they are available—that is, if they are not allocated to other logical systems. The maximum allowed quota specifies the portion of the free global resources that the logical system can use. The maximum allowed quota does not guarantee that the amount specified for the resource in the security profile is available. Logical systems compete for global resources. • reserved <i>amount</i>—A reserved quota that guarantees that the resource amount specified is always available to the logical system.
Required Privilege Level	<p>system—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Understanding Logical System Network Address Translation</i> • <i>Introduction to NAT</i>

oversize-message-drop

Syntax	oversize-message-drop;
Hierarchy Level	[edit security alg dns]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 12.1X46-D55.
Description	<p>Enable or disable oversize message drop.</p> <p>When you enable the oversize-message-drop command, Domain Name System (DNS) packets that exceed the threshold (range from 512 through 8192) are dropped.</p> <p>When you disable the oversize-message-drop command, DNS Application Layer Gateway (ALG) will only record and forward the oversized DNS packets.</p>
Options	oversize-message-drop —Drop the oversized DNS packets for which the packet length exceed the threshold value (range from 512 through 8192).
Required Privilege Level	security—To view this statement in the configuration. security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• dns on page 338

policy (Security Policies)

```

Syntax  policy policy-name {
    description description;
    match {
        application {
            [application];
            any;
            junos-twamp;
        }
        destination-address {
            [address];
            any;
            any-ipv4;
            any-ipv6;
        }
        source-address {
            [address];
            any;
            any-ipv4;
            any-ipv6;
        }
        source-identity {
            [role-name];
            any;
            authenticated-user;
            unauthenticated-user;
            unknown-user;
        }
    }
    scheduler-name scheduler-name;
    then {
        count {
            alarm {
                per-minute-threshold number;
                per-second-threshold number;
            }
        }
        deny;
        log {
            session-close;
            session-init;
        }
        permit {
            application-services {
                application-firewall {
                    rule-set rule-set-name;
                }
            }
            application-traffic-control {
                rule-set rule-set-name;
            }
            gprs-gtp-profile profile-name;
            gprs-sctp-profile profile-name;
            idp;
        }
    }
}

```

```

    redirect-wx | reverse-redirect-wx;
    ssl-proxy {
        profile-name profile-name;
    }
    uac-policy {
        captive-portal captive-portal;
    }
    utm-policy policy-name;
}
destination-address {
    drop-translated;
    drop-untranslated;
}
firewall-authentication {
    pass-through {
        access-profile profile-name;
        client-match user-or-group-name;
        web-redirect;
    }
    user-firewall {
        access-profile profile-name;
        domain domain-name
        ssl-termination-profile profile-name;
    }
    web-authentication {
        client-match user-or-group-name;
    }
}
services-offload;
tcp-options {
    initial-tcp-mss mss-value;
    reverse-tcp-mss mss-value;
    sequence-check-required;
    syn-check-required;
}
tunnel {
    ipsec-group-vpn group-vpn;
    ipsec-vpn vpn-name;
    pair-policy pair-policy;
}
}
reject;
}
}

```

Hierarchy Level [edit security policies from-zone *zone-name* to-zone *zone-name*]

Release Information Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5. The **services-offload** option added in Junos OS Release 11.4. Statement updated with the **source-identity** option and the **description** option added in Junos OS Release 12.1. Support for the **user-firewall** option added in Junos OS Release 12.1X45-D10. Support for the **initial-tcp-mss** and **reverse-tcp-mss** options added in Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D20. The **junos-twamp** application is introduced in Junos OS Release 18.2R1.

Description	Define a security policy.
Options	<p><i>policy-name</i>—Name of the security policy.</p> <p>—</p> <p>The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer.</p>
Required Privilege Level	<p>security—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Configuring SSL Forward Proxy</i> • <i>Security Policies Overview</i>

pptp

Syntax	<pre>pptp { disable; traceoptions { flag { all <extensive>; } } }</pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit security alg]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.
Description	Specify the Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol (PPTP) ALG on the device.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • disable—Disable the PPTP ALG. By default, the PPTP ALG is enabled. • traceoptions—Configure PPTP ALG tracing options. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • flag—Trace operation to perform. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • all—Trace all events. • extensive—Display extensive amount of data.
Required Privilege Level	<p>security—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Security Basics Guide for Security Devices</i>

protect

Syntax

```
protect {
  deny {
    all {
      timeout value-in-seconds;
    }
    destination-ip address;
    timeout value-in-seconds;
  }
}
```

Hierarchy Level [edit security alg sip application-screen]

Release Information Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.

Description Configure options to protect servers against INVITE attacks.

Options The remaining statements are explained separately. See [CLI Explorer](#).

Required Privilege Level security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

Related Documentation

- [sip \(Security\) on page 378](#)

protocols (Security Zones Interfaces)

Syntax	<code>protocols <i>protocol-name</i> { except; }</code>
Hierarchy Level	<code>[edit security zones security-zone <i>zone-name</i> interfaces <i>interface-name</i> host-inbound-traffic]</code>
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.
Description	Specify the types of routing protocol traffic that can reach the device on a per-interface basis.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>protocol-name</i>—Protocol for which traffic is allowed. The following protocols are supported: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • all—Enable traffic from all possible protocols available. • bfd—Enable incoming Bidirectional Forwarding Detection (BFD) Protocol traffic. • bgp—Enable incoming BGP traffic. • dvmrp—Enable incoming Distance Vector Multicast Routing Protocol (DVMRP) traffic. • igmp—Enable incoming Internet Group Management Protocol (IGMP) traffic. • ldp—Enable incoming Label Distribution Protocol (LDP) traffic (UDP and TCP port 646). • msdp—Enable incoming Multicast Source Discovery Protocol (MSDP) traffic. • nhrp—Enable incoming Next Hop Resolution Protocol (NHRP) traffic. • ospf—Enable incoming OSPF traffic. • ospf3—Enable incoming OSPF version 3 traffic. • pgm—Enable incoming Pragmatic General Multicast (PGM) protocol traffic (IP protocol number 113). • pim—Enable incoming Protocol Independent Multicast (PIM) traffic. • rip—Enable incoming RIP traffic. • ripng—Enable incoming RIP next generation traffic. • router-discovery—Enable incoming router discovery traffic. • rsvp—Enable incoming Resource Resolution Protocol (RSVP) traffic (IP protocol number 46). • sap— Enable incoming Session Announcement Protocol (SAP) traffic. SAP always listens on 224.2.127.254:9875. • vrrp—Enable incoming Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP) traffic.

except—(Optional) except can only be used if all has been defined.

Required Privilege Level	security—To view this statement in the configuration. security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Security Zones and Interfaces Overview</i>• <i>Understanding Functional Zones</i>

retain-hold-resource

Syntax	retain-hold-resource;
Hierarchy Level	[edit security alg sip]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.
Description	Enable the device to not free media resources for a Session Initiation Protocol (SIP) Application Layer Gateway (ALG), even when a media stream is placed on hold. By default, media stream resources are released when the media stream is held.
Required Privilege Level	security—To view this statement in the configuration. security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• sip (Security) on page 378

rsh

Syntax	<pre>rsh { disable; traceoptions { flag { all <extensive>; } } }</pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit security alg]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.
Description	Specify the remote shell (RSH) ALG on the device.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• disable—Disable the RSH ALG. By default, the RSH ALG is disabled.• traceoptions—Configure RSH ALG tracing options.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• flag—Trace operation to perform.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• all—Trace all events.• extensive—Display extensive amount of data.
Required Privilege Level	security—To view this statement in the configuration. security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Understanding the RSH ALG on page 82

rtsp

Syntax	<pre>rtsp { disable; traceoptions { flag { all <extensive>; } } }</pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit security alg]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.
Description	Specify the Real-Time Streaming Protocol (RTSP) ALG on the device.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• disable—Disable the RTSP ALG. By default, the RTSP ALG is enabled.• traceoptions—Configure RTSP ALG tracing options.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• flag—Trace operation to perform.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• all—Trace all events.• extensive—Display extensive amount of data.
Required Privilege Level	security—To view this statement in the configuration. security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Understanding the RTSP ALG on page 95

sccp

```
Syntax  sccp {
        application-screen {
            call-flood {
                threshold rate;
            }
            unknown-message {
                permit-nat-applied;
                permit-routed;
            }
        }
        disable;
        dscp-rewrite {
            code-point string;
        }
        inactive-media-timeout value-in-seconds;
        traceoptions {
            flag flag <extensive>;
        }
    }
```

Hierarchy Level [edit security alg]

Release Information Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.

Description Specify the Skinny Client Control Protocol (SCCP) ALG on the device.

Options **disable**—Disable the SCCP ALG. By default, the SCCP ALG is enabled.
The remaining statements are explained separately. See [CLI Explorer](#).

Required Privilege Level security—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

Related Documentation

- [Understanding SCCP ALGs on page 225](#)

security-zone

```
Syntax security-zone zone-name {
    address-book {
        address address-name {
            ip-prefix {
                description text;
            }
            description text;
            dns-name domain-name {
                ipv4-only;
                ipv6-only;
            }
            range-address lower-limit to upper-limit;
            wildcard-address ipv4-address/wildcard-mask;
        }
        address-set address-set-name {
            address address-name;
            address-set address-set-name;
            description text;
        }
    }
    advance-policy-based-routing;
    application-tracking;
    description text;
    enable-reverse-reroute;
    host-inbound-traffic {
        protocols protocol-name {
            except;
        }
        system-services service-name {
            except;
        }
    }
    interfaces interface-name {
        host-inbound-traffic {
            protocols protocol-name {
                except;
            }
            system-services service-name {
                except;
            }
        }
    }
    screen screen-name;
    tcp-rst;
}
```

Hierarchy Level [edit security zones]

Release Information Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5. Support for wildcard addresses added in Junos OS Release 11.1. The **description** option added in Junos OS Release 12.1.

Description	Define a security zone, which allows you to divide the network into different segments and apply different security options to each segment.
Options	<p><i>zone-name</i> —Name of the security zone.</p> <p>The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer.</p>
Required Privilege Level	<p>security—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Security Zones and Interfaces Overview</i>• <i>Example: Configuring Application Firewall Rule Sets Within a Security Policy</i>

sip (Security)

```
Syntax  sip {
        application-screen {
            protect {
                deny {
                    all {
                        timeout value-in-seconds;
                    }
                    destination-ip address;
                    timeout value-in-seconds;
                }
            }
        }
        unknown-message {
            permit-nat-applied;
            permit-routed;
        }
    }
    distribution-ip ip-address;
    c-timeout value-in-minutes;
    disable;
    dscp-rewrite {
        code-point string;
    }
    inactive-media-timeout value-in-seconds;
    maximum-call-duration value-in-minutes;
    retain-hold-resource;
    t1-interval value-in-milliseconds;
    t4-interval value-in-seconds;
    traceoptions {
        flag flag <detail | extensive | terse>;
    }
}
```

Hierarchy Level [edit security alg]

Release Information Statement modified in Junos OS Release 9.2.
The **distribution-ip** option introduced in Junos OS Release 18.1R1 for SRX5400, SRX5600, and SRX5800 devices.

Description Specify the Session Initiation Protocol (SIP) ALG on the device.



NOTE: IPv6 is supported on the SIP ALG along with Network Address Translation Protocol Translation (NAT-PT) mode and NAT64 address translation.

The type of the *destination-ip-address* is changed from IPv4 address to IP prefix to support all kinds of IP addresses, and correspondingly a prefix is supported to allow multiple IP addresses.

Options **disable**—Disable the SIP ALG. Use the **set security alg *alg-name* disable** CLI command to disable the SIP ALG.

distribution-ip—Allows you to configure maximum 20 IPv4 or IPv6 distribution IP addresses.

The remaining statements are explained separately. See [CLI Explorer](#).



NOTE: By default, the SIP ALG is disabled for SRX5600 and SRX5800 devices. Use the CLI command **delete security alg *alg-name* disable** to enable the SIP ALG.

Required Privilege Level **security**—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

Related Documentation

- [Understanding the SIP ALG on page 248](#)

source-address (Security Destination NAT)

Syntax **source-address** [*ip-address*];

Hierarchy Level [edit security nat destination rule-set *rule-set-name* rule *rule-name* match]

Release Information Statement modified in Junos OS Release 9.6.

Description Specify source address to match the rule. You can configure multiple addresses or subnets.

Options ***ip-address*** —Source address or a subnet.

Required Privilege Level **security**—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

source-address (Security Policies)

Syntax	<pre>source-address { [address]; any; any-ipv4; any-ipv6; }</pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit security policies from-zone <i>zone-name</i> to-zone <i>zone-name</i> policy <i>policy-name</i> match] [edit security policies global policy <i>policy-name</i> match]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5. Support for IPv6 addresses added in Junos OS Release 10.2. Support for IPv6 addresses in active/active chassis cluster configurations (in addition to the existing support of active/passive chassis cluster configurations) added in Junos OS Release 10.4. Support for wildcard addresses added in Junos OS Release 11.1.
Description	Define the matching criteria. You can specify one or more IP addresses, address sets, or wildcard addresses. You can specify wildcards any , any-ipv4 , or any-ipv6 .
Options	address —IP addresses, address sets, or wildcard addresses (represented as A.B.C.D/wildcard-mask). You can configure multiple addresses or address prefixes separated by spaces and enclosed in square brackets.
Required Privilege Level	security—To view this statement in the configuration. security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Security Policies Overview</i>• <i>Understanding Security Policy Rules</i>• <i>Understanding Security Policy Elements</i>

source-nat

Syntax

```
source-nat {
  interface {
    persistent-nat {
      address-mapping;
      inactivity-timeout seconds;
      max-session-number value;
      permit (any-remote-host | target-host | target-host-port);
    }
  }
  off;
  pool <pool-name>;
  persistent-nat {
    address-mapping;
    inactivity-timeout seconds;
    max-session-number number;
    permit (any-remote-host | target-host | target-host-port);
  }
  rule-session-count-alarm (clear-threshold value | raise-threshold value);
}
```

Hierarchy Level [edit security nat source rule-set *rule-set-name* rule *rule-name* then]

Release Information Statement modified in Junos OS Release 9.6. Statement modified in Junos OS Release 12.1X45-D10.

Description Specify the action of the source NAT rule.

Options

- **off**—Do not perform the source NAT operation.

The remaining statements are explained separately. See [CLI Explorer](#).

Required Privilege Level

security	— To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control	— To add this statement to the configuration.

sql

Syntax	<pre>sql { disable; traceoptions { flag { all <extensive>; } } }</pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit security alg]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.
Description	Specify the Oracle SQL ALG on the device.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• disable—Disable the SQL ALG. By default, the SQL ALG is enabled.• traceoptions—Configure SQL ALG tracing options.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• flag—Trace operation to perform.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• all—Trace all events.• extensive—Display extensive amount of data.
Required Privilege Level	security—To view this statement in the configuration. security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Understanding the SQLNET ALG on page 108

static-nat

Syntax	<pre> static-nat { inet { routing-instance (default <i>routing-instance-name</i>); } nptv6-prefix { <i>address-prefix</i>; routing-instance <i>routing-instance-name</i>; } nptv6-prefix-name { <i>address-prefix-name</i>; routing-instance <i>routing-instance-name</i>; } [prefix { <i>address-prefix</i>; routing-instance (default <i>routing-instance-name</i>); } prefix-name { <i>address-prefix-name</i>; routing-instance (default <i>routing-instance-name</i>); }] rule-session-count-alarm (clear threshold <i>value</i> raise threshold <i>value</i>); } </pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit security nat static rule-set <i>rule-set-name</i> rule <i>rule-name</i> then]
Release Information	Statement modified in Junos OS Release 9.6. Statement modified in Junos OS Release 12.1X45-D10. Statement modified in Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D25.
Description	Specify the translated address of the static NAT rule.
Options	The remaining statements are explained separately. See CLI Explorer .
Required Privilege Level	security—To view this statement in the configuration. security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

sunrpc

Syntax	<pre>sunrpc { disable; map-entry-timeout <i>map-entry-timeout</i>; traceoptions { flag { all <extensive>; } } }</pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit security alg]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 9.0.
Description	Specify the Sun Microsystems remote procedure call (RPC) ALG on the device.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• disable—Disable the Sun RPC ALG. By default, the Sun RPC ALG is enabled.• map-entry-timeout <i>map-entry-timeout</i>—Specify the Sun RPC ALG mapping entry timeout value in hours. Range: 1 through 72 hours. Default: 32 hours.• traceoptions—Configure the Sun RPC ALG tracing options.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• flag—Trace operation to perform.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• all—Trace all events.• extensive—Display extensive amount of data.
Required Privilege Level	security—To view this statement in the configuration. security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Understanding Sun RPC ALGs on page 71

system-services (Security Zones Host Inbound Traffic)

Syntax	<pre>system-services { (service-name all <service-name except>); }</pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit security zones security-zone <i>zone-name</i> host-inbound-traffic]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.
Description	<p>Specify the types of incoming system service traffic that can reach the device for all interfaces in a zone. You can do this in one of several ways:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • You can enable traffic from each system service individually. • You can enable traffic from all system services. • You can enable traffic from all but some system services.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • service-name—System-service for which traffic is allowed. The following system services are supported: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • all—Enable traffic from the defined system services available on the Routing Engine (RE). Use the <i>except</i> option to disallow specific system services. • any-service—Enable all system services on entire port range including the system services that are not defined. • bootp—Enable traffic destined to BOOTP and DHCP relay agents. • dhcp—Enable incoming DHCP requests. • dhcpv6—Enable incoming DHCP requests for IPv6. • dns—Enable incoming DNS services. • finger—Enable incoming finger traffic. • ftp—Enable incoming FTP traffic. • http—Enable incoming J-Web or clear-text Web authentication traffic. • https—Enable incoming J-Web or Web authentication traffic over Secure Sockets Layer (SSL). • ident-reset—Enable the access that has been blocked by an unacknowledged identification request. • ike—Enable Internet Key Exchange traffic. • lsping—Enable label switched path ping service. • netconf—Enable incoming NETCONF service. • ntp—Enable incoming Network Time Protocol (NTP) traffic.

- **ping**—Allow the device to respond to ICMP echo requests.
- **r2cp**—Enable incoming Radio Router Control Protocol traffic.
- **reverse-ssh**—Reverse SSH traffic.
- **reverse-telnet**—Reverse Telnet traffic.
- **rlogin**—Enable incoming **rlogin** (remote login) traffic.
- **rpm**—Enable incoming Real-time performance monitoring (RPM) traffic.
- **rsh**—Enable incoming Remote Shell (**rsh**) traffic.
- **snmp**—Enable incoming SNMP traffic (UDP port 161).
- **snmp-trap**—Enable incoming SNMP traps (UDP port 162).
- **ssh**—Enable incoming SSH traffic.
- **telnet**—Enable incoming Telnet traffic.
- **tftp**—Enable TFTP services.
- **traceroute**—Enable incoming traceroute traffic (UDP port 33434).
- **xnm-clear-text**—Enable incoming Junos XML protocol traffic for all specified interfaces.
- **xnm-ssl**— Enable incoming Junos XML protocol-over-SSL traffic for all specified interfaces.
- **except**—(Optional) Enable specific incoming system service traffic but only when the *all* option has been defined . For example, to enable all but FTP and HTTP system service traffic:

```
set security zones security-zone trust host-inbound-traffic system-services all
set security zones security-zone trust host-inbound-traffic system-services ftp except
set security zones security-zone trust host-inbound-traffic system-services http except
```

Required Privilege Level	security—To view this statement in the configuration. security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
---------------------------------	---

Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>Security Zones and Interfaces Overview</i>• <i>Supported System Services for Host Inbound Traffic</i>
------------------------------	---

t1-interval

Syntax	t1-interval <i>value-in-milliseconds</i> ;
Hierarchy Level	[edit security alg sip]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.
Description	Specify the maximum round-trip time (RTT) (in milliseconds) allowed for Session Initiation Protocol (SIP) transactions.
Options	<p>value-in-milliseconds—Maximum round-trip time (RTT) allowed measured in milliseconds.</p> <p>Range: 500 through 5000 milliseconds</p> <p>Default: 500 milliseconds</p>
Required Privilege Level	<p>security—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • sip (Security) on page 378

t4-interval

Syntax	t4-interval <i>value-in-seconds</i> ;
Hierarchy Level	[edit security alg sip]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.
Description	Specify the maximum length of time (in seconds) that the network can take to clear messages between client and server Session Initiation Protocol (SIP) transactions.
Options	<p>value-in-seconds—Maximum number of seconds that the network can take to clear messages between client and server transactions.</p> <p>Range: 5 through 10 seconds</p> <p>Default: 5 seconds</p>
Required Privilege Level	<p>security—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • sip (Security) on page 378

talk

Syntax talk {
 disable;
 traceoptions {
 flag {
 all <extensive>;
 }
 }
 }

Hierarchy Level [edit security alg]

Release Information Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.

Description Specify the TALK program ALG on the device.

- Options**
- **disable**—Disable the TALK program ALG. By default, the TALK program ALG is enabled.
 - **traceoptions**—Configure TALK program ALG tracing options.
 - **flag**—Trace operation to perform.
 - **all**—Trace all events.
 - **extensive**—Display extensive amount of data.

Required Privilege Level security—To view this statement in the configuration.
 security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

Related Documentation • [Understanding the TALK ALG on page 121](#)

term (Applications)

Syntax `term term-name {
 alg application;
 destination-port port-identifier;
 icmp-code value;
 icmp-type value;
 icmp6-code value;
 icmp6-type value;
 inactivity-timeout (seconds | never);
 protocol number;
 rpc-program-number number;
 source-port port-number;
 uuid hex-value;
 }`

Hierarchy Level [edit applications application *application-name*]

Release Information Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.

Description Define individual application protocols.

Options The remaining statements are explained separately. See [CLI Explorer](#).

Required Privilege Level system—To view this statement in the configuration.
 system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

Related Documentation • *Security Policy Applications Overview*

tftp (Security ALG)

Syntax

```
tftp {
  disable;
  traceoptions {
    flag {
      all <extensive>;
    }
  }
}
```

Hierarchy Level [edit security alg]

Release Information Statement modified in Junos OS Release 9.2.

Description Configure the Trivial File Transfer Protocol (TFTP) ALG on the device.

Options

- **disable**—Disable the TFTP ALG. By default, the TFTP ALG is enabled.



NOTE: By default, the TFTP ALG is disabled for SRX Series devices.

- **traceoptions**—Configure TFTP ALG tracing options.
 - **flag**—Trace operation to perform.
 - **all**—Trace all events.
 - **extensive**—Display extensive amount of data.

Required Privilege Level

security	—To view this statement in the configuration.
security-control	—To add this statement to the configuration.

Related Documentation

- [Understanding the TFTP ALG on page 134](#)

traceoptions (Security ALG)

```
Syntax  traceoptions {
        file {
            filename;
            files number;
            match regular-expression;
            size maximum-file-size;
            (world-readable | no-world-readable);
        }
        level (brief | detail | extensive | verbose);
        no-remote-trace;
    }
```

Hierarchy Level [edit security alg]

Release Information Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.

Description Configure ALG tracing options.

- Options
- **file**—Configure the trace file options.
 - **filename**—Name of the file to receive the output of the tracing operation. Enclose the name within quotation marks. All files are placed in the directory `/var/log`. By default, the name of the file is the name of the process being traced.
 - **files number**—Maximum number of trace files. When a trace file named **trace-file** reaches its maximum size, it is renamed to **trace-file.0**, then **trace-file.1**, and so on, until the maximum number of trace files is reached. The oldest archived file is overwritten.

If you specify a maximum number of files, you also must specify a maximum file size with the **size** option and a filename.

Range: 2 through 1000 files

Default: 10 files
 - **match regular-expression**—Refine the output to include lines that contain the regular expression.
 - **size maximum-file-size**—Maximum size of each trace file, in kilobytes (KB), megabytes (MB), or gigabytes (GB). When a trace file named **trace-file** reaches this size, it is renamed **trace-file.0**. When the **trace-file** again reaches its maximum size, **trace-file.0** is renamed **trace-file.1** and **trace-file** is renamed **trace-file.0**. This renaming scheme continues until the maximum number of trace files is reached. Then the oldest trace file is overwritten.
- If you specify a maximum file size, you also must specify a maximum number of trace files with the **files** option and a filename.
- Syntax: **x K** to specify KB, **x m** to specify MB, or **x g** to specify GB

Range: 10 KB through 1 GB

Default: 128 KB

- **world-readable | no-world-readable**—By default, log files can be accessed only by the user who configures the tracing operation. The **world-readable** option enables any user to read the file. To explicitly set the default behavior, use the **no-world-readable** option.
- **level**—Set the level of debugging the output option.
 - **brief**—Match brief messages
 - **detail**—Match detail messages.
 - **extensive**—Match extensive messages.
 - **verbose**—Match verbose messages.
- **no-remote-trace**—Set remote tracing as disabled.

Required Privilege Level	trace—To view this statement in the configuration.
	trace-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• alg on page 312
------------------------------	---

traceoptions (Security H323 ALG)

Syntax	<pre> traceoptions { flag <i>flag</i> <detail extensive terse>; } </pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit security alg h323]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.
Description	Configure H.323 tracing options.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • flag—Trace operation to perform. To specify more than one trace operation, include multiple flag statements. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • all—Trace with all flags enabled. • chassis-cluster—Trace chassis cluster information. • h225-asn1—Trace H.225 ASN.1 processing activity. • h245—Trace H.245 processing activity. • h245-asn1—Trace H.245 ASN.1 processing activity. • q931—Trace Q.931 processing activity. • ras—Trace remote access server (RAS) processing activity. • ras-asn1—Trace RAS ASN.1 processing activity. • detail—Display moderate amount of data in trace. • extensive—Display extensive amount of data in trace. • terse—Display minimum amount of data in trace.
Required Privilege Level	trace—To view this statement in the configuration. trace-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • h323 on page 348

traceoptions (Security MGCP ALG)

Syntax	<pre>traceoptions { flag <i>flag</i> <extensive>; }</pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit security alg mgcp]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.
Description	Configure Media Gateway Control Protocol (MGCP) tracing options.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• flag—Trace operation to perform. To specify more than one trace operation, include multiple flag statements.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• all—Trace with all flags enabled.• call—Trace call processing activity.• chassis-cluster—Trace chassis cluster information.• decode—Trace decoder operations activity.• error—Trace processing errors activity.• nat—Trace Network Address Translation (NAT) processing activity.• packet—Trace MGCP protocol packet processing activity.• rm—Trace MGCP Resource Management (Resmgr) functions activity.
Required Privilege Level	<p>trace—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>trace-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• mgcp on page 359

traceoptions (Security SCCP ALG)

Syntax	<pre>traceoptions { flag <i>flag</i> <extensive>; }</pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit security alg sccp]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.
Description	Configure Skinny Client Control Protocol (SCCP) tracing options.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • flag—Trace operation to perform. To specify more than one trace operation, include multiple flag statements. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • all—Trace with all flags enabled. • call—Trace call processing activity. • chassis-cluster—Trace chassis cluster information. • cli—Trace CLI configuration activity and command changes. • decode—Trace decoder operations activity. • error—Trace processing errors activity. • init—Enable tracing for SCCP initialization errors • nat—Enable tracing for SCCP NAT processing • rm—Trace SCCP Resource Management (Resmgr) functions activity.
Required Privilege Level	trace—To view this statement in the configuration. trace-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • sccp on page 375

traceoptions (Security SIP ALG)

Syntax	<pre>traceoptions { flag <i>flag</i> <detail extensive terse>; }</pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit security alg sip]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.
Description	Configure Session Initiation Protocol (SIP) tracing options.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• flag—Trace operation to perform. To specify more than one trace operation, include multiple flag statements.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• all—Trace with all flags enabled.• call—Trace call processing activity.• chassis-cluster—Trace chassis cluster information.• nat—Trace SIP Network Address Translation (NAT) processing activity.• parser—Trace SIP parser operations.• rm—Trace SIP Resource Management (Resmgr) functions activity.• detail—Display moderate amount of data in trace.• extensive—Display extensive amount of data in trace.• terse—Display minimum amount of data in trace.
Required Privilege Level	<p>trace—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>trace-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• sip (Security) on page 378

traceoptions (System Services DNS)

Syntax traceoptions {
 category {
 category-type;
 }
 file;
 }

Hierarchy Level [edit system services dns]

Release Information Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 10.2.

Description Defines tracing options for DNS services.

Options **category**—Specifies the logging category. See [Table 24 on page 398](#) for the different logging categories and their descriptions.

file—Trace file information.

Table 24: Category Names

Category Name	Description
client	Processing of client requests
config	Configuration file parsing and processing
database	Messages relating to the databases
default	Categories for which there is no specific configuration
delegation-only	Delegation only
dispatch	Dispatching of incoming packets to the server
dnssec	DNSSEC and TSIG protocol processing
edns-disabled	Log query using plain DNS
general	General information
lame-servers	Lame servers
network	Network options
notify	NOTIFY protocol
queries	DNS query resolver
resolver	DNS resolution security
security	Approval and denial of requests
unmatched	Unable to determine the class for messages named
update	Dynamic updates
update-security	Approval and denial of update requests
xfer-in	Zone transfers that the server is receiving xfer-out
xfer-out	Zone transfers that the server is sending

Required Privilege Level system—To view this statement in the configuration.
system-control—To add this statement to the configuration.

Related Documentation

- *DNS Overview*

transaction-timeout

Syntax	transaction-timeout <i>value-in-seconds</i> ;
Hierarchy Level	[edit security alg mgcp]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.
Description	Timeout value for Media Gateway Control Protocol (MGCP) transactions. If the timeout value exceeds transaction will be removed by MGCP transactions age out processing.
Options	<i>value-in-seconds</i> —Timeout value. Range: 3 through 50 seconds Default: 30 seconds
Required Privilege Level	security—To view this statement in the configuration. security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• mgcp on page 359

unknown-message (Security H323 ALG)

Syntax	<pre>unknown-message { permit-nat-applied; permit-routed; }</pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit security alg h323 application-screen]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.
Description	<p>Specify how unidentified H.323 messages are handled by the device. The default is to drop unknown (unsupported) messages. Permitting unknown messages can compromise security and is not recommended. However, in a secure test or production environment, this statement can be useful for resolving interoperability issues with disparate vendor equipment. By permitting unknown H.323 (unsupported) messages, you can get your network operational and later analyze your VoIP traffic to determine why some messages were being dropped.</p> <p>This statement applies only to received packets identified as supported VoIP packets. If a packet cannot be identified, it is always dropped. If a packet is identified as a supported protocol, the message is forwarded without processing.</p>
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• permit-nat-applied—Specify that unknown messages be allowed to pass if the session is in NAT mode.• permit-routed—Specify that unknown messages be allowed to pass if the session is in Route mode. (Sessions in Transparent mode are treated as Route mode.)
Required Privilege Level	<p>security—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• h323 on page 348

unknown-message (Security MGCP ALG)

Syntax	<pre>unknown-message { permit-nat-applied; permit-routed; }</pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit security alg mgcp application-screen]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.
Description	<p>Specify how unidentified Media Gateway Control Protocol (MGCP) messages are handled by the device. The default is to drop unknown (unsupported) messages. Permitting unknown messages can compromise security and is not recommended. However, in a secure test or production environment, this statement can be useful for resolving interoperability issues with disparate vendor equipment. By permitting unknown MGCP (unsupported) messages, you can get your network operational and later analyze your VoIP traffic to determine why some messages were being dropped.</p> <p>This statement applies only to received packets identified as supported VoIP packets. If a packet cannot be identified, it is always dropped. If a packet is identified as a supported protocol, the message is forwarded without processing.</p>
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • permit-nat-applied—Specify that unknown messages be allowed to pass if the session is in NAT mode. • permit-routed—Specify that unknown messages be allowed to pass if the session is in Route mode. (Sessions in Transparent mode are treated as Route mode.)
Required Privilege Level	<p>security—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • mgcp on page 359

unknown-message (Security SCCP ALG)

Syntax	<pre>unknown-message { permit-nat-applied; permit-routed; }</pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit security alg sccp application-screen]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.
Description	<p>Specify how unidentified Skinny Client Control Protocol (SCCP) messages are handled by the device. The default is to drop unknown (unsupported) messages. Permitting unknown messages can compromise security and is not recommended. However, in a secure test or production environment, this statement can be useful for resolving interoperability issues with disparate vendor equipment. By permitting unknown SCCP (unsupported) messages, you can get your network operational and later analyze your VoIP traffic to determine why some messages were being dropped.</p> <p>This statement applies only to received packets identified as supported VoIP packets. If a packet cannot be identified, it is always dropped. If a packet is identified as a supported protocol, the message is forwarded without processing.</p>
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• permit-nat-applied—Specify that unknown messages be allowed to pass if the session is in NAT mode.• permit-routed—Specify that unknown messages be allowed to pass if the session is in Route mode. (Sessions in Transparent mode are treated as Route mode.)
Required Privilege Level	<p>security—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• sccp on page 375

unknown-message (Security SIP ALG)

Syntax	<pre>unknown-message { permit-nat-applied; permit-routed; }</pre>
Hierarchy Level	[edit security alg sip application-screen]
Release Information	Statement introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5.
Description	<p>Specify how unidentified Session Initiation Protocol (SIP) messages are handled by the device. The default is to drop unknown (unsupported) messages. Permitting unknown messages can compromise security and is not recommended. However, in a secure test or production environment, this statement can be useful for resolving interoperability issues with disparate vendor equipment. By permitting unknown SIP (unsupported) messages, you can get your network operational and later analyze your VoIP traffic to determine why some messages were being dropped.</p> <p>This statement applies only to received packets identified as supported VoIP packets. If a packet cannot be identified, it is always dropped. If a packet is identified as a supported protocol, the message is forwarded without processing.</p>
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • permit-nat-applied—Specify that unknown messages be allowed to pass if the session is in NAT mode. • permit-routed—Specify that unknown messages be allowed to pass if the session is in Route mode. (Sessions in Transparent mode are treated as Route mode.)
Required Privilege Level	<p>security—To view this statement in the configuration.</p> <p>security-control—To add this statement to the configuration.</p>
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • sip (Security) on page 378

CHAPTER 5

Operational Commands

- clear security alg h323 counters
- clear security alg ike-esp-nat
- clear security alg sccp calls
- clear security alg sccp counters
- clear security alg sip calls
- clear security alg sip counters
- clear security flow session application
- show chassis cluster data-plane statistics
- show chassis cluster statistics
- show security alg h323 counters
- show security alg ike-esp-nat summary
- show security alg msrpc
- show security alg sccp calls
- show security alg sccp counters
- show security alg sip calls
- show security alg sip counters
- show security alg sip rate
- show security alg status
- show security flow gate
- show security flow session
- show security flow session application
- show security flow session resource-manager
- show security idp policy-templates
- show security resource-manager group active
- show security resource-manager resource active
- show security resource-manager summary
- show security zones
- show security zones type

clear security alg h323 counters

Syntax	clear security alg h323 counters <node (<i>node-id</i> all local primary)>
Release Information	Command introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5; node options added in Junos OS Release 9.0.
Description	Clear information about H.323 Application Layer Gateway (ALG) counters.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• none—Clear H.323 ALG counters.• node—(Optional) For chassis cluster configurations, clear H.323 counters on a specific node (device) in the cluster.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>node-id</i> —Identification number of the node. It can be 0 or 1.• all —Clear all nodes.• local —Clear the local node.• primary—Clear the primary node.
Required Privilege Level	clear
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• h323 on page 348• show security alg h323 counters on page 420
List of Sample Output	clear security alg h323 counters on page 406

Sample Output

clear security alg h323 counters

```
user@host> clear security alg h323 counters
```

clear security alg ike-esp-nat

Syntax clear security alg ike-esp-nat

Release Information Command introduced in Junos OS Release 10.2.

Description Clear state information about Application Layer Gateway (ALG) for IKE and ESP.

Required Privilege Level clear

Related Documentation • [show security alg ike-esp-nat summary on page 422](#)

List of Sample Output [clear security alg ike-esp-nat on page 407](#)

Sample Output

clear security alg ike-esp-nat

```
user@host> clear security alg ike-esp-nat
10 active IKE-ESP alg state cleared
```

clear security alg sccp calls

Syntax	clear security alg sccp calls <node (<i>node-id</i> all local primary)>
Release Information	Command introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5; node options added in Junos OS Release 9.0.
Description	Clear Skinny Client Protocol (SCCP) Application Layer Gateway (ALG) call information.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• none—Clear all SCCP ALG calls.• node—(Optional) For chassis cluster configurations, clear SCCP calls on a specific node (device) in the cluster.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>node-id</i> —Identification number of the node. It can be 0 or 1.• all —Clear all nodes.• local —Clear the local node.• primary—Clear the primary node.
Required Privilege Level	clear
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• sccp on page 375• show security alg sccp calls on page 425
Output Fields	This command produces no output.

clear security alg sccp counters

Syntax	clear security alg sccp counters <node (<i>node-id</i> all local primary)>
Release Information	Command introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5; node options added in Junos OS Release 9.0.
Description	Clear Skinny Client Control Protocol (SCCP) Application Layer Gateway (ALG) counters.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • none—Clear all SCCP ALG counters. • node—(Optional) For chassis cluster configurations, clear SCCP counters on a specific node (device) in the cluster. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>node-id</i> —Identification number of the node. It can be 0 or 1. • all —Clear all nodes. • local —Clear the local node. • primary—Clear the primary node.
Required Privilege Level	clear
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • sccp on page 375 • show security alg sccp counters on page 427
List of Sample Output	clear security alg sccp counters on page 409

Sample Output

clear security alg sccp counters

```
user@host> clear security alg sccp counters
```

clear security alg sip calls

Syntax	clear security alg sip calls <node (<i>node-id</i> all local primary)>
Release Information	Command modified in Junos OS Release 9.2; node options added in Junos OS Release 9.0.
Description	Clear Session Initiation Protocol (SIP) Application Layer Gateway (ALG) call information.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• none—Clear all SIP ALG calls.• node—(Optional) For chassis cluster configuration, clear SIP calls on a specific node (device) in the cluster.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>node-id</i> —Identification number of the node. It can be 0 or 1.• all —Clear all nodes.• local —Clear the local node.• primary—Clear the primary node.
Required Privilege Level	clear
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• sip (Security) on page 378• show security alg sip calls on page 429
List of Sample Output	clear security alg sip calls on page 410

Sample Output

clear security alg sip calls

```
user@host> clear security alg sip calls
```

clear security alg sip counters

Syntax	clear security alg sip counters <node (<i>node-id</i> all local primary)>
Release Information	Command modified in Junos OS Release 9.2; node options added in Junos OS Release 9.0.
Description	Clear Session Initiation Protocol (SIP) Application Layer Gateway (ALG) counters.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • none—Clear all SIP ALG counters. • node—(Optional) For chassis cluster configurations, clear SIP counters on a specific node (device) in the cluster. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>node-id</i> —Identification number of the node. It can be 0 or 1. • all —Clear all nodes. • local —Clear the local node. • primary—Clear the primary node.
Required Privilege Level	clear
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • sip (Security) on page 378 • show security alg sip counters on page 431
List of Sample Output	clear security alg sip counters on page 411

Sample Output

clear security alg sip counters

```
user@host> clear security alg sip counters
```

clear security flow session application

Syntax	clear security flow session application <i>application-name</i> <node (<i>node-id</i> all local primary)>
Release Information	Command introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5. The node options added in Junos OS Release 9.0.
Description	Clear currently active sessions for application types or application sets.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>application-name</i> —Name of the specified application type or application set.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• dns—Domain Name System• ftp—File Transfer Protocol• ignore—Ignore application type• mgcp-ca—Media Gateway Control Protocol with Call Agent• mgcp-ua—MGCP with User Agent• ms-rpc—Microsoft RPC• pptp—Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol• q931—ISDN connection control protocol• ras—RAS• realaudio—RealAudio• rsh—UNIX remote shell services• rtsp—Real-Time Streaming Protocol• sccp—Skinny Client Control Protocol• sip—Session Initiation Protocol• sqlnet-v2—Oracle SQLNET• sun-rpc—Sun Microsystems RPC• talk—TALK program• tftp—Trivial File Transfer Protocol• node—(Optional) For chassis cluster configurations, clear sessions for applications on a specific node (device) in the cluster.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>node-id</i> —Identification number of the node. It can be 0 or 1.• all —Clear all nodes.

- **local**—Clear the local node.
- **primary**—Clear the primary node.

Required Privilege Level clear

Related Documentation • [show security flow session application on page 452](#)

List of Sample Output [clear security flow session application dns on page 413](#)
[clear security flow session application dns node 0 on page 413](#)

Output Fields When you enter this command, you are provided feedback on the status of your request.

Sample Output

clear security flow session application dns

```
user@host> clear security flow session application dns
node0:
-----
0 active sessions cleared
node1:
-----
0 active sessions cleared
```

Sample Output

clear security flow session application dns node 0

```
user@host> clear security flow session application dns node 0
node0:
-----
0 active sessions cleared
```

show chassis cluster data-plane statistics

Syntax	show chassis cluster data-plane statistics
Release Information	Command introduced in Junos OS Release 9.3.
Description	Display information about chassis cluster data plane statistics.
Required Privilege Level	view
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>clear chassis cluster data-plane statistics</i>
List of Sample Output	show chassis cluster data-plane statistics on page 415
Output Fields	Table 25 on page 414 lists the output fields for the show chassis cluster data-plane statistics command. Output fields are listed in the approximate order in which they appear.

Table 25: show chassis cluster data-plane statistics Output Fields

Field Name	Field Description
Services Synchronized	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Service name—Name of the service. Rtos sent—Number of runtime objects (RTOs) sent. Rtos received—Number of RTOs received. Translation context—Messages synchronizing Network Address Translation (NAT) translation context. Incoming NAT—Messages synchronizing incoming Network Address Translation (NAT) service. Resource manager—Messages synchronizing resource manager groups and resources. Session create—Messages synchronizing session creation. Session close—Messages synchronizing session close. Session change—Messages synchronizing session change. Gate create—Messages synchronizing creation of pinholes (temporary openings in the firewall). Session ageout refresh request—Messages synchronizing request session after age-out. Session ageout refresh reply—Messages synchronizing reply session after age-out. IPsec VPN—Messages synchronizing VPN session. Firewall user authentication—Messages synchronizing firewall user authentication session. MGCP ALG—Messages synchronizing MGCP ALG sessions. H323 ALG—Messages synchronizing H.323 ALG sessions. SIP ALG—Messages synchronizing SIP ALG sessions. SCCP ALG—Messages synchronizing SCCP ALG sessions. PPTP ALG—Messages synchronizing PPTP ALG sessions. RTSP ALG—Messages synchronizing RTSP ALG sessions.

Sample Output

show chassis cluster data-plane statistics

```
user@host> show chassis cluster data-plane statistics
```

```
Services Synchronized:
```

Service name	RT0s sent	RT0s received
Translation context	0	0
Incoming NAT	0	0
Resource manager	0	0
Session create	0	0
Session close	0	0
Session change	0	0
Gate create	0	0
Session ageout refresh requests	0	0
Session ageout refresh replies	0	0
IPsec VPN	0	0
Firewall user authentication	0	0
MGCP ALG	0	0
H323 ALG	0	0
SIP ALG	0	0
SCCP ALG	0	0
PPTP ALG	0	0
RTSP ALG	0	0

show chassis cluster statistics

Syntax	show chassis cluster statistics
Release Information	Command modified in Junos OS Release 9.0. Output changed to support dual control ports in Junos OS Release 10.0.
Description	Display information about chassis cluster services and interfaces.
Required Privilege Level	view
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <i>clear chassis cluster statistics</i>
List of Sample Output	show chassis cluster statistics on page 417 show chassis cluster statistics (SRX5000 Line Devices) on page 418 show chassis cluster statistics (SRX5000 Line Devices) on page 419
Output Fields	Table 26 on page 416 lists the output fields for the show chassis cluster statistics command. Output fields are listed in the approximate order in which they appear.

Table 26: show chassis cluster statistics Output Fields

Field Name	Field Description
Control link statistics	<p>Statistics of the control link used by chassis cluster traffic. Statistics for Control link 1 are displayed when you use dual control links (SRX5000 lines only). Note that the output for the SRX5000 lines will always show Control link 0 and Control link 1 statistics, even though only one control link is active or working.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Heartbeat packets sent—Number of heartbeat messages sent on the control link. Heartbeat packets received—Number of heartbeat messages received on the control link. Heartbeat packet errors—Number of heartbeat packets received with errors on the control link.
Fabric link statistics	<p>Statistics of the fabric link used by chassis cluster traffic. Statistics for Child Link 1 are displayed when you use dual fabric links.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Probes sent—Number of probes sent on the fabric link. Probes received—Number of probes received on the fabric link.

Table 26: show chassis cluster statistics Output Fields (continued)

Field Name	Field Description
Services Synchronized	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Service name—Name of the service. • Rtos sent—Number of runtime objects (RTOs) sent. • Rtos received—Number of RTOs received. • Translation context—Messages synchronizing Network Address Translation (NAT) translation context. • Incoming NAT—Messages synchronizing incoming Network Address Translation (NAT) service. • Resource manager—Messages synchronizing resource manager groups and resources. • Session create—Messages synchronizing session creation. • Session close—Messages synchronizing session close. • Session change—Messages synchronizing session change. • Gate create—Messages synchronizing creation of pinholes (temporary openings in the firewall). • Session ageout refresh request—Messages synchronizing request session after age-out. • Session ageout refresh reply—Messages synchronizing reply session after age-out. • IPsec VPN—Messages synchronizing VPN session. • Firewall user authentication—Messages synchronizing firewall user authentication session. • MGCP ALG—Messages synchronizing MGCP ALG sessions. • H323 ALG—Messages synchronizing H.323 ALG sessions. • SIP ALG—Messages synchronizing SIP ALG sessions. • SCCP ALG—Messages synchronizing SCCP ALG sessions. • PPTP ALG—Messages synchronizing PPTP ALG sessions. • RTSP ALG—Messages synchronizing RTSP ALG sessions. • MAC address learning—Messages synchronizing MAC address learning.

Sample Output

show chassis cluster statistics

```

user@host> show chassis cluster statistics
Control link statistics:
  Control link 0:
    Heartbeat packets sent: 798
    Heartbeat packets received: 784
    Heartbeat packets errors: 0
Fabric link statistics:
  Child link 0
    Probes sent: 793
    Probes received: 0
Services Synchronized:
  Service name                RTOs sent  RTOs received
  Translation context          0           0
  Incoming NAT                 0           0
  Resource manager             0           0
  Session create               0           0
  Session close                0           0
  Session change               0           0
  Gate create                  0           0

```

Session ageout refresh requests	0	0
Session ageout refresh replies	0	0
IPsec VPN	0	0
Firewall user authentication	0	0
MGCP ALG	0	0
H323 ALG	0	0
SIP ALG	0	0
SCCP ALG	0	0
PPTP ALG	0	0
RTSP ALG	0	0
MAC address learning	0	0

Sample Output

show chassis cluster statistics (SRX5000 Line Devices)

```

user@host> show chassis cluster statistics
Control link statistics:
  Control link 0:
    Heartbeat packets sent: 258689
    Heartbeat packets received: 258684
    Heartbeat packets errors: 0
  Control link 1:
    Heartbeat packets sent: 258689
    Heartbeat packets received: 258684
    Heartbeat packets errors: 0
Fabric link statistics:
  Child link 0
    Probes sent: 258681
    Probes received: 258681
  Child link 1
    Probes sent: 258501
    Probes received: 258501
Services Synchronized:
  Service name          RT0s sent  RT0s received
  Translation context    0          0
  Incoming NAT           0          0
  Resource manager       0          0
  Session create         1          0
  Session close          1          0
  Session change         0          0
  Gate create            0          0
  Session ageout refresh requests 0          0
  Session ageout refresh replies 0          0
  IPsec VPN              0          0
  Firewall user authentication 0          0
  MGCP ALG               0          0
  H323 ALG               0          0
  SIP ALG                0          0
  SCCP ALG               0          0
  PPTP ALG               0          0
  RPC ALG                0          0
  RTSP ALG               0          0
  RAS ALG                0          0
  MAC address learning   0          0
  GPRS GTP              0          0

```

Sample Output

show chassis cluster statistics (SRX5000 Line Devices)

```

user@host> show chassis cluster statistics
Control link statistics:
  Control link 0:
    Heartbeat packets sent: 82371
    Heartbeat packets received: 82321
    Heartbeat packets errors: 0
  Control link 1:
    Heartbeat packets sent: 0
    Heartbeat packets received: 0
    Heartbeat packets errors: 0
Fabric link statistics:
  Child link 0
    Probes sent: 258681
    Probes received: 258681
  Child link 1
    Probes sent: 258501
    Probes received: 258501
Services Synchronized:

```

Service name	RTOs sent	RTOs received
Translation context	0	0
Incoming NAT	0	0
Resource manager	0	0
Session create	1	0
Session close	1	0
Session change	0	0
Gate create	0	0
Session ageout refresh requests	0	0
Session ageout refresh replies	0	0
IPSec VPN	0	0
Firewall user authentication	0	0
MGCP ALG	0	0
H323 ALG	0	0
SIP ALG	0	0
SCCP ALG	0	0
PPTP ALG	0	0
RPC ALG	0	0
RTSP ALG	0	0
RAS ALG	0	0
MAC address learning	0	0
GPRS GTP	0	0

show security alg h323 counters

Syntax	show security alg h323 counters <node (<i>node-id</i> all local primary)>
Release Information	Command introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5; node options added in Junos OS Release 9.0.
Description	Display H.323 Application Layer Gateway (ALG) counters information.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • none—Display H.323 ALG counters. information. • node—(Optional) For chassis cluster configurations, display H.323 counters on a specific node (device) in the cluster. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>node-id</i> —Identification number of the node. It can be 0 or 1. • all—Display information about all nodes. • local—Display information about the local node. • primary—Display information about the primary node.
Required Privilege Level	view
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • h323 on page 348 • clear security alg h323 counters on page 406
List of Sample Output	show security alg h323 counters on page 421
Output Fields	Table 27 on page 420 lists the output fields for the show security alg h323 counters command. Output fields are listed in the approximate order in which they appear.

Table 27: show security alg h323 counters Output Fields

Field Name	Field Description
Packets received	Number of H.323 ALG packets received.
Packets dropped	Number of H.323 ALG packets dropped.
RAS message received	Number of incoming RAS (Endpoint Registration, Admission, and Status) messages per second per gatekeeper received and processed.
Q.931 message received	Counter for Q.931 message received.
H.245 message received	Counter for H.245 message received.

Table 27: show security alg h323 counters Output Fields (continued)

Field Name	Field Description
Number of calls	Total number of H.323 ALG calls. NOTE: This counter displays the number of call legs and may not display the exact number of voice calls that are active. For instance, for a single active voice call between two endpoints, this counter might display a value of 2.
Number of active calls	Number of active H.323 ALG calls.
Decoding errors	Number of decoding errors.
Message flood dropped	Error counter for message flood dropped.
NAT errors	H.323 ALG Network Address Translation (NAT) errors.
Resource manager errors	H.323 ALG resource manager errors.

Sample Output

show security alg h323 counters

```

user@host> show security alg h323 counters
H.323 counters summary:
Packets received      :4060
Packets dropped       :24
RAS message received  :3690
Q.931 message received :202
H.245 message received :145
Number of calls       :25
Number of active calls :0
H.323 Error Counters:
Decoding errors       :24
Message flood dropped  :0
NAT errors             :0
Resource manager errors :0
H.323 Message Counters:
RRQ      : 431   RCF      : 49  ARQ   : 60  ACF      : 33
URQ      : 34   UCF      : 25  DRQ   : 55  DCF      : 44
oth RAS   : 2942 Setup    : 28  Alert   : 9  Connect : 25
CallPrd   : 18  Info     : 0   RelCmpl  : 39  Facility : 14
Progress  : 0   Empty    : 65  OLC     : 20  OLC-ACK  : 20
oth H245   : 16

```

show security alg ike-esp-nat summary

Syntax	show security alg ike-esp-nat summary
Release Information	Command introduced in Junos OS Release 10.2.
Description	Display Application Layer Gateway (ALG) for IKE and ESP information summary.
Required Privilege Level	view
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• clear security alg ike-esp-nat on page 407
List of Sample Output	show security alg ike-esp-nat summary on page 422

Sample Output

show security alg ike-esp-nat summary

```
user@host> security alg ike-esp-nat summary
Initiator cookie: d5732d9b4114de1a
Responder cookie: 4776fe31164ef
Session-ID:      13
ALG state :      1
Timeout:         6292
Used IKE cookies: 0
Maximum IKE cookies: 2400
```

show security alg msrpc

Syntax	<code>show security alg msrpc</code> <code><object-id-map> <node (<i>node-id</i> all local primary)></code>
Release Information	Command modified in Junos OS Release 10.1.
Description	Display Microsoft (MS) remote procedure call (RPC) Application Layer Gateway (ALG) information.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • none—Display all MS-RPC ID (UUID) to object ID (OID) table information. • object-id-map—(Optional) Display information from the MS-RPC ID (UUID) to object ID (OID) table. • node—(Optional) For chassis cluster configurations, display MS-RPC UUID-to-object-ID mapping information on a specific node (device) in the cluster. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>node-id</i>—Identification number of the node. It can be 0 or 1. • all—Display information about all nodes. • local—Display information about the local node. • primary—Display information about the primary node.
Required Privilege Level	view
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • msrpc on page 360
List of Sample Output	show security alg msrpc object-id-map on page 424
Output Fields	

Table 28 on page 424 lists the output fields for the **show security alg msrpc** command. Output fields are listed in the approximate order in which they appear.

Table 28: show security alg msrpc Output Fields

Field Name	Field Description
UUID	MS-RPC ID.
OID	MS-RPC object ID.

Sample Output

show security alg msrpc object-id-map

```
user@host> show security alg msrpc object-id-map
UUID                                OID
1be617c0-31a5-11cf-a7d8-00805f48a135  0x80000020
e3514235-4b06-11d1-ab04-00c04fc2dcd2  0x80000002
67df7c70-0f04-11ce-b13f-00aa003bac6c  0x80000014
```

show security alg sccp calls

Syntax	show security alg sccp calls < brief detail node (<i>node-id</i> all local primary)>
Release Information	Command introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5; node options added in Junos OS Release 9.0.
Description	Display information about Skinny Client Control Protocol (SCCP) Application Layer Gateway (ALG) calls.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • none brief—Display brief call information. • detail—(Optional) Display detailed call information. • node—(Optional) For chassis cluster configurations, display SCCP calls on a specific node (device) in the cluster. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>node-id</i>—Identification number of the node. It can be 0 or 1. • all—Display information about all nodes. • local—Display information about the local node. • primary—Display information about the primary node.
Required Privilege Level	view
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • sccp on page 375 • clear security alg sccp calls on page 408
List of Sample Output	show security alg sccp calls on page 426 show security alg sccp calls detail on page 426
Output Fields	Table 29 on page 426 lists the output fields for the show security alg sccp calls command. Output fields are listed in the approximate order in which they appear.

Table 29: show security alg sccp calls Output Fields

Field Name	Field Description
Client IP address	IP address of the client.
Client zone	Client zone ID.
Call manager	IP address of the call manager.
Resource manager group	Resource manager group ID.

Sample Output

show security alg sccp calls

```
user@host> show security alg sccp calls
Client IP      Zone      Call Manager      Conference ID  RM group
11.0.102.91    7         13.0.99.226       16789504      2047
12.0.102.96    8         13.0.99.226       16789505      2048
```

Sample Output

show security alg sccp calls detail

```
user@host> show security alg sccp calls detail
Client IP address: 11.0.102.91
Client zone: 7
Call Manager IP: 13.0.99.226
Conference ID: 16789504
Resource manager group: 2048
SCCP channel information:
  Media transmit channel address (IP address/Port): 0.0.0.0:0
  Media transmit channel translated address (IP address/Port): 0.0.0.0:0
  Media transmit channel pass-through party ID (PPID): 0
  Media transmit channel resource ID: 0
  Media receive channel address (IP address/Port): 11.0.102.91:20060
  Media receive channel translated address (IP address/Port): 25.0.0.1:1032
  Media receive channel pass-through party ID (PPID): 16934451
  Media receive channel resource ID: 8185
  Multimedia transmit channel address (IP address/Port): 0.0.0.0:0
  Multimedia transmit channel translated address (IP address/Port): 0.0.0.0:0
  Multimedia transmit channel pass-through party ID (PPID): 0
  Multimedia transmit channel resource ID: 0
  Multimedia receive channel address (IP address/Port): 0.0.0.0:0
  Multimedia receive channel translated address (IP address/Port): 0.0.0.0:0
  Multimedia receive channel pass-through party ID (PPID): 0
  Multimedia receive channel resource ID: 0
Total number of calls = 1
```

show security alg sccp counters

Syntax	show security alg sccp counters <node (<i>node-id</i> all local primary)>
Release Information	Command introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5; node options added in Junos OS Release 9.0.
Description	Display information about Skinny Client Control Protocol (SCCP) Application Layer Gateway (ALG) counters.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • none—Display all SCCP ALG counters. • node—(Optional) For chassis cluster configurations, display SCCP counters on a specific node (device) in the cluster. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>node-id</i> —Identification number of the node. It can be 0 or 1. • all—Display information about all nodes. • local—Display information about the local node. • primary—Display information about the primary node.
Required Privilege Level	view
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • sccp on page 375 • clear security alg sccp counters on page 409
List of Sample Output	show security alg sccp counters on page 428
Output Fields	Table 30 on page 427 lists the output fields for the show security alg sccp counters command. Output fields are listed in the approximate order in which they appear.

Table 30: show security alg sccp counters Output Fields

Field Name	Field Description
Active client sessions	Number of active SCCP ALG client sessions.
Active calls	Number of active SCCP ALG calls.
Total calls	Total number of SCCP ALG calls.
Packets received	Number of SCCP ALG packets received.
PDU's processed	Number of SCCP ALG protocol data units (PDU) processed.

Table 30: show security alg sccp counters Output Fields (continued)

Field Name	Field Description
Current call rate	Number of calls per second.
Packets dropped	Number of packets dropped by the SCCP ALG.
Decode errors	Number of decoding errors.
Protocol errors	Number of protocol errors.
Address translation errors	Number of NAT errors.
Policy lookup errors	Number of errors occurring during policy lookups.
Unknown PDUs	Number of unknown protocol data units (PDUs).
Maximum calls exceed	Number of times the maximum number of calls was exceeded.
Maximum call rate exceed	Number of times the maximum call rate was exceeded.
Initialization errors	Number of call initialization errors.
Internal errors	Number of internal errors.
Nonspecific error	Number of nonspecific errors.

Sample Output

show security alg sccp counters

```

user@host> show security alg sccp counters
SCCP call statistics:
  Active client sessions      : 4
  Active calls                : 2
  Total calls                 : 3
  Packets received            : 232
  PDUs processed              : 232
  Current call rate           : 0
Error counters:
  Packets dropped             : 0
  Decode errors               : 0
  Protocol errors             : 0
  Address translation errors   : 0
  Policy lookup errors         : 0
  Unknown PDUs                : 0
  Maximum calls exceeded      : 0
  Maximum call rate exceeded   : 0
  Initialization errors       : 0
  Internal errors              : 0
  Nonspecific error           : 0

```

show security alg sip calls

Syntax	<code>show security alg sip calls</code> <code><brief detail node (<i>node-id</i> all local primary) ></code>
Release Information	Command modified in Junos OS Release 9.2; node options added in Junos OS Release 9.0.
Description	Display information about Session Initiation Protocols (SIP) Application Layer Gateway (ALG) calls.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • none brief—Display brief call information. • detail—(Optional) Display detailed information about SIP ALG calls. • node—(Optional) For chassis cluster configurations, display SIP calls on a specific node (device) in the cluster. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • node-id—Identification number of the node. It can be 0 or 1. • all—Display information about all nodes. • local—Display information about the local node. • primary—Display information about the primary node.
Required Privilege Level	view
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • sip (Security) on page 378 • clear security alg sip calls on page 410
List of Sample Output	show security alg sip calls on page 430 show security alg sip calls detail on page 430
Output Fields	Table 31 on page 429 lists the output fields for the show security alg sip calls command. Output fields are listed in the approximate order in which they appear.

Table 31: show security alg sip calls Output Fields

Field Name	Field Description
UAS callid	Call Identifier for the SIP ALG user agent server.
State	State of the SIP ALG user agent server.

Sample Output

show security alg sip calls

```
user@host> show security alg sip calls
Total number of calls: 1
  Call ID   : 1-2468@20.0.0.174
  Method    : INVITE
```

Sample Output

show security alg sip calls detail

```
user@host> show security alg sip calls detail
Total number of calls: 1
  Call ID   : 1-2468@20.0.0.174
  Method    : INVITE
  State     : SETUP
  Group ID  : 307
```

show security alg sip counters

Syntax	show security alg sip counters <node (<i>node-id</i> all local primary)>
Release Information	Command modified in Junos OS Release 9.2; node options added in Junos OS Release 9.0.
Description	Display information about Session Initiation Protocol (SIP) Application Layer Gateway (ALG) counters.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • none—Display all SIP ALG counters. • node—(Optional) For chassis cluster configurations, display SIP counters on a specific node (device) in the cluster. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>node-id</i> —Identification number of the node. It can be 0 or 1. • all—Display information about all nodes. • local—Display information about the local node. • primary—Display information about the primary node.
Required Privilege Level	view
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • sip (Security) on page 378 • clear security alg sip counters on page 411
List of Sample Output	show security alg sip counters on page 433
Output Fields	Table 32 on page 431 lists the output fields for the show security alg sip counters command. Output fields are listed in the approximate order in which they appear.

Table 32: show security alg sip counters Output Fields

Field Name	Field Description
INVITE	Number of INVITE requests sent. An INVITE request is sent to invite another user to participate in a session.
CANCEL	Number of CANCEL requests sent. A user can send a CANCEL request to cancel a pending INVITE request. A CANCEL request has no effect if the SIP server processing the INVITE had sent a final response for the INVITE before it received the CANCEL.
ACK	Number of ACK requests sent. The user from whom the INVITE originated sends an ACK request to confirm reception of the final response to the INVITE request.

Table 32: show security alg sip counters Output Fields (continued)

Field Name	Field Description
BYE	Number of BYE requests sent. A user sends a BYE request to abandon a session. A BYE request from either user automatically terminates the session.
RR header exceeded max	Number of times the SIP ALG RR (Record-Route) headers exceeded the maximum limit.
REGISTER	Number of REGISTER requests sent. A user sends a REGISTER request to a SIP registrar server to inform it of the current location of the user. A SIP registrar server records all the information it receives in REGISTER requests and makes this information available to any SIP server attempting to locate a user.
OPTIONS	Number of OPTIONS requests sent. An OPTION request is used by the User Agent (UA) to obtain information about the capabilities of the SIP proxy. A server responds with information about what methods, session description protocols, and message encoding it supports.
INFO	Number of INFO requests sent. AN INFO message is used to communicate mid-session signaling information along the signaling path for the call.
MESSAGE	Number of MESSAGE requests sent. SIP messages consist of requests from a client to a server and responses to the requests from a server to a client with the purpose of establishing a session (or a call).
NOTIFY	Number of NOTIFY requests sent. NOTIFY requests are sent to inform subscribers of changes in state to which the subscriber has a subscription.
PRACK	Number of PRACK requests sent. The PRACK request plays the same role as ACK, but for provisional responses.
PUBLISH	Number of PUBLISH requests sent. The PUBLISH request used for publishing event state. PUBLISH is similar to REGISTER in that it allows a user to create, modify, and remove state in another entity which manages this state on behalf of the user.
REFER	Number of REFER requests sent. A REFER request is used to refer the recipient (identified by the Request-URI) to a third party by the contact information provided in the request.
SUBSCRIBE	Number of SUBSCRIBE requests sent. A SUBSCRIBE request is used to request current state and state updates from a remote node.
UPDATE	Number of UPDATE requests sent. AN UPDATE request is used to create a temporary opening in the firewall (pinhole) for new or updates Session Description Protocol (SDP) information. The following fields are modified: Via, From, To, Call-ID, Contact, Route, and Record-Route.
BENOTIFY	Number of BENOTIFY requests sent. A BENOTIFY request is used to reduce the unnecessary SIP signaling traffic on application servers. Applications that do not need a response for a NOTIFY request can enhance performance by enabling BENOTIFY.
SERVICE	Number of SERVICE requests sent. The SERVICE method used by a SIP client to request a service of a SIP server. It is a standard SIP message and will be forwarded until it reaches the server or end user which is performing the service.

Table 32: show security alg sip counters Output Fields (continued)

Field Name	Field Description
OTHER	Number of OTHER requests sent.
Total Pkt-in	Number of SIP ALG total packets received.
Total Pkt dropped on error	Number of SIP ALG total packets dropped while transmission and retransmission of messages.
Call error	Number of SIP ALG call errors.
IP resolve error	Number of SIP ALG IP address resolution errors.
NAT error	Number of SIP ALG NAT errors.
Resource manager error	Number of SIP ALG resource manager errors.
Contact header exceeded max	Number of times the SIP ALG contact headers exceeded the maximum limit.
Invite Dropped due to call limit	Number of SIP ALG invite dropped due to call limits.
SIP msg not processed by stack	Number of SIP ALG stack errors.
SIP msg not processed by alg	Number of SIP ALG messages not processed by ALGs.
SIP unknown method dropped	Number of SIP ALG unknown method errors.
Decoding error	Number of SIP ALG decoding errors.
Request for disconnected call	Number of SIP ALG calls disconnected.
Request out of state	Number of SIP ALG messages out of state errors.

Sample Output

show security alg sip counters

```

user@host> show security alg sip counters
SIP message counters(T:Transmit, RT:Retransmit):
  Method    T    1xx  2xx  3xx  4xx  5xx  6xx
           RT   RT   RT   RT   RT   RT   RT
  INVITE    4    4    3    0    0    0    0
           0    0    0    0    0    0    0
  CANCEL    0    0    0    0    0    0    0
           0    0    0    0    0    0    0
  ACK       3    0    0    0    0    0    0
           0    0    0    0    0    0    0
  BYE       3    0    3    0    0    0    0
           0    0    0    0    0    0    0
  REGISTER  7    0    7    0    0    0    0
           0    0    0    0    0    0    0

```

OPTIONS	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
INFO	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
MESSAGE	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
NOTIFY	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
PRACK	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
PUBLISH	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
REFER	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
SUBSCRIBE	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
UPDATE	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
BENOTIFY	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
SERVICE	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
OTHER	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

SIP Error Counters:

Total Pkt-in	:34		
Total Pkt dropped on error	:0		
Call error	:0		
IP resolve error	:0		
NAT error	:0		
Resource manager error	:0		
RR header exceeded max	:0		
Contact header exceeded max	:0		
Call Dropped due to limit		: 0	
SIP stack error			: 0
SIP decode error			: 0
SIP unknown method error	: 0		
RT0 message sent		: 0	
RT0 message received		: 0	
RT0 buffer allocation failure		: 0	
RT0 buffer transmit failure		: 0	
RT0 send processing error	: 0		
RT0 receive processing error	: 0		
RT0 receive invalid length		: 0	
RT0 receive call process error	: 0		
RT0 receive call allocation error	: 0		
RT0 receive call register error	: 0		
RT0 receive invalid status error	: 0		

show security alg sip rate

Syntax	show security alg sip rate <node (<i>node-id</i> all local primary)>
Release Information	Command modified in Junos OS Release 9.2; node options added in Junos OS Release 9.0.
Description	Display rate information for Session Initiation Protocol (SIP) Application Layer Protocol (ALG) messages.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • none—Display all SIP ALG rate information. • node—(Optional) For chassis cluster configurations, display SIP rate on a specific node (device) in the cluster. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>node-id</i> —Identification number of the node. It can be 0 or 1. • all—Display information about all nodes. • local—Display information about the local node. • primary—Display information about the primary node.
Required Privilege Level	view
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • sip (Security) on page 378
List of Sample Output	show security alg sip rate on page 436
Output Fields	Table 33 on page 435 lists the output fields for the show security alg sip rate command. Output fields are listed in the approximate order in which they appear.

Table 33: show security alg sip rate Output Fields

Field Name	Field Description
CPU ticks	SIP ALG CPU ticks per microsecond.
Time taken	Time, in microseconds, that the last SIP ALG message needed to transit the network.
Total time	Total time, in microseconds, during an interval of less than 10 minutes for the specified number of SIP ALG messages to transit the network.
Rate	Number of SIP ALG messages per second transiting the network.

Sample Output

show security alg sip rate

```
user@host> show security alg sip rate
CPU ticks per us is 166
Time taken for the last message is 1103 us
Total time taken for 3124 messages is 6221482 us (in less than 10 minutes)
Rate: 502 messages/second
```

show security alg status

Syntax	show security alg status
Release Information	<p>Command modified in Junos OS Release 9.5.</p> <p>Command output is modified to display the details for the TWMAP ALG in Junos OS Release 18.2.</p>
Description	<p>Display the status (enabled/disabled) of the supported Application Layer Gateway (ALG) transactions.</p> <p>The following list describes the default status on each of these devices:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • On all SRX Series devices — The RSH, SQL, and IKE-ESP ALGs are disabled by default. • SRX1500, SRX5400, SRX5600, and SRX5800 devices—FTP, TFTP, DNS, MS-RPC, PPTP, SUNRPC, and TALK ALGs are enabled by default. All other ALGs are disabled. • SRX300, SRX320, and SRX340 devices—All supported ALGs except the RSH, SQL, and IKE-ESP ALGs are enabled by default.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • node—Display the ALG status on a specific node. • logical-system—Display the ALG configuration status for a specific logical system. • root-logical-system—Display the default ALG configuration status for a root logical system.
Required Privilege Level	view
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • alg on page 312
Output Fields	<p>The following list describes the output fields for the show security alg status command. Output fields are listed in the approximate order in which they appear.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DNS—Domain Name Server • FTP—File Transfer Protocol • H323—H.323 protocol • MGCP—Media Gateway Control Protocol • MSRPC—Microsoft remote procedure call • PPTP—Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol • RSH—UNIX remote shell services • RTSP—Real-Time Streaming Protocol

- **SCCP**—Skinny Client Control Protocol
- **SIP**—Session Initiation Protocol
- **SQL**—Oracle SQL
- **SUNRPC**—Sun Microsystems remote procedure call
- **TALK**—TALK program
- **TFTP**—Trivial File Transfer Protocol
- **IKE-ESP—nat**—Internet Key Exchange and Encapsulating Security Payload. Configure IKE-ESP ALG with NAT
- **TWAMP**—Two-Way Active Measurement Protocol

Sample Output

ALG status

```
user@host> show security alg status
DNS      : Enabled
FTP      : Enabled
H323     : Disabled
MGCP     : Disabled
MSRPC    : Enabled
PPTP     : Enabled
RSH      : Disabled
RTSP     : Disabled
SCCP     : Disabled
SIP      : Disabled
SQL      : Disabled
SUNRPC   : Enabled
TALK     : Enabled
TFTP     : Enabled
IKE-ESP  : Disabled
TWAMP    : Disabled
```

ALG status for a specific logical system

```
user@host> show security alg status logical-system LSYS1
ALG Status:
DNS      : Enabled
FTP      : Enabled
H323     : Disabled
MGCP     : Disabled
MSRPC    : Enabled
PPTP     : Enabled
RSH      : Disabled
RTSP     : Disabled
SCCP     : Disabled
SIP      : Enabled
SQL      : Disabled
SUNRPC   : Enabled
TALK     : Enabled
TFTP     : Enabled
IKE-ESP  : Disabled
TWAMP    : Disabled
```

ALG status for all logical systems including root logical system

```
user@host> show security alg status logical-system all
```

```
Logical system: root-logical-system
```

```
ALG Status:
```

```
DNS      : Enabled
FTP       : Enabled
H323     : Disabled
MGCP     : Disabled
MSRPC    : Enabled
PPTP     : Enabled
RSH      : Disabled
RTSP     : Disabled
SCCP     : Disabled
SIP      : Enabled
SQL      : Disabled
SUNRPC   : Enabled
TALK     : Enabled
TFTP     : Enabled
IKE-ESP  : Disabled
TWAMP    : Disabled
```

```
Logical system: LSYS3
```

```
ALG Status:
```

```
DNS      : Enabled
FTP       : Enabled
H323     : Disabled
MGCP     : Disabled
MSRPC    : Enabled
PPTP     : Enabled
RSH      : Disabled
RTSP     : Disabled
SCCP     : Disabled
SIP      : Enabled
SQL      : Disabled
SUNRPC   : Enabled
TALK     : Enabled
TFTP     : Enabled
IKE-ESP  : Disabled
TWAMP    : Disabled
```

```
Logical system: LSYS1
```

```
ALG Status:
```

```
DNS      : Enabled
FTP       : Enabled
H323     : Disabled
MGCP     : Disabled
MSRPC    : Enabled
PPTP     : Enabled
RSH      : Disabled
RTSP     : Disabled
SCCP     : Disabled
SIP      : Enabled
SQL      : Disabled
SUNRPC   : Enabled
TALK     : Enabled
TFTP     : Enabled
IKE-ESP  : Disabled
TWAMP    : Disabled
```

Logical system: LSYS2

ALG Status:

DNS	: Enabled
FTP	: Enabled
H323	: Disabled
MGCP	: Disabled
MSRPC	: Enabled
PPTP	: Enabled
RSH	: Disabled
RTSP	: Disabled
SCCP	: Disabled
SIP	: Enabled
SQL	: Disabled
SUNRPC	: Enabled
TALK	: Enabled
TFTP	: Enabled
IKE-ESP	: Disabled
TWAMP	: Disabled

Logical system: LSYS0

ALG Status:

DNS	: Enabled
FTP	: Enabled
H323	: Disabled
MGCP	: Disabled
MSRPC	: Enabled
PPTP	: Enabled
RSH	: Disabled
RTSP	: Disabled
SCCP	: Disabled
SIP	: Disabled
SQL	: Disabled
SUNRPC	: Enabled
TALK	: Enabled
TFTP	: Enabled
IKE-ESP	: Disabled
TWAMP	: Disabled

show security flow gate

Syntax	show security flow gate [<filter>] [brief summary]
Release Information	Command introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5; Filter and display options added in Junos OS Release 10.2.
Description	<p>Display information about temporary openings known as pinholes or gates in the security firewall.</p> <p>Pinholes are used by applications that commonly have both control and data sessions and must create openings in the firewall for the data sessions based on information from the parent sessions.</p>
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • destination-port—Destination port • destination-prefix—Destination IP prefix or address • protocol—IP protocol number • source-port—Source port • source-prefix—Source IP prefix or address • brief summary—Display the specified level of output.
Required Privilege Level	view
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>show security flow gate brief node</i> • <i>show security flow gate destination-port</i> • <i>show security flow gate destination-prefix</i> • <i>show security flow gate protocol</i> • <i>show security flow gate summary node</i>
List of Sample Output	show security flow gate on page 442 show security flow gate brief on page 443 show security flow gate summary on page 444
Output Fields	<p>Table 34 on page 441 lists the output fields for the show security flow gate command. Output fields are listed in the approximate order in which they appear.</p>

Table 34: show security flow gate Output Fields

Field Name	Field Description
Hole	Range of flows permitted by the pinhole.

Table 34: show security flow gate Output Fields (continued)

Field Name	Field Description
Translated	Tuples used to create the session if it matches the pinhole. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Source address and port Destination address and port
Protocol	Application protocol, such as UDP or TCP.
Application	Name of the application.
Age	Idle timeout for the pinhole.
Flags	Internal debug flags for the pinhole.
Zone	Incoming zone.
Reference count	Number of resource manager references to the pinhole.
Resource	Resource manager information about the pinhole.
Valid gates	Number of valid gates.
Pending gates	Number of pending gates.
Invalidated gates	Number of invalid gates.
Gates in other states	Number of gates in other states.
Total gates	Number of gates in total.
Maximum gates	Number of maximum gates

Sample Output

show security flow gate

```

user@host> show security flow gate
Ho1e: 0.0.0.0-0.0.0.0/0-0->40.1.1.198.51.100.252/64515-64515
Translated: 0.0.0.0/0->10.0.31.161/25415
Protocol: udp
Application: none/0
Age: 101 seconds
Flags: 0xe001
Zone: untrust
Reference count: 1
Resource: 5-1024-8185
Ho1e: 0.0.0.0-0.0.0.0/0-198.51.100.252/1046-1046
Translated: 198.51.100.252/36039-> 203.0.113.1/5060
Protocol: udp
Application: junos-sip/63

```

```

Age: 65535 seconds
Flags: 0xe200
Zone: untrust
Reference count: 1
Resource: 5-1024-8189
Hole: 0.0.0.0-0.0.0.0/0-0->198.51.100.252-198.51.100.252/24101-24101
Translated: 0.0.0.0/0-> 198.51.100.252/24101
Protocol: udp
Application: none/0
Age: 93 seconds
Flags: 0xe001
Zone: trust
Reference count: 1
Resource: 5-1024-8188
Hole: 0.0.0.0-0.0.0.0/0-0->40.1.1.5-198.51.100.252/24100-24100
Translated: 0.0.0.0/0->198.51.100.252/24100
Protocol: udp
Application: none/0
Age: 93 seconds
Flags: 0xe001
Zone: trust
Reference count: 1
Resource: 5-1024-8191
Hole: 0.0.0.0-0.0.0.0/0-0->198.51.100.252-198.51.100.252/5060-5060
Translated: 0.0.0.0/0->198.51.100.252/5060
Protocol: udp
Application: junos-sip/63
Age: 65535 seconds
Flags: 0xe200
Zone: trust
Reference count: 1
Resource: 5-1024-8190

```

show security flow gate brief

```

root> show security flow gate brief
Flow Gates on FPC4 PIC1:

Hole: 192.0.2.1-192.0.2.1/0->192.0.2.100-192.0.2.100/38143-38143
Translated: 192.0.2.1->192.0.2.100/38143
Protocol: tcp
Application: FTP ALG/79
Age: 65532 seconds
Flags: 0x0080
Zone: trust
Reference count: 1
Resource: 1-24576-86016

Valid gates: 1
Pending gates: 0
Invalidated gates: 0
Gates in other states: 0
Total gates: 1

Flow Gates on FPC5 PIC0:

Valid gates: 0
Pending gates: 0
Invalidated gates: 0
Gates in other states: 0
Total gates: 0

```

Flow Gates on FPC5 PIC1:

Valid gates: 0
Pending gates: 0
Invalidated gates: 0
Gates in other states: 0
Total gates: 0

show security flow gate summary

root> show security flow gate summary

Flow Gates on FPC4 PIC1:

Valid gates: 1
Pending gates: 0
Invalidated gates: 0
Gates in other states: 0
Total gates: 1
Maximum gates: 131072

Flow Gates on FPC5 PIC0:

Valid gates: 0
Pending gates: 0
Invalidated gates: 0
Gates in other states: 0
Total gates: 0
Maximum gates: 131072

Flow Gates on FPC5 PIC1:

Valid gates: 0
Pending gates: 0
Invalidated gates: 0
Gates in other states: 0
Total gates: 0
Maximum gates: 131072

show security flow session

Syntax `show security flow session [<filter>] [brief | extensive | summary]
<node (node-id | all | local | primary) >`

Release Information Command introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5. Support for filter and view options added in Junos OS Release 10.2.
Application firewall, dynamic application, and logical system filters added in Junos OS Release 11.2.
Policy ID filter added in Junos OS Release 12.3X48-D10.
Support for connection tag added in Junos OS Release 15.1X49-D40.

Description Display information about all currently active security sessions on the device.



NOTE: For the normal flow sessions, the `show security flow session` command displays byte counters based on IP header length. However, for sessions in Express Path mode, the statistics are collected from the IOC2 and IOC3 ASIC hardware engines and include full packet length with L2 headers. Because of this, the output displays slightly larger byte counters for sessions in Express Path mode than for the normal flow session.

Options • *filter*—Filter the display by the specified criteria.

The following filters reduce the display to those sessions that match the criteria specified by the filter. Refer to the specific **show** command for examples of the filtered output.

advanced-anti-malware—Show advanced-anti-malware sessions. For details on the **advanced-anti-malware** option, see the [Sky Advanced Threat Prevention CLI Reference Guide](#).

application—Predefined application name.

application-firewall—Application firewall enabled.

application-firewall-rule-set—Application firewall enabled with the specified rule set.

application-traffic-control—Application traffic control session.

application-traffic-control-rule-set—Application traffic control rule set name and rule name.

conn-tag—Session connection tag (0..4294967295).

destination-port—Destination port.

destination-prefix—Destination IP prefix or address.

dynamic-application—Dynamic application.

dynamic-application-group—Dynamic application.

encrypted—Encrypted traffic.

family—Display session by family.

idp—IDP-enabled sessions.

interface—Name of incoming or outgoing interface.

logical-system (all | *logical-system-name*)—Name of a specific logical system or **all** to display all logical systems.

nat—Display sessions with network address translation.

node—(Optional) For chassis cluster configurations, display security flow session information on a specific node (device) in the cluster.

- **node-id** —Identification number of the node. It can be 0 or 1.
- **all** —Display information about all nodes.
- **local** —Display information about the local node.
- **primary**—Display information about the primary node.

policy-id—Display session information based on policy ID; the range is 1 through 4,294,967,295.

protocol—IP protocol number.

resource-manager—Resource manager.

root-logical-system—Display root logical system as default.

security-intelligence—Display security intelligence sessions.

services-offload—Display services offload sessions.

session-identifier—Display session with specified session identifier.

source-port—Source port.

source-prefix—Source IP prefix.

tunnel—Tunnel sessions.

- **brief | extensive | summary**—Display the specified level of output.
- **none**—Display information about all active sessions.

**Required Privilege
Level** **view**

- Related Documentation**
- *Juniper Networks Devices Processing Overview*
 - *clear security flow session all*

List of Sample Output

[show security flow session on page 449](#)
[show security flow session \(with default policy\) on page 449](#)
[show security flow session brief on page 450](#)
[show security flow session extensive on page 450](#)
[show security flow session summary on page 450](#)

Output Fields [Table 35 on page 447](#) lists the output fields for the **show security flow session** command. Output fields are listed in the approximate order in which they appear.

Table 35: show security flow session Output Fields

Field Name	Field Description	Level of Output
Session ID	Number that identifies the session. Use this ID to get more information about the session.	brief
		extensive
		none
If	Interface name.	brief
		none
State	Status of security flow session.	brief
		extensive
		none
Conn Tag	A 32-bit connection tag that uniquely identifies the GPRS tunneling protocol, user plane (GTP-U) and the Stream Control Transmission Protocol (SCTP) sessions. The connection tag for GTP-U is the tunnel endpoint identifier (TEID) and for SCTP is the vTag. The connection ID remains 0 if the connection tag is not used by the sessions.	brief
		extensive
		none
CP Session ID	Number that identifies the central point session. Use this ID to get more information about the central point session.	brief
		extensive
		none
Policy name	Name and ID of the policy that the first packet of the session matched.	brief
		extensive
		none

Table 35: show security flow session Output Fields (continued)

Field Name	Field Description	Level of Output
Timeout	Idle timeout after which the session expires.	brief
		extensive
		none
In	Incoming flow (source and destination IP addresses, application protocol, interface, session token, route, gateway, tunnel, port sequence, FIN sequence, FIN state, packets and bytes).	brief
		extensive
		none
Bytes	Number of received and transmitted bytes.	brief
		extensive
		none
Pkts	Number of received and transmitted packets.	brief
		extensive
		none
Total sessions	Total number of sessions.	brief
		extensive
		none
Out	Reverse flow (source and destination IP addresses, application protocol, interface, session token, route, gateway, tunnel, port sequence, FIN sequence, FIN state, packets and bytes).	brief
		extensive
		none
Status	Session status.	extensive
Flag	Internal flag depicting the state of the session, used for debugging purposes.	extensive
Source NAT pool	The name of the source pool where NAT is used.	extensive
Dynamic application	Name of the application.	extensive
Application traffic control rule-set	AppQoS rule set for this session.	extensive
Rule	AppQoS rule for this session.	extensive
Maximum timeout	Maximum session timeout.	extensive

Table 35: show security flow session Output Fields (continued)

Field Name	Field Description	Level of Output
Current timeout	Remaining time for the session unless traffic exists in the session.	extensive
Session State	Session state.	extensive
Start time	Time when the session was created, offset from the system start time.	extensive
Unicast-sessions	Number of unicast sessions.	Summary
Multicast-sessions	Number of multicast sessions.	Summary
Services-offload-sessions	Number of services-offload sessions.	Summary
Failed-sessions	Number of failed sessions.	Summary
Sessions-in-use	Number of sessions in use. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Valid sessions Pending sessions Invalidated sessions Sessions in other states 	Summary
Maximum-sessions	Maximum number of sessions permitted.	Summary

Sample Output

show security flow session

```

root> show security flow session
Flow Sessions on FPC0 PIC1:

Session ID: 10115977, Policy name: SG/4, State: Active, Timeout: 56, Valid
  In: 203.0.113.1/1000 --> 203.0.113.11/2000;udp, Conn Tag: 0x0, If: reth1.0,
  Pkts: 1, Bytes: 86, CP Session ID: 10320276
  Out: 203.0.113.11/2000 --> 203.0.113.1/1000;udp, Conn Tag: 0x0, If: reth0.0,
  Pkts: 0, Bytes: 0, CP Session ID: 10320276

Total sessions: 1

```

show security flow session (with default policy)

```

root> show security flow session
Session ID: 36, Policy name: pre-id-default-policy/n, Timeout: 2, Valid
  In: 10.10.10.2/61606 --> 10.10.10.1/179;tcp, Conn Tag: 0x0, If: ge-0/0/2.0,
  Pkts: 1, Bytes: 64,
  Out: 10.10.10.1/179 --> 10.10.10.2/61606;tcp, Conn Tag: 0x0, If: .local..0,
  Pkts: 1, Bytes: 40,

```

show security flow session brief

```
root> show security flow session brief
Flow Sessions on FPC0 PIC1:

Session ID: 10115977, Policy name: SG/4, State: Active, Timeout: 62, Valid
  In: 203.0.113.11/1000 --> 203.0.113.1/2000;udp, Conn Tag: 0x0, If: reth1.0,
  Pkts: 1, Bytes: 86, CP Session ID: 10320276
  Out: 203.0.113.1/2000 --> 203.0.113.11/1000;udp, Conn Tag: 0x0, If: reth0.0,
  Pkts: 0, Bytes: 0, CP Session ID: 10320276

Total sessions: 1
```

show security flow session extensive

```
root> show security flow session extensive
Flow Sessions on FPC0 PIC1:

Session ID: 10115977, Status: Normal, State: Active
Flags: 0x8000040/0x18000000/0x12000003
Policy name: SG/4
Source NAT pool: Null, Application: junos-gprs-gtp-v0-udp/76
Dynamic application: junos:UNKNOWN,
Encryption: Unknown
Application traffic control rule-set: INVALID, Rule: INVALID
Maximum timeout: 90, Current timeout: 54
Session State: Valid
Start time: 6704, Duration: 35
  In: 203.0.113.11/1000 --> 201.11.0.100/2000;udp,
    Conn Tag: 0x0, Interface: reth1.0,
    Session token: 0x6, Flag: 0x40000021
    Route: 0x86053c2, Gateway: 201.10.0.100, Tunnel: 0
    Port sequence: 0, FIN sequence: 0,
    FIN state: 0,
    Pkts: 1, Bytes: 86
    CP Session ID: 10320276
  Out: 203.0.113.1/2000 --> 203.0.113.11/1000;udp,
    Conn Tag: 0x0, Interface: reth0.0,
    Session token: 0x7, Flag: 0x50000000
    Route: 0x86143c2, Gateway: 203.0.113.11, Tunnel: 0
    Port sequence: 0, FIN sequence: 0,
    FIN state: 0,
    Pkts: 0, Bytes: 0
    CP Session ID: 10320276

Total sessions: 1
```

show security flow session summary

```
root> show security flow session summary
Flow Sessions on FPC10 PIC1:
Unicast-sessions: 1
Multicast-sessions: 0
Services-offload-sessions: 0
Failed-sessions: 0
Sessions-in-use: 1
  Valid sessions: 1
  Pending sessions: 0
  Invalidated sessions: 0
  Sessions in other states: 0
Maximum-sessions: 6291456
```

Flow Sessions on FPC10 PIC2:
Unicast-sessions: 0
Multicast-sessions: 0
Services-offload-sessions: 0
Failed-sessions: 0
Sessions-in-use: 0
 Valid sessions: 0
 Pending sessions: 0
 Invalidated sessions: 0
 Sessions in other states: 0
Maximum-sessions: 6291456

Flow Sessions on FPC10 PIC3:
Unicast-sessions: 0
Multicast-sessions: 0
Services-offload-sessions: 0
Failed-sessions: 0
Sessions-in-use: 0
 Valid sessions: 0
 Pending sessions: 0
 Invalidated sessions: 0
 Sessions in other states: 0
Maximum-sessions: 6291456

show security flow session application

Syntax	show security flow session application <i>application-name</i> [brief extensive summary]
Release Information	Command introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5. Filter and view options added in Junos OS Release 10.2.
Description	Display information about each session of the specified application type.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>application-name</i>—Type of application about which to display sessions information. Possible values are:<ul style="list-style-type: none">• dns—Domain Name System• ftp—File Transfer Protocol• ignore—Ignore application type• mgcp-ca—Media Gateway Control Protocol with Call Agent• mgcp-ua—MGCP with User Agent• pptp—Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol• q931—ISDN connection control protocol• ras—Remote Access Server• realaudio—RealAudio• rsh—UNIX remote shell services• rtsp—Real-Time Streaming Protocol• sccp—Skinny Client Control Protocol• sip—Session Initiation Protocol• sqlnet-v2—Oracle SQLNET• talk—TALK program• tftp—Trivial File Transfer Protocol• brief extensive summary—Display the specified level of output.
Required Privilege Level	view
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• clear security flow session application on page 412
List of Sample Output	show security flow session application telnet on page 454 show security flow session application telnet brief on page 454

[show security flow session application telnet extensive on page 454](#)
[show security flow session application telnet summary on page 455](#)

Output Fields Table 36 on page 453 lists the output fields for the **show security flow session application** command. Output fields are listed in the approximate order in which they appear.

Table 36: show security flow session application Output Fields

Field Name	Field Description
Session ID	Number that identifies the session. You can use this ID to get additional information about the session.
Policy name	Policy that permitted the traffic.
Timeout	Idle timeout after which the session expires.
In	Incoming flow (source and destination IP addresses, application protocol, interface, session token, route, gateway, tunnel, port sequence, FIN sequence, FIN state, packets and bytes).
Out	Reverse flow (source and destination IP addresses, application protocol, interface, session token, route, gateway, tunnel, port sequence, FIN sequence, FIN state, packets and bytes).
Total sessions	Total number of sessions.
Status	Session status.
Flag	Internal flag depicting the state of the session, used for debugging purposes.
Policy name	Name and ID of the policy that the first packet of the session matched.
Source NAT pool	The name of the source pool where NAT is used.
Application	Name of the application.
Maximum timeout	Maximum session timeout.
Current timeout	Remaining time for the session unless traffic exists in the session.
Session State	Session state.
Start time	Time when the session was created, offset from the system start time.
Unicast-sessions	Number of unicast sessions.
Multicast-sessions	Number of multicast sessions.
Failed-sessions	Number of failed sessions.

Table 36: show security flow session application Output Fields (continued)

Field Name	Field Description
Sessions-in-use	Number of sessions in use. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Valid sessions Pending sessions Invalidated sessions Sessions in other states
Maximum-sessions	Number of maximum sessions.

Sample Output

show security flow session application telnet

```

root> show security flow session application telnet
Flow Sessions on FPC4 PIC1:
Total sessions: 0

Flow Sessions on FPC5 PIC0:
Total sessions: 0

Flow Sessions on FPC5 PIC1:

Session ID: 210067547, Policy name: default-policy/2, Timeout: 1796, Valid
  In: 203.0.113.2/32781 --> 192.0.2.5/23;tcp, If: ge-0/0/2.0, Pkts: 10, Bytes:
610
  Out: 192.0.2.5/23 --> 203.0.113.2/32781;tcp, If: ge-0/0/1.0, Pkts: 9, Bytes:
602
Total sessions: 1

```

show security flow session application telnet brief

```

root> show security flow session application telnet brief
Flow Sessions on FPC4 PIC1:
Total sessions: 0

Flow Sessions on FPC5 PIC0:
Total sessions: 0

Flow Sessions on FPC5 PIC1:

Session ID: 210067547, Policy name: default-policy/2, Timeout: 1796, Valid
  In: 203.0.113.2/32781 --> 192.0.2.5/23;tcp, If: ge-0/0/2.0, Pkts: 10, Bytes:
610
  Out: 192.0.2.5/23 --> 203.0.113.2/32781;tcp, If: ge-0/0/1.0, Pkts: 9, Bytes:
602
Total sessions: 1

```

show security flow session application telnet extensive

```

root> show security flow session application telnet extensive
Flow Sessions on FPC4 PIC1:
Total sessions: 0

```

```

Flow Sessions on FPC5 PIC0:
Total sessions: 0

Flow Sessions on FPC5 PIC1:

Session ID: 210067547, Status: Normal
Flag: 0x40
Policy name: default-policy/2
Source NAT pool: Null, Application: junos-telnet/10
Maximum timeout: 1800, Current timeout: 1788
Session State: Valid
Start time: 670184, Duration: 33
  In: 203.0.113.2/32781 --> 192.0.2.5/23;tcp,
    Interface: ge-0/0/2.0,
    Session token: 0x180, Flag: 0x0x21
    Route: 0x60010, Gateway: 203.0.113.100, Tunnel: 0
    Port sequence: 0, FIN sequence: 0,
    FIN state: 0,
    Pkts: 10, Bytes: 610
  Out: 192.0.2.5/23 --> 203.0.113.2/32781;tcp,
    Interface: ge-0/0/1.0,
    Session token: 0x1c0, Flag: 0x0x20
    Route: 0x70010, Gateway: 192.0.2.100, Tunnel: 0
    Port sequence: 0, FIN sequence: 0,
    FIN state: 0,
    Pkts: 9, Bytes: 602
Total sessions: 1

```

show security flow session application telnet summary

```

root> show security flow session application telnet summary
Flow Sessions on FPC4 PIC1:

Valid sessions: 0
Pending sessions: 0
Invalidated sessions: 0
Sessions in other states: 0
Total sessions: 0

Flow Sessions on FPC5 PIC0:

Valid sessions: 0
Pending sessions: 0
Invalidated sessions: 0
Sessions in other states: 0
Total sessions: 0

Flow Sessions on FPC5 PIC1:

Valid sessions: 1
Pending sessions: 0
Invalidated sessions: 0
Sessions in other states: 0
Total sessions: 1

```

show security flow session resource-manager

Syntax	show security flow session resource-manager [brief extensive summary]
Release Information	Command introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5; Filter and view options introduced in Junos OS Release 10.2.
Description	Display information about sessions created by the resource manager.
Options	none—Display all resource manager sessions. brief extensive summary —Display the specified level of output.
Required Privilege Level	view
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Juniper Networks Devices Processing Overview</i> • <i>clear security flow session resource-manager</i>
List of Sample Output	show security flow session resource-manager on page 457 show security flow session resource-manager brief on page 458 show security flow session resource-manager extensive on page 458 show security flow session resource-manager summary on page 459
Output Fields	Table 37 on page 456 lists the output fields for the show security flow session resource-manager command. Output fields are listed in the approximate order in which they appear.

Table 37: show security flow session resource-manager Output Fields

Field Name	Field Description
Session ID	Number that identifies the session. You can use this ID to get additional information about the session.
Policy name	Policy that permitted the traffic.
Timeout	Idle timeout after which the session expires.
Resource information	Information about the session particular to the resource manager, including the name of the ALG, the group ID, and the resource ID.
In	Incoming flow (source and destination IP addresses, application protocol, interface, session token, route, gateway, tunnel, port sequence, FIN sequence, FIN state, packets and bytes).

Table 37: show security flow session resource-manager Output Fields (continued)

Field Name	Field Description
Out	Reverse flow (source and destination IP addresses, application protocol, interface, session token, route, gateway, tunnel, port sequence, FIN sequence, FIN state, packets and bytes).
Total sessions	Total number of sessions.
Status	Session status.
Flag	Internal flag depicting the state of the session, used for debugging purposes.
Policy name	Name and ID of the policy that the first packet of the session matched.
Source NAT pool	The name of the source pool where NAT is used.
Application	Name of the application.
Maximum timeout	Maximum session timeout.
Current timeout	Remaining time for the session unless traffic exists in the session.
Session State	Session state.
Start time	Time when the session was created, offset from the system start time.
Valid sessions	Number of valid sessions.
Pending sessions	Number of pending sessions.
Invalidated sessions	Number of invalidated sessions.
Sessions in other states	Number of sessions in other states.
CP Session ID	Number that identifies the central point session. Use this ID to get more information about the central point session.

Sample Output

show security flow session resource-manager

```

root> show security flow session resource-manager
Flow Sessions on FPC10 PIC1:

Session ID: 410000664, Policy name: p1/4, Timeout: 1734, Valid
Resource information : FTP ALG, 1, 0
In: 200.0.0.10/41047 --> 60.0.0.2/21;tcp, If: ge-7/1/0.0, Pkts: 13, Bytes: 586,
CP Session ID: 410001274
Out: 60.0.0.2/21 --> 200.0.0.10/41047;tcp, If: ge-7/1/1.0, Pkts: 13, Bytes:
803, CP Session ID: 410001274
Total sessions: 1

```

Flow Sessions on FPC10 PIC2:
Total sessions: 0

Flow Sessions on FPC10 PIC3:
Total sessions: 0

show security flow session resource-manager brief

```
root> show security flow session resource-manager brief
```

Flow Sessions on FPC10 PIC1:

Session ID: 410000664, Policy name: p1/4, Timeout: 1704, Valid
Resource information : FTP ALG, 1, 0
In: 200.0.0.10/41047 --> 60.0.0.2/21;tcp, If: ge-7/1/0.0, Pkts: 13, Bytes: 586,
CP Session ID: 410001274
Out: 60.0.0.2/21 --> 200.0.0.10/41047;tcp, If: ge-7/1/1.0, Pkts: 13, Bytes:
803, CP Session ID: 410001274
Total sessions: 1

Flow Sessions on FPC10 PIC2:
Total sessions: 0

Flow Sessions on FPC10 PIC3:
Total sessions: 0

show security flow session resource-manager extensive

```
root> show security flow session resource-manager extensive
```

Flow Sessions on FPC10 PIC1:

Session ID: 410000664, Status: Normal
Flags: 0x42/0x0/0x2010103
Policy name: p1/4
Source NAT pool: Null, Application: junos-ftp/1
Dynamic application: junos:UNKNOWN,
Encryption: Unknown
Application traffic control rule-set: INVALID, Rule: INVALID
Maximum timeout: 1800, Current timeout: 1682
Session State: Valid
Start time: 160496, Duration: 153
Client: FTP ALG, Group: 1, Resource: 0
In: 200.0.0.10/41047 --> 60.0.0.2/21;tcp,
Interface: ge-7/1/0.0,
Session token: 0x6, Flag: 0xc0002621
Route: 0x70010, Gateway: 200.0.0.10, Tunnel: 0
Port sequence: 0, FIN sequence: 0,
FIN state: 0,
Pkts: 13, Bytes: 586
CP Session ID: 410001274
Out: 60.0.0.2/21 --> 200.0.0.10/41047;tcp,
Interface: ge-7/1/1.0,
Session token: 0x7, Flag: 0xc0002620
Route: 0x80010, Gateway: 60.0.0.2, Tunnel: 0
Port sequence: 0, FIN sequence: 0,
FIN state: 0,
Pkts: 13, Bytes: 803
CP Session ID: 410001274
Total sessions: 1

Flow Sessions on FPC10 PIC2:
Total sessions: 0

Flow Sessions on FPC10 PIC3:
Total sessions: 0

show security flow session resource-manager summary

```
root> show security flow session resource-manager summary
```

Flow Sessions on FPC10 PIC1:

Valid sessions: 1
Pending sessions: 0
Invalidated sessions: 0
Sessions in other states: 0
Total sessions: 1

Flow Sessions on FPC10 PIC2:

Valid sessions: 0
Pending sessions: 0
Invalidated sessions: 0
Sessions in other states: 0
Total sessions: 0

Flow Sessions on FPC10 PIC3:

Valid sessions: 0
Pending sessions: 0
Invalidated sessions: 0
Sessions in other states: 0
Total sessions: 0

show security idp policy-templates

Syntax	show security idp policy-templates
Release Information	Command introduced in Junos OS Release 10.1.
Description	Display the list of available policy templates.
Required Privilege Level	view
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• <i>show security idp active-policy</i>
Output Fields	user@host> show security idp policy-templates

Sample Output

```
DMZ_Services
DNS_Service
File_Server
Getting_Started
IDP_Default
Recommended
Web_Server
```

show security resource-manager group active

Syntax	show security resource-manager group active <group-number> <node (node-id all local primary)>
Release Information	Command introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5; node options added in Junos OS Release 9.0.
Description	Display security information about active groups created through the resource manager.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • none—Display resource manager group service information for all active groups. • group-number —(Optional) Display resource manager group service information for a specific group identification number. • node—(Optional) For chassis cluster configurations, display active resource manager group service information on a specific node. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • node-id —Identification number of the node. It can be 0 or 1. • all—Display information about all nodes. • local—Display information about the local node. • primary—Display information about the primary node.
Required Privilege Level	view
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Juniper Networks Devices Processing Overview</i>
List of Sample Output	show security resource-manager group active on page 462 show security resource-manager group active 2048 on page 462 show security resource-manager group active node primary on page 462 show security resource-manager group active node all on page 462 show security resource-manager group active 1024 node all on page 462
Output Fields	Table 38 on page 461 lists the output fields for the show security resource-manager group command. Output fields are listed in the approximate order in which they appear.

Table 38: show security resource-manager group Output Fields

Field Name	Field Description
Total groups	Total number of groups in the system.
active groups	Number of active groups.
Group ID	Identification number whose group information is displayed.

Sample Output

show security resource-manager group active

```
user@host> show security resource-manager group active
Total groups 32, active groups 0
```

Sample Output

show security resource-manager group active 2048

```
user@host> show security resource-manager group active 2048
Total groups 2048, active groups 1
Group ID 2048: state - Active
    : Virtual System      - root
    : Application         - SIP ALG
    : Group Timeout       - 65535
    : Number of resources - 3
      Resource ID - 8190
      Resource ID - 8188
      Resource ID - 8187
```

Sample Output

show security resource-manager group active node primary

```
user@host> show security resource-manager group active node primary
node0:
-----
Group ID 1024: Application - SIP ALG
Total groups 1024, active groups 1
```

Sample Output

show security resource-manager group active node all

```
user@host> show security resource-manager group active node all
node0:
-----
Group ID 1024: Application - SIP ALG
Total groups 1024, active groups 1
node1:
-----
Group ID 1024: Application - SIP ALG
Total groups 1024, active groups 1
```

Sample Output

show security resource-manager group active 1024 node all

```
user@host> show security resource-manager group active 1024 node all
node0:
-----
Group ID 1024: state - Active
    : Application         - SIP ALG
    : Group Timeout       - 65535
    : Number of resources - 3
      Resource ID - 8192
```

```
Resource ID - 8188
Resource ID - 8187
node1:
-----
Group ID 1024: state - Active
: Application          - SIP ALG
: Group Timeout        - 65535
: Number of resources - 3
    Resource ID - 8187
    Resource ID - 8186
    Resource ID - 8190
```

show security resource-manager resource active

Syntax	show security resource-manager resource active <resource-id > <node (node-id all local primary)>
Release Information	Command introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5; node options added in Junos OS Release 9.0.
Description	Display security information about active resources created through the resource manager.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • none—Display information for all active resources. • resource-id —(Optional) Display information for a resource with a specific identification number. • node—(Optional) For chassis cluster configurations, display active resource manager information on a specific node. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • node-id —Identification number of the node. It can be 0 or 1. • all—Display information about all nodes. • local—Display information about the local node. • primary—Display information about the primary node.
Required Privilege Level	view
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Juniper Networks Devices Processing Overview</i>
List of Sample Output	show security resource-manager resource active on page 465 show security resource-manager resource active 5 on page 465 show security resource-manager resource active node local on page 465 show security resource-manager resource active node primary on page 466
Output Fields	Table 39 on page 464 lists the output fields for the show security resource-manager resource command. Output fields are listed in the approximate order in which they appear.

Table 39: show security resource-manager resource Output Fields

Field Name	Field Description
Total resources	Total number of resources in the system.
active resources	Number of active resources.
Resource ID	Identification number whose resource information is displayed.

Sample Output

show security resource-manager resource active

```
user@host> show security resource-manager resource active
Resource ID 7: Group ID - 2, Application - JSF_sip

Resource ID 6: Group ID - 2, Application - JSF_sip

Resource ID 5: Group ID - 2, Application - JSF_sip

Resource ID 4: Group ID - 2, Application - JSF_sip

Resource ID 3: Group ID - 2, Application - JSF_sip

Resource ID 1: Group ID - 2, Application - JSF_sip

Resource ID 2: Group ID - 2, Application - JSF_sip
Total Resources 4326, active resources 7
```

Sample Output

show security resource-manager resource active 5

```
user@host> show security resource-manager resource active 5
Resource ID 5: state - Active
  Application      - asl_client
  Parent group     - 2
  Policy           - 5
  From zone        - untrust
  To zone          - trust
  Resource timeout - 0
  Number of sessions - 0
  Number of Holes  - 1
    Source IP range - {0.0.0.0, 0.0.0.0}
    Source port range - {0, 0}
    Destination IP range - {33.1.0.200, 33.1.0.200}
    Destination port range - {5060, 5060}
    Translated      - {0.0.0.0/0 -> 33.1.0.200/5060}
    Protocol        - 17
    Reference count  - 1
```

Sample Output

show security resource-manager resource active node local

```
user@host> show security resource-manager resource active node local
node0:
-----
Resource ID 8192: Group ID - 1024, Application - SIP ALG
Resource ID 8188: Group ID - 1024, Application - SIP ALG
Resource ID 8187: Group ID - 1024, Application - SIP ALG
Total Resources 8192, active resources 3
```

Sample Output

show security resource-manager resource active node primary

```
user@host> show security resource-manager resource active node primary
node0:
```

```
-----
Resource ID 8192: Group ID - 1024, Application - SIP ALG
Resource ID 8188: Group ID - 1024, Application - SIP ALG
Resource ID 8187: Group ID - 1024, Application - SIP ALG
Total Resources 8192, active resources 3
```

show security resource-manager summary

Syntax	show security resource-manager summary
Release Information	Command introduced in Junos OS Release 11.4.
Description	Display summary information about active resources, clients, groups, and sessions created through the resource manager.
Required Privilege Level	view
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Juniper Networks Devices Processing Overview</i>
List of Sample Output	show security resource-manager summary on page 467
Output Fields	Table 40 on page 467 lists the output fields for the show security resource-manager summary command. Output fields are listed in the approximate order in which they appear.

Table 40: show security resource-manager summary Output Fields

Field Name	Field Description
Active resource-manager clients	Number of active resource manager clients.
Active resource-manager groups	Number of active resource manager groups.
Active resource-manager resources	Number of active resource manager resources.
Active resource-manager sessions	Number of active resource manager sessions.

Sample Output

show security resource-manager summary

```

user@host> show security resource-manager summary

Active resource-manager clients : 15
Active resource-manager groups  : 1
Active resource-manager resources : 1
Active resource-manager sessions : 0

```

show security zones

Syntax `show security zones <zone-name> <detail | terse>`

Release Information Command introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5. The **Description** output field added in Junos OS Release 12.1.

Description Display information about security zones.

- Options**
- **none**—Display information about all zones.
 - **detail | terse**—(Optional) Display the specified level of output.
 - **zone-name**—(Optional) Display information about the specified zone.

Required Privilege Level view

- Related Documentation**
- *Security Zones and Interfaces Overview*
 - *Supported System Services for Host Inbound Traffic*
 - [security-zone on page 376](#)

List of Sample Output

[show security zones on page 469](#)
[show security zones abc on page 469](#)
[show security zones abc detail on page 470](#)
[show security zones terse on page 470](#)

Output Fields [Table 41 on page 468](#) lists the output fields for the **show security zones** command. Output fields are listed in the approximate order in which they appear.

Table 41: show security zones Output Fields

Field Name	Field Description	Level of Output
Functional zone	Name of the functional zone.	none
Security zone	Name of the security zone.	detail none
Description	Description of the security zone.	detail none
Policy configurable	Whether the policy can be configured or not.	detail none

Table 41: show security zones Output Fields (continued)

Field Name	Field Description	Level of Output
Interfaces bound	Number of interfaces in the zone.	detail
		none
Interfaces	List of the interfaces in the zone.	detail
		none
Zone	Name of the zone.	terse
Type	Type of the zone.	terse

Sample Output

show security zones

```

user@host> show security zones
Functional zone: management
  Description: This is the management zone.
  Policy configurable: No
  Interfaces bound: 1
  Interfaces:
    ge-0/0/0.0
Security zone: Host
  Description: This is the host zone.
  Send reset for non-SYN session TCP packets: Off
  Policy configurable: Yes
  Interfaces bound: 1
  Interfaces:
    fxp0.0
Security zone: abc
  Description: This is the abc zone.
  Send reset for non-SYN session TCP packets: Off
  Policy configurable: Yes
  Interfaces bound: 1
  Interfaces:
    ge-0/0/1.0
Security zone: def
  Description: This is the def zone.
  Send reset for non-SYN session TCP packets: Off
  Policy configurable: Yes
  Interfaces bound: 1
  Interfaces:
    ge-0/0/2.0

```

Sample Output

show security zones abc

```

user@host> show security zones abc
Security zone: abc
  Description: This is the abc zone.
  Send reset for non-SYN session TCP packets: Off

```

```
Policy configurable: Yes
Interfaces bound: 1
Interfaces:
  ge-0/0/1.0
```

Sample Output

show security zones abc detail

```
user@host> show security zones abc detail
Security zone: abc
  Description: This is the abc zone.
  Send reset for non-SYN session TCP packets: Off
  Policy configurable: Yes
  Interfaces bound: 1
  Interfaces:
    ge-0/0/1.0
```

Sample Output

show security zones terse

```
user@host> show security zones terse
Zone           Type
my-internal    Security
my-external    Security
dmz            Security
```

show security zones type

Syntax	<code>show security zones type</code> (functional security) <detail terse>
Release Information	Command introduced in Junos OS Release 8.5. The Description output field added in Junos OS Release 12.1.
Description	Display information about security zones of the specified type.
Options	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • functional—Display functional zones. • security—Display security zones. • detail terse—(Optional) Display the specified level of output.
Required Privilege Level	view
Related Documentation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Security Zones and Interfaces Overview</i> • <i>Supported System Services for Host Inbound Traffic</i> • security-zone on page 376
List of Sample Output	show security zones type functional on page 472 show security zones type security on page 472 show security zones type security terse on page 473 show security zones type security detail on page 473
Output Fields	Table 42 on page 471 lists the output fields for the show security zones type command. Output fields are listed in the approximate order in which they appear.

Table 42: show security zones type Output Fields

Field Name	Field Description	Level of Output
Security zone	Zone name.	All levels
Description	Description of the security zone.	none detail
Policy configurable	Whether the policy can be configured or not.	none detail

Table 42: show security zones type Output Fields (continued)

Field Name	Field Description	Level of Output
Interfaces bound	Number of interfaces in the zone.	none
		detail
Interfaces	List of the interfaces in the zone.	none
		detail
Zone	Name of the zone.	All levels
Type	Type of the zone.	All levels

Sample Output

show security zones type functional

```

user@host> show security zones type functional
Functional zone: management
Description: management zone
Policy configurable: No
Interfaces bound: 0
Interfaces:

```

Sample Output

show security zones type security

```

user@host> show security zones type security
Security zone: trust
Description: trust zone
Send reset for non-SYN session TCP packets: Off
Policy configurable: Yes
Interfaces bound: 1
Interfaces:
ge-0/0/0.0
Security zone: untrust
Description: untrust zone
Send reset for non-SYN session TCP packets: Off
Policy configurable: Yes
Interfaces bound: 1
Interfaces:
ge-0/0/1.0
Security zone: junos-host
Description: junos-host zone
Send reset for non-SYN session TCP packets: Off
Policy configurable: Yes
Interfaces bound: 0
Interfaces:

```

Sample Output

show security zones type security terse

```
user@host> show security zones type security terse
Zone           Type
trust          Security
untrust        Security
junos-host     Security
```

Sample Output

show security zones type security detail

```
user@host> show security zones type security detail
Security zone: trust
  Description: trust zone
  Send reset for non-SYN session TCP packets: Off
  Policy configurable: Yes
  Interfaces bound: 1
  Interfaces:
    ge-0/0/0.0
Security zone: untrust
  Description: untrust zone
  Send reset for non-SYN session TCP packets: Off
  Policy configurable: Yes
  Interfaces bound: 1
  Interfaces:
    ge-0/0/1.0
Security zone: junos-host
  Description: junos-host zone
  Send reset for non-SYN session TCP packets: Off
  Policy configurable: Yes
  Interfaces bound: 0
  Interfaces:
```

